UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Geneva, 4-22 September 1967

Vol. 2. Proceedings of the Conference and technical papers

UNITED NATIONS

UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Geneva, 4-22 September 1967

Vol. 2. Proceedings of the Conference and technical papers

NOTE

Symbols of United Nations documents are composed of capital letters combined with figures. Mention of such a symbol indicates a reference to a United Nations document.

———————

The official records of the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in Geneva, Switzerland, from 4 to 22 September, 1967, are issued in two volumes: volume 1, *Report of the Conference,** and the present publication. The summary records of the nine plenary meetings are contained in part I of the present volume, while part II contains the texts of reports, communications and technical papers submitted to the Conference by participating Governments. The papers have been edited and consolidated in accordance with United Nations practices and requirements. The designations employed and the presentation of the material do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country or territory or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers.

———————

* *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 68.I.9).

E/CONF.53/4

UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATION

Sales Number: E.69. I. 8.

Price: $U.S. 2.50

(or equivalent in other currencies)

CONTENTS

Part I. Proceedings of the Conference

Part II. Technical papers

Agenda item 7. Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

CONTENTS (*continued*)

CONTENTS *(continued)*

v

CONTENTS *(continued)*

Annex

Part I

PROCEEDINGS OF THE CONFERENCE

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE FIRST PLENARY MEETING [1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Monday, 4 September 1967, at 3.5 p.m.

CONTENTS

Acting President:

Mr. VELEBIT (*Executive Secretary, Economic Commission for Europe*)

President:

Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

Rapporteur:

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (*Mexico*)

Executive Secretary:

Mr. URETA

Deputy Executive Secretary:

Mr. CHRISTOPHER (*Secretariat*)

Opening of the Conference

[Agenda item 1]

The ACTING PRESIDENT, on behalf of the Secretary-General, welcomed the participants in the Conference.

The question of the standardization of geographical names had been before the Economic and Social Council since 1953 and had been studied at regional cartographic conferences for Asia and the Far East and for Africa respectively. In 1958, a draft programme for achieving international uniformity in the writing of geographical names had been circulated to all States Members of the United Nations; most countries had expressed the view that the immediate task of standardization should be performed on the national level. In 1959, under Council resolution 715 A (XXVII), the Secretary-General had been requested to set up a small group of consultants to consider the technical problems of domestic standardization of geographical names. The report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names established pursuant to that resolution, which was before the Conference,[2] dealt with four topics: the need for standardization; problems of domestic standardization; recommendations on problems of such standardization; and the question of convening an international conference. As a result of the group's conclusions on the last-mentioned topic, the Council, by its resolution 929 (XXXV), had requested the Secretary-General to consult with Member States on the

desirability of convening such a conference and on the date, place and tentative agenda. In the light of the Secretary-General's consultations, the Council had decided at its thirty-ninth session that a conference should be held in Geneva in 1967.

The Group of Experts on Geographical Names had been reconvened at a preparatory meeting in March and April 1966; the report on that meeting was before the Conference.[3] The group had considered the provisional agenda for the Conference and had reviewed all the comments received on the subject from Governments since 1956. It had been agreed that the rules of procedure for the Conference should be those used at the United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale, held in Bonn in 1962.[4] The group had also considered it desirable that the Conference should be discussed at the regional level, and items relating to geographical names had been included in the agenda of the second United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Africa, held in Tunis in September 1966,[5] and of the fifth United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East, held in Canberra in March 1967.[6]

The adoption of a uniform standard method of writing geographical names involved two basic questions: standardization of the form of geographical names by the country concerned, and adoption of standard methods of transliteration or transcription. The first question involved standardization at the national level; the second, adoption of general principles for international standards. The Conference would no doubt provide guidance on international methods of transliteration and on international co-ordination and liaison. He wished the Conference every success in helping to further the purposes of the United Nations.

Adoption of the rules of procedure

[Agenda item 2]

The ACTING PRESIDENT drew attention to the proposal in paragraph 5 of the report of the Group of Experts that the rules of procedure for the Conference should be those of the United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale with two minor amendments. Under the first amendment, rule 3 would provide for a credentials

---

[2] See annex, p. 151.

[3] See *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: E.68.I.9), annex III, pp. 20-22.

[4] See *United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 64.I.4), pp. 11-14.

[5] See *Second United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Africa*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 67.I.20).

[6] See *Fifth United Nations Regional Conference for Asia and the Far East*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: E.68.I.2).

committee of five instead of seven members. The second amendment, to rule 32, was purely stylistic.

The amendments were adopted.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) proposed that, in rule 34, Spanish should be added as a working language. Spanish had been a basic language in the preparatory work for the Conference and was specifically mentioned, in the last sentence of paragraph 12 of the report of the Group of Experts, as one of three languages on which systems for conversion into the Roman alphabet might be based. Moreover, the Conference had been convened by the Economic and Social Council, which had made Spanish a working language by its resolution 481 (XV) of 1 April 1953.

Mr. PEREZ GALINO (Spain) supported the amendment.

The amendment was adopted.

The rules of procedure, as amended, were adopted.

Election of officers

[Agenda item 3]

Mr. GALL (Guatemala) nominated Mr. Burrill (United States of America), for the office of President of the Conference.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) seconded that nomination.

Mr. Burrill (United States of America) was elected President by acclamation.

Mr. Burrill (United States of America) took the Chair.

The PRESIDENT thanked the participants in the Conference for the honour they had done him by allowing him to serve as their President. The long preparations for the Conference had been fraught with obstacles and setbacks and, although the Conference had at last been convened, the road to complete success would still be long and difficult. It would be wise to recognize from the outset that there could be no question of resolving all outstanding problems during the next three weeks. On the other hand, if all participants realized from the start that they were bound to differ and understood why that was so, great progress would be made, and the Conference could not fail in its purpose if it was conducted in that spirit. Its success depended above all on the recognition that all participants wanted to reach international agreement, and on their will to achieve greater uniformity.

Mr. FALLA (United Kingdom) nominated Mr. Baranov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) for the office of First Vice-President.

Mr. SUNTHAN (Cambodia) seconded that nomination.

Mr. Baranov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) was elected First Vice-President by acclamation.

Mr. KHAMSUNDARA (Thailand) nominated Mr. Coker (Nigeria) for the office of Second Vice-President.

Mr. LOXTON (Kenya) seconded that nomination.

Mr. Coker (Nigeria) was elected Second Vice-President by acclamation.

Mr. PEARCY (United States of America) nominated Mr. Gomez de Silva (Mexico) for the office of Rapporteur.

Mr. ANDERSEN (Denmark) and Mr. CORDERAS DESCÁRREGA (Spain) seconded that nomination.

Mr. Gomez de Silva (Mexico) was elected Rapporteur by acclamation.

Report on credentials

[Agenda item 4]

The PRESIDENT said that, in accordance with rule 3 of the rules of procedure, the Credentials Committee would consist of five members. He suggested that four of those members should be the officers of the Conference, and the fifth a representative from some geographical area other than those of the officers. He suggested that the fifth member should be Mr. Lambert (Australia).

It was so decided.

Adoption of the agenda

[Agenda item 5]

The agenda was adopted unanimously.

Organization of the work

[Agenda item 6]

The PRESIDENT pointed out that the Group of Experts had recommended, in para. 6 of their report, the establishment of four principal committees to deal, respectively, with national standardization, geographical terms, writing systems and international co-operation.

The recommendation was adopted.

The PRESIDENT suggested that it would be useful to have a steering committee which would be representative of the different parts of the world. Such a committee might consist of the officers of the Conference and the chairmen of the four principal committees.

It was so decided.

In reply to a question from *Mr. BREU* (Austria), the *PRESIDENT* said that each of the principal committees would operate as a committee of the whole.

He expressed the hope that delegations which had submitted papers would comment on them briefly, and not in detail; they should emphasize the salient features of their papers and show how they related to the problem as a whole. Participants should not hesitate to request clarification of anything which they did not understand. The purpose of the Conference would best be served by consistent frankness, with candid acknowledgment of failures as well as of successes.

The meeting rose at 4.15 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE SECOND PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Tuesday, 5 September 1967, at 10.20 a.m.

CONTENTS

President:
Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

Election of officers
[Agenda item 3] (*continued*)

Mr. KHAMASUNDARA (Thailand) nominated Mr. Lambert (Australia) for the office of Chairman of Committee I on National Standardization Programmes.

Mr. GLEDITCH (Norway) seconded the nomination.

Mr. Lambert (Australia) was elected Chairman of Committee I by acclamation.

Mr. MARTY (Cameroon) nominated Mr. Gall (Guatemala) for the office of Chairman of Committee II on Geographical Terms.

Mr. DROLET (Canada) seconded the nomination.

Mr. Gall (Guatemala) was elected Chairman of Committee II by acclamation.

Mr. SPIESS (Switzerland) nominated Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom) for the office of Chairman of Committee III on Writing Systems.

Mr. SUNTHAN (Cambodia) seconded the nomination.

Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom) was elected Chairman of Committee III by acclamation.

Mr. AMER (United Arab Republic) nominated Mr. Buru (Libya) for the office of Chairman of Committee IV on International Co-operation.

Mr. BURU (Libya) observed that it would be difficult for him, as the sole representative of his country, to serve as chairman of a committee. He nominated Mr. Ayoubi (Lebanon).

Mr. LINDQVIST (Sweden) nominated Mr. Fraser (Canada).

Mr. MAHIAR-NAVABI (Iran) seconded the nomination of Mr. Fraser.

Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands) nominated Mr. Spiess (Switzerland).

Mr. SPIESS (Switzerland) stated that, to his regret, he could not accept candidature because acceptance of the office of chairman would be contrary to his country's policy in international organizations.

The PRESIDENT noted that only one nomination had been seconded. If there were no objections, he would take it that Mr. Fraser (Canada) had been elected Chairman of Committee IV.

It was so decided.

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names
[Agenda item 7]

The PRESIDENT invited delegations to report on the progress made by their countries in the standardization of geographical names.

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) said that, in recent years, the activities of the United Nations had given impetus to action by the Australian state governments which, with the territory administrations, were responsible for place names. Some co-ordination of national efforts had been effected by the National Mapping Council of Australia on which all the governments and administrations were represented. Gazetteers were being prepared; the annexes to the report submitted by his country under item 7 showed the principles of organization applied and the addresses of the various authorities responsible for the work in progress.

One particular problem encountered had been that of unwritten names, which had been used in the past without any definite system. Efforts were being made to rectify that state of affairs. In New Guinea, for instance, an attempt was being made to preserve for posterity the names used by the indigenous population.

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that Austria had to deal with two types of geographical names: those of inhabited places, and others. Names in the first category were fixed either by provincial government law or by communal decree. Every ten years, the names were printed in the official gazetteer published by the Central Statistical Office. Names in the second category were fixed by the survey group of the Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying, which was free to make its own decisions and was guided only by local tradition.

The most important achievement of the past years had been that, in the sheets of the official 1:50,000 map published since 1961, the names of inhabited places conformed exactly to those published by the Central Statistical Office. A problem still to be resolved was that of determining the names of fields, meadows, mountains, rivers and other features encountered during field work by the surveying staff. The Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying urgently needed the help of toponymic committees to produce uniform and scientifically correct work. Only one such committee existed, so far, in Vorarlberg, but others were to be set up in due course.

Mr. MARTY (Cameroon) said that several organizations in Cameroon published catalogues of names for different purposes, but only the Geographical Service dealt with the whole problem, and it was not officially responsible for the standardization of geographical names. There was therefore no official spelling of names except for those of the principal administrative centres in the regions and districts, the spelling of which had become official by long usage. In East Cameroon, where the official language was French, the principles applied in transcribing names were those fixed by the French National Geographical Institute (IGN) for use in the African countries for which the IGN made maps. In West Cameroon, the principles applied were similar to those applied in the east, but English rules of spelling and pronunciation were respected, since English was the official language. It was hoped that agreement could be reached in the future on a transcription principle for the whole federation and that an organization could be established to standardize geographical names, so that an official spelling might be adopted for the greatest possible number of names.

Mr. DROLET (Canada) said that the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names had replaced the Canadian Geographical Commission which had been founded in 1897.

The heritage of Canada's two founder nations—France and Great Britain—was reflected in its toponymy. In addition, many names were derived from the indigenous languages—Indian and Eskimo—and others from the languages of the numerous immigrants.

The federal system of government, consisting of a central national government and ten provincial governments, had influenced the approach to toponymy over the past seventy years. While the need for a centralizing authority was recognized, the provinces were severally responsible for names falling within their own boundaries; that arrangement was essential in a vast country of such varied physiography and historical development.

At the turn of the century, the need to standardize geographical names in a young nation which was developing administratively and geographically had prompted the preparation of practical rules of nomenclature. A national gazetteer had been produced; it was divided into provinces, and provided an up-to-date register of all geographical names for the convenience of the official or private user. Current decisions on names were disseminated to the producers of maps and charts, and to agencies responsible for communications and other services which required up-to-date information. Field investigations, based mainly on local interviews but drawing on all available documentary sources of information, had demonstrated their effectiveness in clarifying local nomenclature.

While its experience in those matters might be of interest to other countries, Canada hoped to learn more at the Conference about modern techniques of name standardization, such as methods of using computers.

He expressed his country's interest in the formation of a United Nations permanent commission as suggested by the Group of Experts in para. 13 of their second report, the continued exchange of information following the Conference, and the suggested post-Conference regional meetings (para. 9 of the report).[2]

[2] United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: E.68.I.9), p. 21.

Mr. SUN TANG-YUEH (China) recalled that the Chinese language differed from other languages in being composed of characters from three different sources—descriptive, phonetic and ideographic. Although there were many and varied dialects in the vast territory of China, the writing system was uniform and, in standardizing geographical names, emphasis was laid on correct pronunciation. The publication in 1928 of a national system of phonetic letters, which was taught from the primary school onwards, had further encouraged the use of the uniform writing system.

His country welcomed the work done by the Group of Experts on the Standardization of Geographical Names and was willing to accept any reasonable recommendations the group might make.

The Chinese Ministry of the Interior had set up its own group of experts to study the question. That group had already held several meetings and, among other recommendations, had stressed the importance of writing national geographical names accurately, of defining the boundaries of geographical features, of agreeing on a uniform method of writing names drawn from spoken dialects, and of abbreviating existing geographical names. The last two activities had already begun; a 1:1,000,000 scale map had been published using all the principal Chinese names, and many geographical names consisting of three characters had been reduced to two; however, much work remained to be done in the latter field. An attempt was being made to standardize the writing and pronunciation of existing geographical names, and the United States Government had recently been requested to assist with their transliteration.

Recent publications included a book on modified readings for Chinese place names based on the experience gained in standardization, and a national dictionary giving explanations and background information on the historical and other meanings of such names.

Although the Chinese Government placed great emphasis on the uniformity of geographical names, no authorized agency or permanent organization was responsible for securing such uniformity. His Government would be very grateful for any assistance which could be provided by the United Nations in setting up a permanent organization to take sole responsibility for that work at the national level.

Mr. CHRISTODOULOU (Cyprus) said that his country had made a start on the standardization of geographical names by setting up a group of experts to apply the decisions of the Conference.

Mr. ANDERSEN (Denmark) said that a place-names committee had been set up in his country in 1910, composed of representatives of the Danish Government and administration, map-producing agencies, the Geodetic Institute, the Hydrographic Office and the university and specialists in Nordic philology and history. Some 30,000 place names had now been published for twenty administrative districts, leaving only one district for which the printing of names had not yet been completed. The list for the Faroe Islands was prepared in two languages—Danish and Faroese—but generally the Faroese names were used. A special committee had been set up for Greenland, which would work on the principles already applied to the Faroes, but mapping would take some years. The Scandinavian countries were co-operating in the matter and hoped to submit a joint report at a later stage.

Mr. ASSAYE (Ethiopia) said that the Imperial Ethiopian Mapping and Geographical Institute was continuing to collect and standardize place names, using Amharic, the national language. The language was a phonetic one with an alphabet of about 231 letters, including thirty-three consonants with seven vowel forms for each consonant. The simplified system used for transliterating the alphabet into English had been described at the United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference held in Nairobi in 1963 and had been published in the report of that Conference.[3] Field parties were collecting and transliterating names according to that system. A start had been made on compiling glossaries of geographical terms and standardizing names of administrative areas and sub-regions. It was hoped that a gazetteer and glossary could be published in the near future. A committee set up within the Mapping and Geographical Institute was working on the question of standardization at the national level; the information acquired at the current Conference would be extremely useful to that committee.

Mr. MEYNEN (Federal Republic of Germany) said that the spelling of place names was a matter for official decision by the *Länder*. The names of geographical entities had not, as a rule, been the subject of official decisions, but their inclusion in official maps gave them a certain official character.

The Standing Committee on Geographical Names, set up in 1959, was responsible for co-ordinating and promulgating the rules for domestic standardization of names and for publishing results. In 1966, it had published the first volume of the official Duden gazetteer, which gave the correct official spellings recommended for domestic use.

Mr. NURMI (Finland) said that close and regular co-operation was maintained between cartographers and toponymists in his country. The National Board of Survey was responsible for the preparation of Finnish maps, including the field collection of names, the selection of names for the maps, and—since Finland was bilingual—their submission for revision, before printing, to the Finnish Name Archives or the Swedish Society for Literature in Finland. Names were corrected and checked against collections of geographical names, maps and other information available in the name archives and guidebooks.

The field collection and office treatment of place names from all over Finland were comprehensive tasks involving most of the problems mentioned in the report of the Group of Experts. A total of 700,000 names had already been collected for the compilation of basic maps on the scale of 1:20,000. The compilation should be completed in the early 1970's and would include more than 1 million names; it would form the basis for the names on smaller-scale maps.

Particular attention had been paid to the standardization of geographical names in a new 1:1 million scale map now being prepared. The main purpose of the new map was to show the location of the most important places in Finland, which totalled some 8,000. Maps of that type would undoubtedly be of assistance to cartographic agencies in other countries in constructing their maps of Finland.

Mr. NEDELEC (France) said that, although France had long been studying the problems involved in standardizing geographical names, his Government had not submitted a comprehensive report on its activities in recent

3 See *United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Africa*, vol. 2 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 66.I.13), p. 65.

years. It had, however, communicated with the Secretariat on individual items of the agenda, in particular item 9(*b*), (*c*), (*d*) and (*f*).

Mr. GALL (Guatemala) said that the National Geographical Institute of Guatemala had started work on standardizing geographical names in May 1956. In 1958, work had begun on a geographical dictionary. To put an end to confusion in geographical names, a presidential decree had been issued in 1959 to the effect that only names appearing in the records of the National Geographical Institute should be considered official.

Following the adoption of the recommendations of the Group of Experts in July 1960, a joint Commission on Geographical Names had been set up in Guatemala. The geographical dictionary of Guatemala, published in two volumes in 1960 and 1961, contained the geographical names standardized up to the time of its publication. The standardized names also appeared on the 1:1 million and larger scale maps.

In 1965, the National Geographical Institute had published his paper entitled "*Contribución a los nombres geográficos de Guatemala*", which comprised a philological study of the region, the rules guiding the Joint Commission on Geographical Names, and examples of resolutions on standardization.

The supplement to the geographical dictionary, covering the years 1961 to 1964, had been completed in 1965 and was now being printed in two volumes of over 400 pages each. It contained several hundred new geographical names, cross-references to historical names no longer in use, and new terms and definitions. Work on the next supplement, covering the years 1964–1967 and based on 1964 census data, was under way and more than 8,700 names were ready for immediate reference.

Several Central American countries had asked for help regarding methods and specifications for use in preparing their own geographical dictionaries. As an official of the National Geographical Institute, he had visited El Salvador and Honduras in 1966 and Costa Rica in 1967, and those countries were now preparing their geographical dictionaries in the light of Guatemala's experience.

Mr. POLSPOEL (Holy See) said that, although the Holy See, by reason of its special character, had not taken an active part in the standardization of geographical names, it was following progress with interest. There existed, however, a centre for the study of religious toponymy which had recently been given official recognition by the Holy See and which adhered to the International Geographical Union.

Mr. VADIIE (Iran) referred to the new measures being taken in his country, in particular the establishment of committees under the Ministry of the Interior, the Geographical Department at Army Headquarters and the Geographical Institute of the University of Teheran. Three lists of names had already been published by government bodies and would shortly be revised. A climatological map and atlas were in course of preparation by the Army Geographical Department and the Geographical Institute.

In the process of standardization, attention was being paid to historical documents as well as to geographical names and terminology. In Iran, which was one of the oldest countries in the world and therefore rich in historical material, the standardization of geographical names was of particular importance. In that connexion, he had noted

that the documents before the Conference contained frequent references to "interested countries" and "uninterested countries". The fact was that the standardization of geographical names would not be achieved until every State realized its importance, and national activity must be encouraged and accelerated by international organizations, in particular the United Nations.

Mr. ALON (Israel) said that Israel was in a comparatively satisfactory situation because it had, in the Bible, an authoritative source for almost all names that were well known nationally and internationally. The task was simply to locate and identify on the map the names of settlements which had existed in biblical times, and to assign those names to present-day settlements and towns.

The task of reviving biblical names and, in a few cases, of finding Hebrew names had been entrusted to a names committee which had achieved considerable progress since its appointment by the Government in 1951. It had compiled gazetteers for the 1:250,000 and 1:100,000 scale maps and had already started to fix names for the objects shown on the 1:20,000 scale maps.

The regulations of the Hebrew Academy were used for transcription. For non-Hebrew names, the regulations inherited from the period of the Mandate were used, except in the case of some well-known biblical names, for which transcriptions were used according to versions of the Bible used by various religious bodies.

Mr. LOXTON (Kenya) said that basic mapping and the collection of geographical names had been in progress in Kenya for some twenty years; a base map on the scale of 1:50,000, covering the whole country, was nearly completed. Some 27,000 names had been collected, and the process of collection would continue as the maps were revised. A few thousand of the 27,000 names had been examined, and it was estimated that between 80 and 90 per cent of the spellings used on existing maps would remain unchanged. The main problem, therefore, was how to deal with names that were not spelt correctly. The longer they remained on the maps, the harder it would be to change them.

The main obstacle to further progress was a loss of confidence. A Standing Committee on Geographical Names had started with enthusiasm twenty years earlier, had corrected many new spellings, and had then found that people continued to use the old spellings. He favoured the arrangement described in the report submitted by New Zealand under agenda item 9 according to which the spellings adopted by the Geographic Board became mandatory in due course; however, there might be legislative difficulties in introducing such an arrangement in some countries. He hoped that the Conference would adopt a strong resolution on the subject, which would help his Government to consider further whether it should institute at least some measure of compulsion.

Mr. AYOUBI (Lebanon) said that in his country the rules for transliterating Arabic into Latin characters had been applied to the base map at 1:20,000 scale since 1962, on the basis of the French language. The Department of Geographical Affairs was responsible for preparing the base map and submitted it for correction to the Commission on Toponymy, of which he was chairman. Exceptions had been made in the case of local names which had come into general use and which had been submitted to the Department of Geographical Affairs for approval and in the case of historical names, which were included side by side with names in current use.

All maps were now published in Latin characters and in French. They were based on the 1:20,000 map and approved by the Department of Geographical Affairs.

Mr. MASSAQUOI (Liberia) said that, since his Government had established its first Board of Geographical Names in 1955, two gazetteers had been issued. The board was now engaged, with United States aid, in a re-survey of the whole country in order to produce topographic and geological maps and a geophysical survey. The first gazetteer had been based on a map scale of 1:1,000,000. Place names were derived from some twenty-eight different linguistic sources. His Government had encountered the same problem as that mentioned by the representative of Kenya in that the people continued to use traditional spellings, and efforts were being made to correct the spelling by providing schools with copies of the 1:1,000,000 scale map. The establishment of new political boundaries had made it necessary to deal with new names. The Government was currently employing field teams to re-check names, using the official English phonetic alphabet as a basis.

Mr. BURU (Libya) said that national standardization of geographical names was vital to his country because of the confusion which had arisen as a result of the writing of names in Arabic, English, French and Italian. The first step towards standardization had been taken during the Italian occupation of Libya. After the Second World War, the British had first followed the Italian system and then adopted a different system of writing Libyan place names. In 1962, a topographical map on the scale of 1:2,000,000 had been prepared by the United States Geological Survey; the geographical names on that map were based on the information available in that year and, in general, followed the transliteration system of the United States Board of Geographic Names and the United Kingdom Permanent Committee on Geographical Names. As a result of the current economic boom in Libya, little-known place names were appearing on maps, and it had become the practice to write them according to the local pronunciation. It was hoped that an official list of place names would soon be published by the Ministry of Planning and Development.

Mr. ANDRIAMIHAJA (Madagascar) said that Malagasy was an agglutinative language belonging to the Malayo-Polynesian family. The Malagasy nation was composed of some twenty tribes, each of which had its own dialect, and the dialect of the centre of the country had become the official language. It had been transcribed in Latin characters at the beginning of the nineteenth century. The problem of toponymy was being studied by the Malagasy Academy. In general it had been agreed that well-known places such as the capital, Tananarive, should retain their existing names. Attempts were being made to eliminate confusion between identical names by the addition of prefixes or suffixes, and certain names consisting of Malagasy words with a French prefix were being entirely transliterated into Malagasy. The preparation of an etymological dictionary was under consideration.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) said that what his country had done so far was to identify the problems of standardization of geographical names. One such problem was that various geographical names, such as that of the highest mountain in Mexico (*Citlaltépet* or *Orizaba*), appeared on maps and other publications in a number of forms. Another problem was the use of foreign names in Mexico; "Kuwait" and "Madagascar", for example, were encountered in many forms. There were some

sixty indigenous languages in Mexico, and the intention was to investigate the etymology of indigenous place names. Another subject for standardization consisted of the generic names used to describe such geographical features as bays or mountains.

Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands) said that since the Netherlands was a very small country with close international economic relationships, many Dutch variants of foreign names had come into use, and a Permanent Board on Foreign Geographical Names had recently been set up to standardize them.

Mr. DAHLBERG (Netherlands), speaking as a representative of Surinam on the Netherlands delegation, said that the problems confronting Surinam with regard to the standardization of geographical names were much more complex than those faced by the Netherlands. Surinam had a multinational population and a corresponding variety of geographical names. In 1960, the Government had appointed a commission on geographical names to standardize rules for such names. A commission on the spelling of the Creole language had also been set up and had standardized all geographical names of Afro-American origin.

Mr. GLEDITSCH (Norway) said that, since the 1890s, the Royal Ministry of Education, assisted by an officially appointed Board of Advisers, had been responsible for the standardization of geographical names in Norway and in the Norwegian Arctic and Antarctic territories. It was the task of the Board of Advisers to advise all government offices and institutions on the spelling of geographical names. In 1913, special instructions had been issued to the effect that all Norwegian place names should be written in accordance with an orthographic system suitable for the standardization of genuine Norwegian dialect material. All later rules were derived from those instructions, and the latest instructions, issued in 1933 and 1957, dealt with specific details of standardization. The board's work had been based on a twenty-volume compilation of Norwegian farm names. Since 1940, all names on new topographic maps had been written in phonetic script and checked by specialists, and standardization of the written forms on the maps was based on that material. There was a special government adviser on Lapp place names, for in northern Norway there were many places with two different names, one Lapp and one Norwegian. Plans had been worked out for a national gazetteer based on 1:250,000 maps. The Norwegian Polar Institute applied the official rules for the standardization of place names in the Arctic and Antarctic areas. Names of special features originally given by explorers of other nationalities were seldom changed. The national names authority was the Board of Advisers on Place Names, and the executive authority was the Royal Ministry of Education. The Norwegian Place Names Archives were responsible for the collection of place-name material, and directed research work in that field. The Scandinavian countries maintained close collaboration in the standardization of geographical names.

Mr. MARTINS (Portugal) said that no great difficulties had arisen in Portugal with regard to the standardization of geographical names, since the competent cartographic departments maintained close collaboration with one another. He hoped that a national authority would soon be established to ensure standardization.

Mr. ROSU (Romania) said that the standardization of geographical names had been receiving attention in Romania for some considerable time. At the end of the nineteenth century, the Romanian Geographical Society had drawn up a geographical dictionary for the country. Serious attention had recently been given to the subject, and detailed studies had been carried out by geographers and cartographers. An administrative organ had been set up in 1952 to collaborate with the specialists in work on place names, and an official gazetteer of such names had appeared in 1956. The national organization now dealing with the subject was the National Geographical Committee, which included a sub-committee on geographical names. Many maps on different scales had recently been published, as well as linguistic atlases, an encyclopaedic dictionary and a preliminary glossary of generic names. The practical task of standardization could now be considered almost complete; it remained only to unify certain generic geographical names, to verify the names of certain topographical details, to draw up a bibliography on the subject and to put the glossary of generic names in final form.

Mr. PEREZ GALINO (Spain) said that the national body responsible for the study of toponymy was the Superior Geographical Council, under which the Commission on Geographical Names carried out its work on the basis of the recommendations of the United Nations Group of Experts. The problems involved were relatively simple and concerned mainly the cartographic aspect of the subject. All geographical names on the standard map of the country were currently being revised, and a special commission had been established to revise cartographic symbols.

The meeting rose at 1 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE THIRD PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Tuesday, 5 September 1967, at 3.15 p.m.

CONTENTS

President:

    Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

    later,

    Mr. BARANOV (*Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*)

Organization of work

[Agenda item 6] (*continued*)

The PRESIDENT said that the steering committee recommended that the Conference should first complete its hearing of reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names, under agenda item 7, and should then take up agenda item 8, entitled "Exchange of experience on problems identified in the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names". The committee further recommended that the discussion should concentrate on problems rather than on recommendations for their solution, which could be more usefully taken up in the four principal committees.

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

[Agenda item 7] (*continued*)

Mr. LINDQVIST (Sweden) said that Swedish geographical names were spelled in accordance with the principles laid down in the glossary published by the Swedish Academy. Those names could be divided into three categories: names of administrative divisions; property register names; other names. The official form and spelling of administrative names were universally accepted, and were based *inter alia* on the publications of the Central Bureau of Statistics. The names in the property register were based on decisions taken by the National Land Survey Board. Other names were checked by the Geographical Survey Office in collaboration with the Swedish Place-Names Archives. The general public could be confident, therefore, that all names appearing on Swedish maps had been certified as correct by experts. The collection and examination of the relevant data was the responsibility of the Swedish Place-Names Archives, which were directed by the Royal Place-Names Commission. The commission issued official opinions concerning the names of municipalities, parishes, post offices and railway stations. The

commission might also examine place-names forms on the request of the Board of Shipping and Navigation and other official authorities.

Mr. SPIESS (Switzerland) observed that toponymic problems were particularly complex in his country as a result of the federal system of government, under which each of the twenty-five cantons was guaranteed cultural autonomy; Switzerland had four official languages, and each had a number of local dialects. Accordingly, geographical names were first verified by cantonal commissions in collaboration with the communal authorities, and subsequently standardized at the national level by the Department of Justice and Police and the land registration authorities. The guiding principle was that local usage should be binding. As a result, French and Italian names closely followed standard written forms, while German names showed many dialectal variations. Continuity was deemed essential, for any change in a geographical name created a feeling of uncertainty among the population and might possibly lead to an explosive situation. National maps at the scale of 1:25,000 were therefore based primarily on cantonal recommendations, while those at 1:200,000 differed from the others in some respects.

It was to be hoped that the Conference would take its decisions on the basis of geographical names of particular importance to international trade.

Mr. KHAMASUNDARA (Thailand) said that the action taken by his Government to collect and standardize geographical names was being carried out by the Royal Institute, which after careful consideration submitted all geographical names to the Government for final approval. A study of a number of administrative divisions conducted by the Royal Institute in collaboration with the Royal Thai Survey Department had revealed many discrepancies in the spelling of such names, in both the Thai and the Roman alphabets, and steps had been taken in May 1967 to institute standardization of 621 first and second level administrative divisional names. Thailand was planning to begin field checking during the current year on names appearing on national maps at the scales of 1:50,000 and 1:250,000.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) recalled that the USSR was a multinational State comprising 130 different linguistic and geographical groups, After the October Revolution, all those groups had been officially recognized and had been freely permitted to develop their own cultural life. Universal literacy had been a primary goal, and in order to attain that goal it had been necessary to prepare standard alphabets, school texts, dictionaries and phonetic systems, not only for Russian but for all the national languages. It had also been necessary to develop a method of transcribing names from other languages, including those which did not use the Cyrillic alphabet into Russian. The establishment of a uniform spelling of geographical names was the responsibility of the

Chief Administration of Geodesy and Cartography, which had set up a permanent transcription committee. The rules for transcription were now laid down in 103 sets of instructions: fifty-eight for the Soviet Union and forty-five for foreign countries. Later in the Conference his Government would provide more detailed data, including samples of the documents used in its geographical and cartographical work. He hoped that, as a result of the Conference some system could be developed for providing the United Nations, at regular intervals, with information concerning changes in geographical names.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that his delegation's report was in two parts, the first dealing with England, Wales and Scotland and the second with Northern Ireland and overseas territories. His country's national mapping authority was the Ordnance Survey of Great Britain, which was responsible for geographical names in England, Scotland and Wales and published them in its well-known ordnance maps at 1:2,500. A gazetteer was also published, but only at 1:250,000. In recent years there had been a tendency to use Welsh and Gaelic names for places in Wales and Scotland respectively rather than the English names formerly used. Northern Ireland produced its own large-scale maps and was responsible for the collection and publication of names of its territories.

Mapping of overseas territories was carried out by the Directorate of Overseas Surveys, which was a part of the Overseas Development Ministry. Names policy was defined by the appropriate authority within the territory concerned.

Encouragement was given to the establishment of place-names authorities. Thus, in the British Solomon Islands dependencies a geographical names committee had been established for the collection and recording of geographical names. The British Antarctic Place-Names Committee was similarly responsible for geographical names in the Antarctic.

Other bodies concerned with the recording and spelling of geographical names were the Directorate of Military Survey, which produced medium-scale and small-scale maps as well as aeronautical charts, and the Hydrographic Department of the Admiralty, which was responsible for the production of nautical charts and other navigational documents. Both bodies followed the rules for spelling laid down by the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names. That committee was composed of representatives from a number of government departments and learned societies. Its function was briefly, to formulate transliteration and transcription of place names and to carry out the processing of names in certain cases.

Mr. PEARCY (United States of America) said that the United States Board on Geographic Names had already dealt with some 50,000 domestic names; about 1,000 were being added each year. The board's work included the statement of general principles and their incorporation in established policy. Two gazetteers had been published, one for Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands and the other for Hawaii, but unfortunately both were out of print. Two other gazetteers had recently been issued, for Alaska and the state of Delaware, and were obtainable from the Superintendent of Documents in Washington, D.C. Other documents would be placed on exhibition during the Conference.

His Government's files contained between 2.5 and 3 million standard foreign names, together with about 1 million cross-referenced variants. There was a file on

every part of the world, which was revised and enlarged over a ten-year cycle. Foreign names appeared in more than 100 gazetteers, a list of which would be distributed to participants in the Conference.

The report submitted by his Government described the various methods used for the transliteration of names from languages not written in the Roman alphabet. Agreement had been reached on the spelling of those names after joint studies with the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names for United Kingdom official use, and in some cases after direct discussion with the countries concerned.

More than twenty years earlier, the United States Board on Geographical Names had undertaken a study of all the names ever given to geographical features in the Antarctic; shortly afterwards, it had begun to discuss them with the other countries concerned, and a large measure of agreement had already been reached.

The study of undersea names, which was still in the early stages, was being discussed in the International Hydrograhic Bureau and the General Bathymetric Committee on Oceanography.

Miss BIDART de LOPEZ (Uruguay) observed that the problem of geographical names in her country had developed in the course of its long history. Certain names, both in Spanish and in other European languages, had appeared during the age of discovery and the colonial era; others had been used by the various indigenous tribes; and frequently their use had overlapped. The inevitable result had been a highly varied terminology, in which certain terms had come to be considered official despite the doubts entertained by scholars. A Geographical Institute had been founded as early as 1843 and a geographical dictionary of Uruguay had been published early in the twentieth century, but an enormous task still remained to be done. A number of private institutions were already co-operating in that task and her Government was, of course, keenly interested in any technical assistance available from the United Nations. The Organization's work on the standardization of geographical names had her delegation's full support.

Mr. EREN (Turkey) said that work on the standardization of geographical names in Turkey had begun some fifteen years previously. Preliminary action had been undertaken by the Cartographic Service, but the need for co-ordination had soon made it necessary to set up a Special Committee on Geographical Names under the Ministry of the Interior; the committee consisted of cartographers, geographers, historians and linguists, and the Cartographic Institute, the Turkish language Association and the Statistical Institute played an important auxiliary part in its work. Measures taken after the dissolution of the Ottoman empire had made the task somewhat easier, since the territory now occupied by the Republic of Turkey had always been populated by Turks and most place names were Turkish. Nevertheless, considerable difficulties had been created by the adoption of the Latin alphabet in the new Turkish State and by the fact that some topographic features had two or three different names. The special committee had overcome the principal difficulties in that regard, and the Ministry of the Interior had published a preliminary compilation of topographic features, province by province. The committee was also preparing a nomenclature which, when completed, would result in the standardization of geographical names at the national level. The Cartographic Service, to which the committee's work was regularly transmitted, took it into account in publishing new Turkish maps.

Mr. CAHA (Universal Postal Union) said that UPU had prepared two maps for the postal service based on French, as the working language of postal administrations. The agency was particularly concerned with the question of transliteration into French and was preparing a nomenclature of some 450,000 post offices throughout the world belonging to its 133 member States. The work was being done on the basis of information provided by the postal administrations of those States, and the problem was thus being dealt with at the national level. The nomenclature would be published early in 1968.

Some speakers had mentioned postal administrations as useful collaborators in achieving standardization; UPU would be glad to assist the Conference in any possible way.

Mr. ORMELING (International Cartographic Association), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that ICA fully supported the work of the Conference and looked forward to receiving practical suggestions and clear recommendations from it. Map-makers were interested in any attempt at the standardization of geographical names, not for its own sake, but because maps of all kinds served as a basis for economic development throughout the world. They were constantly seeking means of speeding up the long process of mapping by introducing aerial photography, exploring complex systems of automation, standardizing cartographic terms and contributing to the solution of the problem of geographical names. Editors of all kinds of maps, topographic maps on divergent scales and thematic maps, were sooner or later confronted with the thorny spelling problem, the solution of which required much energy and time. Although ICA did not favour uniformity at any price, it was deeply committed to speeding up world map-making. It therefore hoped that a permanent United Nations committee on geographical names would be established and that close co-operation would be established between cartographers, toponymists linguists and geographers.

Mr. LAMBERT (Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the twelve countries represented on SCAR had deliberately refrained from attempting any standardization of geographical names because the usual practice in Antarctic exploration was to allow the country which first discovered a feature to name it. That country then informed the other members of its action, usually by producing sketch-maps showing the nature and geographical location of the feature. That was often followed by an interchange of gazetteers giving the names, locations and positions of features, together with the basis of name allocation. Duplication had occurred in a minority of cases but, with free exchange of information, there was a marked tendency to adopt the name originally given. Thus SCAR was no authority on the standardization of geographical names, but its members would certainly give full consideration to the recommendations of the Conference.

Mr. ANDERSEN (International Union of Geodesy and Geophysics), speaking at the invitation of the President, recalled that IUGG was a non-governmental organization engaged in the physical study of the earth. It consisted of seven associations covering such disciplines as geodesy, seismology, the physics of the earth's interior, geomagnetism, aeronomy, meteorology and atmospheric physics, physical oceanography, volcanology and scientific hydrology. The agency was naturally interested in the standardization of place names as a means of removing any doubt as to where its observations were made. It was following the Conference with great interest and wished it every success. The fourteenth General Assembly of the IUGG was due to meet in Switzerland shortly after the end of the Conference and would receive a report on the Conference proceedings.

Mr. MOITORET (International Hydrographic Bureau), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that IHB, with its membership of forty-one countries, had been working for a considerable time on some of the problems referred to the Conference. Mariners had of necessity been international in outlook for as long as there had been nations, and the general aim of IHB was to ensure that, for instance, a Greek navigator using British charts could safely dock a Liberian ship in an Australian port.

Standardization was therefore a very important aspect of the safety of navigation; that had been recognized even before IHB had been set up in 1921. The agency's work had not, of course, been completed, but it was working on a general chart of the oceans and a new standardization of the names of undersea features. A document on the standardization policy approved by the members of IHB would be circulated to the Conference.

Mr. Baranov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) took the Chair.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that PAIGH, an agency of the Organization of American States, was pursuing work of interest to the Conference at the regional level. The Institute had three commissions, on cartography, history and geography respectively, and a Committee on Geographical Terms had been set up by the Commission on Geography. The committee had two main tasks: to prepare a polyglot glossary of all geographical terms for the Americas in English, French, Portuguese and Spanish and to promote international co-operation in the standardization of place names. Considerable progress had been made in both tasks, but there was still much to be done.

The compiler of the geographical dictionary of Guatemala had made his knowledge and experience available to neighbouring Republics and, as a result of that and other technical assistance, a number of gazetteers would be published in the relatively near future. Panama had completed an extensive project for a five-volume geographical dictionary of Panama, containing over 90,000 place names. Many Argentine place names had been collected and studied by the graduate departments of Argentine universities, and the geographical dictionary of Chile was well on the way to completion. The Institute Committee on Geographical Terms was helping to circulate a series of general questions with a view to the production of a polyglot dictionary, and was studying a large number of terms collected in several countries. Papers on problems and their treatment in Guatemala and on terms used in colonial Argentina had been published by the institute.

He himself was working on a glossary of United States place names, involving over 25,000 maps and over 1 million names. He wished to commend the method of studying generic terms and mapping their distribution in a given country; such long and exhaustive study could produce surprising results.

Exchange of experience on problems identified in the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names
[Agenda item 8]

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to consider one by one the problems of domestic standardization of

12

geographical names listed in section II of the first report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names.[2] He first invited comments on problem (*a*).

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) said that the practice in his country was to investigate records of early explorations, surveys and land-settlement documents. If the local usage did not differ too widely from the names in those documents, the original name was used but, if the difference was appreciable, the name used in common practice was retained.

Mr. EMMANUEL (Ethiopia) said that, in his country, when mapping parties were sent out to the field, they first approached the local administrator who spoke the national language, and often the local dialect. The latter convened knowledgeable informants from the surrounding area. When place names had been collected in the field, they were brought back to the Institute of Mapping and Geography; the leader of the field party made the transcription into Amharic on the spot. Transliteration from Amharic into English was carried out in the office. Names were then recorded, both in Amharic and English, on standard card forms, mainly for mapping purposes.

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that, in his country, land surveys strictly followed contemporary local usage for geographical names, disregarding old documents except in cases where the topographic feature was very extensive and the literary standard was very old and could not be altered.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) acknowledged that discrepancies between local and official versions of geographical names presented some difficulty. In the USSR, priority was given to official names, but great care was taken to reflect local appellations in official documents, so that the names should be comprehensible to the local population. Discrepancies were thus largely eliminated.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*b*).

Mr. FRASER (Canada) said that, because of the variety of physiographic features, the naming of larger features—especially those whose limits were not clearly defined—sometimes required discussions between physiographic experts and surveyors and, where coastal regions were involved, consultations with specialists in international law. Although such larger features were not always of concern to the general public, there was sometimes strong public feeling about the application of local names to the entire feature or a large part of it. Where possible, the extent of physical features should be based on physiographic homogeneity: their limits should coincide with significant topographic breaks. However, where the usage in published material—such as explorers' journals and early geographical reports—transcended the natural limits it was sometimes necessary to extend the area to which the name applied. One principle of nomenclature recognized in Canada was that it was undesirable to give different names to different parts of a river, even when they were separated by lakes. If possible the same name was applied to the entire river, from headwaters to estuary. In such cases, local usage was given greater weight than other factors, although in unsettled areas it was better to retain the names recorded in historical maps or reports than to adopt new ones.

Mr. MOITORET (International Hydrographic Bureau), speaking at the invitation of the President, drew attention to the IHB special publication No. 23, on the *Limits of*

² See annex, p. 151.

Oceans and Seas. Problems of official delimitation had been recognized since 1919, and the publication represented an attempt to obtain agreement between national hydrographic offices, whose information for mariners was generally prefaced by broad geographical references. The publication was already in its third edition; further editions could be expected as changes were dictated by advances in oceanography.

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) said that his Government was concerned to note that the Bureau's publication showed the Great Australian Bight as extending from the south-western tip of Australia to the southernmost point of Tasmania. That was contrary to local usage; Australia would prefer to restrict the Great Australian Bight to a more limited area, and to introduce the term "Austral Sea". He asked what authority should be approached on the matter.

Mr. MOITORET (International Hydrographic Bureau), speaking at the invitation of the President, replied that any special publication of the Bureau was subject to modification at the suggestion of any member State. The Australian Government, as a member, could send a communication through its representative to the Bureau suggesting the change, which would then be put to all members. The decision would be based on a simple majority but, since the matter was of concern only to Australia, the change was unlikely to be opposed.

Mr. GALL (Guatemala) said that no specific principles had been adopted in Guatemala for the naming of geographical features, which was generally based on local usage. The authorities in his country were currently faced with the problem of naming certain physical features in the coastal region, and would welcome expert guidance.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, contended that publication No. 23 of the International Hydrographic Bureau illustrated a problem not specifically identified in the experts' report. The original purpose of the publication had been to provide the masters of sailing vessels with a means of reporting on the general areas in which they were sailing. At the time it had been impossible for them to do so in terms of the physical composition of water bodies but, as oceanographic data became increasingly available, specialists preferred to differentiate water bodies on the basis of water characteristics. In many cases, those characteristics did not correspond to straight lines drawn between headlands, and the delimitation of water bodies on the basis of water characteristics was likely to conflict with delimitations based on other principles.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*c*).

Mr. BREU (Austria) drew a distinction between problems arising from the existence of different spellings of the same name and problems arising from the existence of different names for the same feature. In his country, in such cases, preference was mostly given to the spelling which was etymologically correct. Where a mountain was named in two different ways in the valleys on either side of it, both names were indicated on the map, showing which was used in which valley.

Mr. MAHIAR-NAVABI (Iran) said that the prevailing practice in his country was to retain names recorded in historical documents. Although he recognized that it was important to take into account the unity of physical features and geographical limits, he thought it preferable to retain established geographical names where possible.

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) thought that, when there were two conflicting spellings, it was better to choose the one which corresponded more closely to the pronunciation, for the etymology of place names was often obscure and disputed even among etymologists.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*d*).

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) thought that the problem of naming parts of natural features which were named in their entirety, and of naming large features of which parts already had names, was of considerable importance and that the Conference should try to evolve some basic principles for its solution. The name of a group of mountains, for instance, should indicate by its etymology that it referred to such a group, and the names of individual mountains within the group should be clearly indicated. In Australia a problem arose in connexion with rivers which divided into two or more streams subsequently reunited. The practice was to call the separate streams branches of such and such a river. It would be useful if the Conference could give guidance in such matters. He hoped that suitable recommendations would be formulated in Committee I.

Mr. SUN (China) also hoped that some guidance would be given on the naming of rivers and branches thereof. The principal rivers in China had one name from headwaters to estuary, but others had different names in different reaches and branches.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem would become increasingly important as development involved increasingly large geographical features, parts of which were already named by local communities hitherto unaware of the extent of the feature as a whole.

The PRESIDENT observed that recommendation VIII of the Group of Experts offered a partial solution to the problem. It was to be hoped that the Conference could evolve a more complete solution and help the experts to make fuller recommendations on the subject.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) thought that the Conference should discuss the experts' recommendations in conjunction with the problems of domestic standardization which the experts had identified; it would be difficult to reach definite conclusions on the specific practical problems which delegations were raising, many of which could be solved only after prolonged research.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) thought that the Conference might try to resolve problems of the kind that arose when two nations applied different names to the same feature on the basis of different concepts. At another level, the Conference could also contribute to the standardization of terms along the lines suggested by the representative of Australia. It would be useful, for instance, to have standard terms for such features as branches of rivers which divided. He saw scope for such practical work in Committees II and IV.

Mr. MASSAQUOI (Liberia) said that the authorities in his country, too, were faced with the problem of naming rivers which currently had different names in the different territories traversed.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) said that, for cartographic convenience, his country's authorities had tried to avoid the use of such terms as the "north-west branch of such and such a river" because there was no room on small-scale maps for such long names. That consideration, he thought was worth bearing in mind.

The PRESIDENT said that it seemed to be the general view that such problems could usefully be considered in greater detail in Committees III and IV and on the basis of the material submitted by participating countries.

The meeting rose at 6 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE FOURTH PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Wednesday, 6 September 1967, at 10.20 a.m.

President:

    Mr. BARANOV *(Union of Soviet Socialist Republics)*

Exchange of experience on problems identified in the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names

[Agenda item 8] *(continued)*

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem *(e)*.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem was complex and would have to be discussed at some length. He proposed that it should be examined in Committee III.

Mr. GALL (Guatemala) supported the proposal.

The proposal was adopted.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem *(f)*.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that, in some of the replies transmitted to the Secretariat, countries had stated that the problem did not arise in their case. From such replies it was evident that the problem had not been stated with sufficient clarity, because in reality it was universal. However, it was more likely to arise in the exchange of material between countries than within a given country.

Mr. PEARCY (United States of America) said that, if countries which used languages subject to syntactical and grammatical variations were to decide on one syntactical or grammatical form for each geographical name, all difficulties with regard to international standardization would disappear.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem *(g)*.

Mr. MEYNEN (Federal Republic of Germany) said that the optional variations in question should be eliminated. In the example given, the official spelling should be "Rothenburg ob der Tauber".

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that, in his country, the names of certain communes included a specifying term to distinguish them from those of other communes. The so-called optional part was not really optional but formed part of the official name and must therefore be printed in full on official maps.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) strongly supported the view expressed by the last two speakers. It was the policy in

Canada to discourage the use of optional elements in the names of populated places.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem appeared to have been resolved by countries such as the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria and Canada.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem *(h)*.

Mr. MOITORET (International Hydrographic Bureau), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem had been discussed at the ninth International Hydrographic Conference. A proposal had been submitted that national hydrographic offices, when issuing maps of their own coastlines, should not change existing names which appeared in the national language; where such a change was unavoidable, the historical name should appear in brackets on the chart. The proposal had been discussed at considerable length and had finally been rejected, first because it was substantially covered by other resolutions adopted by the International Hydrographic Conference, and secondly in the expectation that a decision might be reached by the current Conference.

It might be of interest to mention some of the points which had been raised during the discussion. The representative of Burma had opposed the proposal on the grounds that, in many cases, the names now appearing on charts were not names recognized by the local inhabitants and it would therefore be desirable to change them. The Chilean representative, on the other hand, had pointed out that, in many cases surveys of coastal areas had been made by nationals of other countries, who had named the features concerned. Cape Horne and Graves Island, for example, were named after explorers. The same representative had also pointed out that, in some cases, geographical names were employed in the scientific denomination of certain species of marine life, so that it would complicate matters for biologists and other scientists if those names were changed. The Yugoslav representative had said that, in many cases, coastal names had been given by foreign Powers, so that there was a natural desire to replace them by national names.

Mr. LOXTON (Kenya) suggested, as one criterion to be applied to the problem, the extent to which a particular name was established. It would obviously give rise to all sorts of difficulties if a well-established name was changed. In his country, the conclusion had been reached that any name appearing in official publications had become established and thereafter became difficult to change. Names which appeared only on medium or large-scale maps (1:50,000 or 1:100,000) and not on other maps could still be corrected. In many cases, the changing of names might cause greater difficulties than retention of the existing names. One solution might be to give correct spellings in brackets.

Mr. SUN (China) said that Chinese geographical names had been in use for a very long time and were therefore difficult to change. When a new name was given to a place, his Government had adopted the system of retaining the established name in brackets for the convenience of the population.

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) said that the representative of the International Hydrographic Bureau had given some useful information on the difficulties involved; however, that representative had been referring to international nautical charts, whereas the Conference was discussing domestic standardization of names. It was generally agreed that international standardization of names must be based on domestic standardization. So far as the latter was concerned, the golden rule was that established names should not be changed. The only possible reason for changing such names was political.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that, when the Conference took up problem (j), it might find that some changes of name were in the national interest. As the representative of Kenya had suggested, it was necessary to lay down criteria to decide what were established names. In the desire to establish a single standardized form, it was possible that insufficient consideration had been given to the point made by the Chinese representative, namely, that an additional form might have to be used in certain cases. Further consideration might be given to the circumstances in which it was desirable to have more than one form.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) said that, as the Netherlands representative had pointed out, the frequent changing of names was undesirable in principle. However, the fact was that geographical names in most countries had changed from time to time, and it was therefore necessary to lay down criteria for such changes. The problem was of particular significance in developing countries, where the initial mapping had been carried out by other nations. In such cases, there was a good reason for changing names which were neither known nor used by the local inhabitants.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) said that, in Canada, an addition to the guiding principles had recently been approved to the effect that established names which had proved acceptable and satisfactory should not be changed. In some cases, however, it was desirable to change a name, either in order to avoid duplication or because changing customs had made the old name unacceptable. Nevertheless, he agreed with the representative of the International Hydrographic Bureau that the changing of geographical names might result in confusion among scientists attempting to identify specimens.

Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands) asked the Conference to consider what the term "efficient" meant from the cartographic point of view. In cartography, short single names were the most practical, since on small-scale maps, which were those most used by the public, long names often obscured important features or other names.

Mr. GALL (Guatemala) said that the problem was causing grave concern in his country where, as in many other Latin American countries, geographical names could be changed by presidential decision. When that was done, for instance in the case of names established during the colonial era, it led to grave international difficulties, since it involved changing the international hydrographic charts.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom), explaining the sense in which the word "efficient" had been used by the Group of Experts, said that an established name which had been widely used for many years might often be more effective than a new name because it was known by a greater number of people. On the other hand, if the original name could lead to confusion, for instance, through duplication with other place names, it might be more efficient to give the place a new name.

Mr. BURU (Libya) observed that, in African countries, many place names had been imposed by an occupying Power and, although given on international maps, were not those generally used by the inhabitants or by the present Government. In his country a considerable number of settlement place names given by the Italians had been replaced by the local names in Arabic spelling.

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) noted that the problem was not so much one of finding a new name to replace an established name as of making a choice between two established names, that shown on the charts and that used by the local inhabitants.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that names should not be changed too abruptly. Some names took longer to disappear from current use than others. A name should be adopted as both a national and an international standard name if the country concerned so desired, and the old name should be phased out until it was no longer as authoritative as the new one. The governing principle should be that the country concerned had a valid reason for making a change. It should be free to retain even an apparently meaningless name if it felt that that name validly represented the feature in question.

Mr. KHAMASUNDARA (Thailand) said that names to be changed could be divided into two categories: those known to foreigners, which were often based on a misunderstanding of the local language and were thus illogical; and local names which, although applicable at the time they had been given, were rendered inappropriate by changing conditions.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem was one of the most complex studied by the Group of Experts, for it had many emotional and political implications. He thought, therefore, that it might be useful to amplify the relevant paragraph of the experts' report so as to reflect the points made during the discussion.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) endorsed the Guatemalan representative's comment concerning the difficulties caused by the changing of established names in international waters with the consequent modification of the navigational charts of all countries. Particular attention should be paid to the international implications of any contemplated changes.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) suggested that the problem should be discussed in greater detail in Committees I and IV.

Mr. PEREZ GALINO (Spain) thought that those committees should be given some guide-lines. His country's report under agenda item 7 did not go into all aspects of the problem, but it mentioned many cases in which two names existed for the same place. Detailed studies had been made of the causes and origins of such duplication and it was thought that, as communications improved, such duplication might tend to disappear. Some causes

of duplication were purely grammatical, whereas others stemmed from the vernacular usage of the country. He thought that names representing an authentic description of a site or feature should not be altered and suggested that, when the relevant paragraph was modified, it should recommend retaining names which were either internationally accepted or truly descriptive.

The PRESIDENT said that more detailed discussion on the subject would take place in Committees I and IV.

He invited comments on problem (i).

Mr. FRASER (Canada) said that one of the principles of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names was, first, that personal names should not be used unless it was in the public interest to honour a person by applying his name to a geographical feature and, secondly, that that should be done during the person's lifetime only in very exceptional circumstances. That was a guiding rather than a mandatory principle; its aim was to discourage the naming of features for political reasons. Each case of such naming would establish a precedent and increase the difficulty of rejecting similar requests in the future. However, in some cases it had been considered a gracious gesture to commemorate the names of worthy pioneer families and, especially in the northern parts of Canada, the practice had been to commemorate the names of servicemen who had died for their country in the Second World War.

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) fully supported the principle stated by the Canadian representative. In that connexion, he thought that the Conference should discuss only the names of places and of major features, and not minor names such as those of streets and farms, which came under the jurisdiction of local rather than central authorities.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) cited, as an excellent example of the correct use of commemorative names, the USSR practice of naming lunar features after famous people. Even so, that practice might create problems for the makers of international charts, who would have to decide whether a name should be spelt as in the original language or should be directly transliterated from the Russian. Such commemorative use of historical names for newly discovered and nameless regions should be encouraged, but not the use of names of less eminent persons who were still living.

Mr. LOXTON (Kenya) agreed with the Netherlands representative that, in general, street names did not fall into the category of geographical names. However, they might do so in the case of very long highways. The principle applied in Kenya was that, if the road was large enough to appear on the 1:50,000 scale map and had been named by the local council, its name should be treated as a geographical name even though the local authority was solely responsible for the choice.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, drew attention to another aspect of the problem: that of personal names which had been assigned to features at some time in the past, for a reason since forgotten. In Alaska, for example, places were named after individuals who had gone there during the gold rush, and it was not known whether they were still living. It might therefore be unwise to impose an outright ban on the use of individuals' names during their lifetime, for much time could be wasted in inquiries.

Mr. LAMBERT (Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that in the Antarctic there was a deliberate policy of honouring explorers, even during their lifetime, by giving their names to geographical features.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the same was done for undersea features. The names of famous people were suitable for such use because they presented no problems of domestic standardization.

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that there were two distinct groups of countries: first, countries such as Australia, Canada and the United States, with vast areas which were either unpopulated or only recently settled, and where commemorative naming was perfectly acceptable; and secondly, smaller, more densely populated countries such as those in western Europe, where commemorative naming was unusual and should be discouraged. In his own country almost no geographical entity had been named after a person, either living or dead, since 1830, when a small village destroyed by flooding had been rebuilt and named after the Emperor Francis I, who had been largely responsible for its reconstruction.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (j).

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that in Austria, which was a federation of Länder, duplication in the names of communes within each Land was avoided. The names of all communes in a given Land had to be registered and, in cases of duplication, explanatory notes had to be added to the names concerned. At the federal level, every effort was made to avoid giving the same name to communes in different Länder, but the legal responsibility remained with the Land government.

Where two geographical features were found to have the same name and the name was widely known, some wording was added to the name in order to distinguish between the two features: for example, two rivers formerly having the same name on maps were now called "Warme Fischa" and "(Kalte) Fischa" respectively. No attempt was made to avoid duplication in the case of small hills or mountains known only locally.

Mr. MASSAQUOI (Liberia) said that there was considerable duplication of names in parts of West Africa. In Liberia, names of towns were duplicated in several counties, but that presented no problem provided that the name of the county was mentioned along with that of the town. The same applied to rivers, streams, hills and other geographical features. Alteration of long-standing names would involve, among other difficulties, political problems beyond the competence of the Board of Geographical Names, and would be resented by local inhabitants.

Mr. KHAMASUNDARA (Thailand) said that his country was in a similar position to that of Liberia with regard to duplication of geographical names: Thailand, like Liberia, found that problems of duplication could easily be resolved by mentioning the administrative division, such as the village, town or city, after a duplicate name.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) observed that there were many areas in the world where simple methods of identification of the kind suggested by the two previous speakers would not be possible. In a part of West Africa near Nigeria, for example, there were numerous places with the same name in one district. One remedy would be to avoid using names with meanings, such as "Red Hill", "Mud Lake" or "the House of . . .", since those were the

17

ones that tended to be duplicated and to cause ambiguity later on.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) said that there were two aspects of the problem. The first, already covered under problem (c), was the case of geographical entities with two or more different names, where a choice had to be made between them. The second was the case of entities in different regions having the same name. It was desirable that each entity should have a different name, but in practice that was no more feasible than it was, for example, in the case of family surnames. The only solution, therefore, was to recommend some way of differentiating between entities, for example, by adding to their names some description of their characteristics.

Mr. MARTY (Cameroon) said that his country had a problem which was probably commoner in African countries than elsewhere: that of people moving out of a small village and setting up a new one with the same name. In Cameroon, the difficulty was overcome by numbering such villages with Roman numerals.

In reply to a question put by Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), Mr. MARTY (Cameroon) said that no explanation of the Roman numerals was given in the map margin. The villages were numbered in the chronological order of their establishment.

Mr. MAHIAR-NAVABI (Iran) said that the descriptive name of a geographical feature in his country—such as the Black Mountain—could not be changed even if it duplicated another. Where there was duplication in the names of villages or small towns, on the other hand, one of the names had to be changed. New names were proposed by the local council for approval by a commission of the Ministry of the Interior.

The President said that, since there were no comments on problem (k), that problem would be referred to the appropriate committee for discussion.

He invited comments on problem (l).

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the problem was closely linked to problem (j) so that the comments made on one would, in essentials, apply to the other. Problem (l) did not as a rule, arise within one country; only when names were exchanged between countries did the printing form begin to present difficulties.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) endorsed the PAIGH representative's comments.

Mr. MEYNEN (Federal Republic of Germany) also agreed with the PAIGH representative. He suggested that, where deviations in printing form occurred, the Conference should recommend their deletion.

Mr. BREU (Austria) said that in his country there were two categories of geographical names. The first included place names in the strict sense of the term: names of inhabited places. Such names were often written in historical forms that had been decided upon officially; in such cases the accepted rules of standard German were not applicable and the standard printing form was not used. The second category included names given in strict conformity with the standard printing form which appeared in the latest editions of the official map of Austria.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (m).

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) asked that a member of the group of experts should explain the implications of paragraph (m).

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that complete avoidance of subjective factors in deciding on names was impossible. However, if the process of deciding names could be based on general principles, clearly stated and demonstrably in the public interest, it would not be necessary to rely on subjective judgements to the same degree. The more the process could be reduced to the application of principles and of widely known procedures, the fewer would be the occasions when a choice must be made between subjective evaluations of criteria that might have a bearing on the selection of names.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) wondered whether the problem related to the selection of new names by automatic data-processing or computerization—the method used in choosing names for new commercial products or companies. He agreed with the PAIGH representative that subjectivity in the selection of new names was unavoidable; all names except truly descriptive ones were more or less artificial.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (n).

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) drew attention to annex I of his Government's report under agenda item 7 and in particular to the last principle set out in the section on guiding principles for the Nomenclature Board of Tasmania.

The PRESIDENT speaking as the representative of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, said that the problem could easily be resolved if the basis for a standardized name was local. If such a name was unknown locally, it would take some time to become widely known. A new name could be made mandatory on paper but it would not necessarily be accepted by the inhabitants. For example, when streets were renamed, people often went on calling them by the old names. Consequently, in standardizing geographical names, preference should be given to local names.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (o).

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that the point of the comment made on that problem by the Group of Experts was that, if geographical entities could not be located by co-ordinates of latitude and longitude, they would have to be located by some other means. The problem then was to decide what kind of locational device should be used.

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) asked whether representatives had any preference as between latitude and longitude, on the one hand, and grid co-ordinates on the other.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) thought that both methods should be used. If a location could be expressed in geographical co-ordinates, it should be so expressed; but that did not remove the need for expressing it in the grid co-ordinates used on maps, on the appropriate scale, of the country concerned.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) asked for comments on the appropriate degree of precision for co-ordinates: whether degrees, minutes or seconds should be used.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that it would not be practical to require co-ordinates to be expressed in seconds. They should not, however, be defined with less accuracy than to the nearest minute, or much of the value of the gazetteer would be lost. Sometimes it might not be

feasible to distinguish between places which had the same name by means of the numerical system referred to by the Cameroonian representative. To avoid ambiguity, therefore, such places should be located to at least the nearest minute, and the nearest half-minute would be even better.

Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands) said that no Netherlands national had ever discovered where the Sierra Madre Mountains began or ended. In such a case, location to the nearest degree would be sufficient.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute of Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, endorsed the Netherlands representative's comment. Precision in location would depend on size and other closely related factors. No purpose would be served by attempting to locate geographical features more precisely than the available information permitted. The fineness of reading chosen should be roughly proportionate to the size and numbers of such features.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that he still considered that any unit greater than a minute would not supply, in the language of problem (o), "a precision necessary for all needs". The Netherlands representative's point concerning the Sierra Madre Mountains was more relevant to problem (p).

To revert to the Australian representative's inquiry, the choice between grid references and geographical co-ordinates depended on the degree of accuracy required. For example, in dealing with positions on 1:50,000 scale maps or positions related to maps on that scale, it would be less satisfactory for many purposes to have places defined even to one minute than to one-tenth of grid square. The latter was a far better system of reference in such cases.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) agreed with the United Kingdom representative that geographical entities should as far as possible be located to the nearest minute. That was done in the *Gazetteer of Canada* series, and there was rarely any need for greater precision. For the volume on British Columbia, however, the grid system had been used. That provided reasonable accuracy, but it was not possible to determine the exact position without referring to one of the best maps. Moreover, in the preparation of a gazetteer, the use of the grid system meant including a longer locational description in the text than was necessary when the geographical co-ordinates were used.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that, in discussing problem (o), the Conference should bear in mind future requirements. The trend was towards automation of cartography and indexing—including the indexing of names—and towards the use of names indexed by some method of data processing. He therefore considered that places should be recorded nationally to a very high degree of accuracy in order to allow for automatic name-placement in mapping and for other elements of automation which would facilitate and simplify the cartographer's task.

Mr. LOXTON (Kenya) suggested that the discussions in the principal committees might reveal that some reference system other than geographical latitude and longitude would better serve the purpose of location: for example, the universal transverse Mercator projection with its kilometric grid, providing references to the nearest kilometre

The meeting rose at 1.5 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE FIFTH PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Wednesday, 6 September, 1967, at 3.20 p.m.

CONTENTS

President:
    Mr. BARANOV (*Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*)

Exchange of experience on problems identified in the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names

[Agenda item 8] (*concluded*)

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*p*).

Mr. SCHULE (Switzerland) expressed the hope that the compilers of glossaries of geographical terms would bear in mind the difference which often existed between the local meaning of such terms and the meaning assigned to them by geographers. Local usage generally defined a feature as it occurred in the locality, thereby limiting the meaning of the term used to designate it. A knowledge of the range of local meanings of terms would be of only indirect assistance to geographers, who had to work with precise terms that always bore the same meaning. In some cases, therefore, a glossary of terms for geographers would conflict with local usage. Moreover, many technical neologisms invented by geographers for their convenience were unrelated to any locally used terms. The cartographer's approach to a glossary of geographical terms would therefore be different from that of a linguist adopting local usage as a basis. A dictionary of local dialectal terms was being compiled in Switzerland; he gave instances of terms which bore different meanings in different parts of the country, and of terms whose meaning differed from usage in France.

Mr. NEDELEC (France) acknowledged that it would be difficult, if not impossible, to compile an authoritative glossary of standardized terms in view of the great variety of local terms used and their different spellings and meanings in different regions. Many place names and family names derived from such terms; he gave some examples. After the 1960 meeting, the French National Geographical Institute (GN) had published a glossary which included meanings of many dialectal terms found on maps and occurring in place names and family names. Copies were available for any delegations interested.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) thought that the Conference should concern itself in the first instance with glossaries of terms which occurred in geographical names, and not with glossaries of all geographical terms. It should

not become too deeply involved in the vast subject of geographical terms or the essentially linguistic science of onomastics. He felt that it would make little progress unless it limited its objective, at least in the initial stage, to generic terms which formed a part of geographical names.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) agreed. He thought that the different ways in which geographical terms were used in different countries were often the result of ambiguous or inaccurate translations.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, expressed agreement with the French representative that it would be impossible to compile authoritative glossaries of all geographical terms at that stage. However, the Conference could not confine its attention to generic terms occurring in place names. The different meanings attributed to geographical terms by different persons and in different parts of the world had created a major problem in geography, and efforts should be made to standardize usage by publishing authoritative definitions of terms.

Mr. CORDERAS DESCÁRREGA (Spain) agreed. Authoritative guidance was needed to clear up misconceptions; he gave some instances of misinterpreted toponyms in his country.

Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands) drew attention to the practice followed in many schools of inventing simplified names, which were easy to memorize, for geographical entities abroad that had no official designation. For instance, the term "Castilian Separation Mountains" was commonly used in Netherlands schools but was not found on maps.

Mr. MURZAEV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) said that the key to the interpretation of geographical terms and of many geographical names lay in etymology, which could therefore be the key to their standardization. However, not all geographical terms were of interest to the Conference; it was essentially concerned with terms from which geographical names were derived. The rest could more appropriately be studied by linguists. It was important for those concerned with the standardization of names to have a clear understanding of local semantic changes which altered the function of terms incorporated in geographical names. He had submitted under agenda item 10 an "international glossary of local geographical terms", discussing the principles on which such a glossary should be based. The text would be presented in Committee II.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problems (*q*) 1 and 2.

Mr. HOVDA (Norway) observed that place names were a part of a country's cultural heritage and had in many cases been transmitted orally from ancient times, thus constituting valuable historical material. Many place names or names of features in Norway had no descriptive or

generic element. They could not be translated or modified by the addition of such generic elements for purposes of standardization. Norway had a special committee to deal with appeals in regard to geographical names.

Mr. MUTZIGER (United States of America) drew attention to the ambiguity resulting from the use of abbreviations, which was the subject of problem (*q*) 2.

Mr. BREU (Austria) cited as an instance of such ambiguity the use, in Italy, of the letter "S" as an abbreviation for many forms of the word "*San*"; that practice created difficulties for people who did not know Italian. It was admittedly necessary to indicate the nature of the geographical entity named, but on maps that could not be done by adding a generic term to the existing name.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) felt sure that the group of experts had not intended that generic terms should be attached to existing geographical names, but only that indexes should give an indication of the nature of the entity to which the name applied, and should include a glossary of the generic toponyms in existing names.

Mr. DAHLBERG (Netherlands) agreed that in some countries it would be impossible to add generic terms to place names. One solution would be to preface the full geographical name with the generic term in very small print.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*r*).

Mr. MUTZIGER (United States of America) said that the Group of Experts had intended the problem to be brought to the attention of countries which included the definite article in some of their geographical names, so that the integration of articles in those names could be standardized. The experts had not been sure of the significance of such standardization for domestic use, but considered it important for foreigners to know whether the article was being used.

Mr. SFICLEA (Romania) said that in his country the names of rivers, for instance, could be written in three ways on maps. In the first place, the definite article might precede the hydronym; secondly, the article might be omitted on maps containing many names; and thirdly, the article might be omitted, and the hydronym preceded by the Romanian word for "river". The third variant was most satisfactory for domestic use, while the second was most convenient for foreigners.

Mr. BLOK (Netherlands) observed that the question whether the definite article was essential depended on the language of the country where the place name occurred. In the Netherlands a simple rule had been evolved: the article was regarded as essential if it had to be repeated after an adjective qualifying the place name. Perhaps that rule could apply in some other languages.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) said that that rule would not apply to the English language.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that in his opinion the Netherlands rule was purely domestic in its application.

Mr. BURU (Libya) said that in Arabic the definite article was an essential part of a geographical name.

Mr. BREU (Austria) suggested that, to avoid confusion, countries whose languages included the definite article in the name itself should give all the alternative forms of the name in their gazetteers.

Mr. AYOUBI (Lebanon) said that in his country it had been decided to omit the Arabic definite article "El" in the Roman transcription when the article occurred at the beginning of a geographical name. That solution had the advantages of taking practical usage into account and of simplifying spelling on notices, signs and so forth. Nevertheless, the article was retained if it occurred in the middle of a geographical name.

Mr. CORDERAS DESCÁRREGA (Spain) said that in his country the question was regarded as one for the Spanish Language Academy rather than as a geographical or topographic matter.

Mr. MUTZIGER (United States of America), referring to the Lebanese representative's remarks, said that United States cartographers wished to know the exact names of geographical features in Arabic, for confusion might arise if the article were included at the beginning of a place name on an Arabic map, where the script had not been latinized.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*s*).

Mr. BURU (Libya) said that in recent years there had been a trend towards standardizing the Arabic alphabet in English and French. Arabic writers had reached agreement on the transliteration, and *Gazatteer* No. 41 of the United States Board of Geographical Names had been taken as a basis. The Arab States had decided that classical Arabic should be used in writing the alphabet, to the exclusion of dialects. It had not yet been decided, however, whether the English or French transcribed form should be authoritative; Libya used the English spelling, but countries such as Morocco and Algeria used the French.

Mr. MUTZIGER (United States of America) had been interested to note that countries other than his own had had difficulties in documenting name spellings in the Arabic alphabet area. For instance, the problem was referred to in the USSR paper submitted under agenda item 11.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) observed that the term "Arabic script", used in the document just mentioned seemed preferable to "Arabic alphabet".

Mr. VADIIE (Iran) drew attention to a transliteration system for geographical names in Arabic prepared by the head of his delegation in consultation with United States experts and contained in the *Romanization Guide* published by the United States Board on Geographic Names.

Mr. MAHIAR-NAVABI (Iran) said that, although great stress was being laid on ambiguities in documenting Arabic-alphabet names, he did not think Arabic usages were as ambiguous as those of the Roman alphabet. Where Arabic was concerned, the question was simply one of including or not including signs representing short vowels, but the sounds of the Roman alphabet varied widely among the European languages. Those difficulties might perhaps be overcome by using a phonetic system based on the Roman alphabet.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) agreed with the previous speaker as to the inadequacy of the Roman alphabet, but observed that there was no reliable way of rendering Arabic name spellings into other languages unless short vowels were fully indicated.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) asked whether the consensus among Arabic scholars referred to by the Libyan representative meant that all diacritical marks should be included in standard name spellings.

Mr. BURU (Libya) reiterated that the Arabic-speaking countries had reached agreement on a standardized Arabic alphabet.

21

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*t*).

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) asked why the experts had not referred to the written Chinese language in paragraph (*t*).

Mr. MUTZIGER (United States of America) replied that, although place names in Chinese raised problems of pronunciation, those problems were not as serious as the problems involved in reading Sino-Japanese and Sino-Korean characters. Where Japanese place names were written only in Sino-Japanese characters it was very hard to tell what the pronunciation should be, since many of the characters had three, four or even five different readings. Moreover, many Japanese maps showed names in Sino-Japanese characters for features named under Chinese influence, and names in *kana* for other features; the same, *mutatis mutandis*, applied to geographical names in Korea.

Mr. SUN (China) said that the pronunciation of Chinese characters was not uniform because many dialects were spoken in China. In 1928, however, the Government had published a phonetic system known as national phonetic letters, giving a standard pronunciation for each character. The system was taught from the primary school level, and could be checked with dictionaries. The phonetic system was not yet, however, being introduced into maps in the way that *kana* was being used on Japanese maps. An attempt had also been made to standardize the transcription of Chinese names into the Roman alphabet.

Mr. BREU (Austria) inquired whether the phonetic rendering of Chinese into Roman characters established by the Peking authorities was generally acceptable to the Conference.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) considered that that question might be discussed fully in Committee III.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*u*).

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, said that problem (*u*), like problems (*f*) and (*l*), was mainly one of providing grammatical information.

The PRESIDENT invited comments on problem (*u*) separately or on the list of problems as a whole.

Mr. VADIIE (Iran) said that it was absolutely essential to find generally applicable principles of standardization. That need was clearly brought out in the USSR paper on problems of correlation between national and international standardization of geographical names.[2]

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) said that a point not covered in the list of problems just examined was the question where to draw the boundary between oceanographic features and features dealt with by national name-standardizing bodies. In his opinion, national standardization should cover not only land areas but also a country's continental shelf.

Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico) observed that, in addition to the continental shelf, features in other parts of oceans—whether or not including a continental shelf—should be named, perhaps by a supranational authority.

Mr. FRASER (Canada) suggested that features in national or international waters might be dealt with by Committee IV. The question was the treatment of names of features subject to a single sovereignty.

Mr. LAMBERT (Australia) confirmed that the features he had in mind were those falling within the sovereignty of a single country.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom) considered that the problem should be referred to Committee I, since it related to the limits of application of national standardization. The Australian representative had raised an important point; the Conference had hitherto concerned itself mainly with land names, whereas interest in resources situated beyond coastal limits, especially the resources of the continental shelf, was increasing rapidly. Even if the Conference could lay down no rules concerning limits, it could discuss the problem of names of features lying immediately outside coastal waters.

Mr. BURRILL (Pan-American Institute on Geography and History), speaking at the invitation of the President, observed that the discussion would relate to two different matters: first, the names of relatively small features known and named by people living on the adjacent land; and secondly, features discovered during the execution of oceanographic programmes and which had not been named. Both types of features could be discussed in Committees I and IV.

Mr. KOMKOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) endorsed the views expressed by the two previous speakers.

The PRESIDENT announced that the Conference had completed its consideration of agenda item 8.

Election of officers

[Agenda item 3] (*concluded*)

Mr. Ratajski (*Poland*) *was elected Vice-Chairman of Committee I by acclamation.*

Mr. Halvorsen (*Norway*) *was elected Rapporteur of Committee I by acclamation.*

Mr. Mahiar-Navabi (*Iran*) *was elected Vice-Chairman of Committee II by acclamation.*

Mr. Rosu (*Romania*) *was elected Rapporteur of Committee II by acclamation.*

Mr. Khamasundara (*Thailand*) *was elected Vice-Chairman of Committee III by acclamation.*

Mr. Pergorier (*France*) *was elected Rapporteur of Committee III by acclamation.*

Mr. Matta (*Lebanon*) *was elected Vice-Chairman of Committee IV by acclamation.*

Mr. Loxton (*Kenya*) *was elected Rapporteur of Committee IV by acclamation.*

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

[Agenda item 7] (*continued*)

Mr. SUNTHAN (Cambodia) said that, since its establishment in 1955, his country's National Geographical Service had had a toponymy section which was responsible for standardizing geographical names. Before that time, the staff concerned with the subject had been mainly French and the subordinate posts had been filled by Viet-Namese. Place names had been transliterated into Roman letters according to French systems, and many of them had been interpreted by persons who did not possess a very good knowledge of Khmer, the national language. All the early maps of Cambodia on the scale of 1:100,000, 1:400,000 and 1:500,000 had been printed in Roman letters, but the National Geographical Service had now published a series of special maps with place names in Khmer for the use of schools.

---

[2] See below, agenda item 12.

A bilateral agreement concluded between his country and the United States in 1957 had made it possible for the National Geographical Service to carry out a project for the standardization of geographical names with the assistance of the United States Army Map Service, and to produce maps on the scale of 1:50,000 which showed place names in both the Khmer and the Roman alphabets. Unfortunately, owing to lack of experience, some errors had been made in the transcriptions into Roman letters. As a normal procedure, the service sent out teams to collect the names of inhabited places, watercourses and other geographical features from the local inhabitants. Those names were subsequently recorded according to the local pronunciation and checked with the land registration authorities of the province in question. Since the inhabitants of the north-eastern province had a marked regional accent, it was difficult for foreign researchers to record place names correctly. It was possible, therefore, that certain errors had occurred in compiling information on those parts of the country which had been covered by researchers from the Philippines.

The service was currently working with the Ministry of the Interior on a compilation of all place names in the kingdom. Those names were generally of historical or legendary origin, although some might have other characteristics. For example, certain villages in the north-eastern province had Laotian names, which were either translated directly into Khmer or replaced by new names connected with local history or legend. He pointed out, in conclusion, that the real name of his country was "Kampuchea", which was rendered in French as "Cambodge" and in English as "Cambodia"; from a phonetic point of view, the English form was closer to the original than the French.

Mr. SIMPSON (Ghana) said that, before 1967, the various organizations in his country which were responsible for geographical names had worked independently. Only recently had a central committee been formed, under the auspices of the Academy of Sciences, with a view to national standardization. That committee was being assisted in its work by regional sub-committees which dealt with the problems of local dialects. Since there were at least twelve different dialects in Ghana, which covered an area of 92,000 square miles and had a population of 7 million, progress to date had been understandably slow and much remained to be done.

The meeting rose at 5.50 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE SIXTH PLENARY MEETING

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Monday, 11 September 1967, at 10.30 a.m.

CONTENTS

President:
     Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

Address by the representative of the Secretary-General

Mr. ARCE (Representative of the Secretary-General) said that the work of the Conference was of vital importance for the future; it should be judged in the context of contemporary technological development. The age was an outstanding one in world history because of the remarkable technological progress made in the past fifty years; it could be described as a technological Renaissance. Technical advances were increasing the interdependence of nations; through jet transportation, the world was becoming smaller; natural resources were no longer the heritage of individual countries, but belonged to the whole world.

Cartography, too, had improved its technical methods. The plane table and theodolite had given way to aerial photography and the use of lasers in topographic surveying. It was astonishing that, in a period of such enormous technical progress all over the world, geographical names should have remained in a state of such utter confusion. The Conference had been convened to remedy that situation. The importance that Governments attached to it was evident from the quality of the participants.

The outcome of the Conference would be a landmark in the progress of universal geography and an important step forward in standardizing the maps produced in different parts of the world. It would also be of invaluable assistance in statistical and census work.

The United Nations hoped that one of the results of the Conference would be that countries which had not yet appointed special authorities to be responsible for fixing geographical names would do so as soon as possible. The Conference would suggest guide-lines for the work of national authorities and would indicate the rules to be followed in standardizing geographical names.

The work of Committee IV, on international co-operation, was particularly important as a contribution to the constant efforts of the United Nations to promote such co-operation. The Cartography Section would act as a centre for the interchange of geographical names and for the supply of information on the rules established for their standardization.

On behalf of the Secretary-General, he thanked the Group of Experts on Geographical Names for their valuable preparatory work, and wished the Conference every success.

The PRESIDENT said that the Secretary-General's representative had given a useful reminder to the Conference that it was meeting not as a gathering of people from different countries, but as an international group seeking ways of co-operating internationally, and had drawn attention to the wider implications of international co-operation in the standardization of geographical names.

The Secretary-General's representative had also stressed the significance of the Conference's work in the context of the remarkable advances in technological development. The technological "explosion" would have an increasing bearing on the practical measures discussed, adopted, tried out and modified. New tools were available; names would have to be handled in unprecedented numbers; and new methods would have to be devised to cope with them. One of the difficulties was that changes occurred so rapidly that past experience was no longer an adequate preparation for dealing with future problems. However, countries where there had not been much teaching on the standardization of geographical names might usefully bear in mind the value of teaching as a means of learning. Those who had had experience in teaching were well aware how much they learned in the process of preparing material for their students.

He welcomed the presence of the Secretary-General's representative, whose position in the United Nations and long-standing interest in the subject of the Conference would enable him to view its work in the right perspective. That would be extremely helpful, since experts often tended to overlook the wider implications of their particular problems.

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

[Agenda item 7] (*continued*)

Mr. FOLDI (Hungary) said that the official forms of administrative names in his country were given in a gazetteer published regularly by the Central Statistical Office; the official forms of names other than administrative names were established by the Committee on Geographical Names of the National Office of Lands and Mapping. The committee dealt with geographical names in Hungary, and the progress made was described in the last paragraph of his country's report. It also dealt with the Hungarian forms of foreign geographical names. A list of the names of foreign countries in the forms to be used in Hungarian would be published shortly and the committee intended to publish later a similar list of the

names of the most important foreign geographical features.

Important progress had recently been made in the standardization of place names through the exclusive use of the orthography established by the Hungarian Academy of Sciences.

A collection of about 800 names other than administrative ones was being compiled, as reported in the fourth paragraph of his Government's report.

Mr. KABENGELE (Democratic Republic of the Congo) said that his country did not yet possess a national organization responsible for standardizing geographical names. It therefore welcomed the opportunity to benefit from the experience of other countries, especially on the subjects covered by items 7 and 8 of the agenda.

With regard to item 9 of the agenda, concerning national standardization, the collection of names in his country was based on information provided by the local administrative authorities; the official spelling reproduced the sound of each name as pronounced by the local inhabitants in accordance with the rules on the spelling of geographical names given in the annex to his Government's report.[2]

---

[2] See below, agenda item 7.

The generic term of geographical features was always given in French, the principal language of the country.

The four main vernacular languages were Kikongo, Lingala, Tshiluba and Kiswaheli. Geographical names were recorded in the language mainly used by the local inhabitants.

The Congolese Geographical Institute intended to set up field teams to carry out research on geographical names, in collaboration with administrative authorities and local inhabitants, according to the rules already mentioned. On receipt of information from the teams, the Geographical Institute would merely verify that the rules of spelling had been correctly applied to the written word.

A provisional national gazetteer had been produced, based on the 1:200,000 scale maps which were the only ones to cover the whole country. The place names were listed by districts and their positions given to the nearest 15′. However, when the Geographical Institute's new map production programme had been completed, it should be possible to produce a more accurate national gazetteer.

The meeting rose at 11.10 a.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE SEVENTH PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Monday, 18 September 1967, at 10.20 a.m.

CONTENTS

President:

Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

Report on credentials

[Agenda item 4]

The PRESIDENT said that, since Mr. Coker (Nigeria), who had been elected Second Vice-President, had been unable to attend the Conference, the Credentials Committee had only four members instead of the five prescribed by rule 3 of the rules of procedure. The simplest course of action open to the Conference would be to amend rules 6 and 3 of the rules of procedure relating respectively to the election of Vice-Presidents and the composition of the Credentials Committee.

Mr. LEWIS (United Kingdom), supported by Mr. GALL (Guatemala), proposed that rule 3 should be amended to provide for a Credentials Committee of four instead of five members, and rule 6 to provide for one Vice-President instead of two.

The proposal was adopted unanimously.

The PRESIDENT announced that, except in one case, the Credentials Committee had examined the credentials of all the representatives and had found them in order. He understood that the credentials of the representative of Senegal, who had just arrived, had been submitted but not yet examined. When they had been examined, the representative's name would be added to the official list of representatives.

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

[Agenda item 7] (*concluded*)

Mr. COHEN (Bulgaria) said that geographical names in his country were the concern, under the Academy of Sciences, of the Bulgarian Language Institute and the Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography. The Institute had for some years been engaged in a thorough study of Bulgarian toponymy and the problems involved in transcribing foreign geographical names. The Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography had for many years been preparing maps of Bulgaria and transcribing foreign geographical names, mainly for small-scale maps. The Bulgarian Council for Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names, established in 1964, was responsible

to the Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography, whose decisions were binding on all Bulgarian institutions. To ensure that standard forms were used by communication media, the council issued lists of transcribed foreign geographical names and correct spellings of Bulgarian names. Its transcriptions were based, to the extent that Bulgarian grammar and pronunciation permitted, on the accurate phonetic reproduction of the pronunciation officially recognized and most widely used in the country concerned. In the past two and a half years, the council had published eleven lists of transcribed European and American geographical names. It had clarified the principles of transcription and dealt with a wide range of subjects, including transcription from languages belonging to different linguistic families.

Accurate transcription of foreign geographical names required constant contact between countries, in the form of exchanges of information on national toponymy and exchanges of experience at symposia; it also required a critical appraisal of transcription in other countries, and the publication of periodicals dealing with the theoretical problems involved. He fully supported the view of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names that regional conferences on the subject should be convened from time to time. United Nations action could be of great assistance to national bodies concerned with the standardization of geographical names.

Mr. APONTE (Venezuela) said that Venezuela, by reason of its geographical position, had a varied toponymy derived from the many different tribes and peoples which had settled in its territory or on its borders. The standardization of geographical names required research by linguists and historians.

A cartographic programme was being carried out in Venezuela, and in conjunction with it a list of geographical names was being compiled. Maps on the scale of 1:25,000, covering 5′ latitude by 7.5′ longitude, were being prepared and were being scaled down to 1:100,000 sheets covering 20′ latitude by 30′ longitude. The competent section of the Directorate of National Cartography had since 1960 converted 4,800 aerial photographs to maps on the scale of 1:60,000, 1:50,000 or 1:25,000 and had also prepared maps of forty-five urban areas using standard symbols provided for in cartographic manuals. The more important urban areas had been selected for special study. In rural areas, information was being obtained from local inhabitants, who accompanied official teams in the field. A new section on geographical names had been established and was preparing toponymic maps, gazetteers and glossaries.

Mr. GALLES (Luxembourg) said that for the past fifteen years the Toponymy Board (Commission de toponymie) had been working on the standardization of geographical names for a series of 1:25,000 scale maps of

Luxembourg. The board tried to observe the principles of the spoken language but also sought to avoid changing name-forms already adopted in other countries. Place-name spellings were based on forms appearing in historical documents in French, while the names of topographical features were transcribed into a form corresponding as closely as possible to local pronunciation. The phonetic writing system used, although ideal for linguistic purposes, was ill-suited to cartographic needs.

Mr. RATAJSKI (Poland) said that a great deal of work had been done since the war on the restoration of former Polish geographical names, especially in the western and northern parts of the country. The results of that work were contained in a two-volume publication recently issued by a special commission of leading linguists and geographers established for that purpose. The geographical names proposed had subsequently been officially approved for general use. A detailed study by Professor Kondracki on the division of the country into physical geographical regions included a list of proposed regional names; most had been adopted, although some were still under discussion. Another recent work, by Professor Zwolinski, dealt with the hydronymy of the Vistula basin, which covered three-quarters of the country. Most of the work on geographical names was done by field teams under the auspices of the Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography. Large-scale maps had been prepared for the entire country, and the names of nearly all places had been approved in an official form. General geographical gazetteers were drawn up by a special administrative department.

The Commission on Geographical Names, established in the Geographical Institute of the Polish Academy of Sciences in 1952, had worked out some general principles for the transcription of foreign geographical names. The gazetteer published by the commission contained nearly 20,000 names giving Polish spellings alongside officially recognized forms, an indication of the system used for transcribing geographical names from languages with non-Roman writing systems, and a glossary of common geographical terms. Work was in progress on a world atlas.

Mr. ROUBIK (Czechoslovakia) said that cartographers and geographers had been working on the standardization of geographical names in his country for some decades and that a gazetteer had recently been issued giving the geographically and philologically correct forms of all names of inhabited localities in Czechoslovakia. Any name changes were decided by the competent authorities jointly with a special commission of cartographical, geographical and philological experts. A Terminology Commission established under the Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography and composed of representatives of government departments and academic institutions, together with specialists in history, geography and philology, dealt with any problems arising in connexion with geographical names in Czechoslovakia and with the transcription of foreign geographical names. Each administrative area had its own terminology commission. The work of the area commissions was supervised by the central Terminology Commission, which had issued an instruction manual on the subject. The commission's gazetteers, when approved by the Directorate of Geodesy and Cartography, were used for the preparation of maps in the Czech and Slovak languages.

The PRESIDENT said that since all problems could not be covered during the Conference, attention should now be focused on those points upon which agreement could be reached. If the Conference made recommendations which could not be implemented, co-operation would not be advanced. The Conference might agree not to adopt any resolution which would have the effect of trying to make any country do what it was unable or unprepared to do.

It was so agreed.

The meeting rose at 11.15 a.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE EIGHTH PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Thursday, 21 September 1967, at 4.20 p.m.

CONTENTS

President:

Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

International co-operation: (a) Formation of a United Nations permanent commission of experts on geographical names; (b) Steps towards international standardization

[Agenda item 12]

The PRESIDENT observed that, according to a view repeatedly expressed, the most important action the Conference could take was to set up machinery to ensure that the co-operation achieved during the session did not lose momentum. Although the proposed permanent committee might take some time to establish, there appeared to be no reason why unofficial action should not be taken in the meantime.

An *ad hoc* group of experts had held its first meeting the previous day and had elected the following officers:

Chairman:	Mr. Burrill (United States of America)
Vice-Chairman:	Mr. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics)
Rapporteur:	Mr. Nédélec (France)
Co-ordinating Secretary:	Mr. Christopher (United Nations Secretariat).

The *ad hoc* group would meet again on the following day, after the closure of the session, to attempt to ascertain what action the Conference had left incomplete and what arrangements could be made for work pending the establishment of the proposed permanent body.

Mr. GLEDITSCH (Norway) drew attention to a report submitted by the delegations of Denmark, Sweden and Norway on regional standardization of geographical names,[2] which gave a short account of the action taken jointly by their Governments under a resolution adopted by the sixth International Congress of Onomastic Sciences, held in Munich in 1958. He had chosen to introduce the report under item 12(b) because he believed that co-operation within groups of countries of similar language was the first step towards international standardization. It was obvious that an international agreement on transliteration could not be arrived at immediately, but he was convinced that it would be reached in time. To attain that goal, every effort should be made by groups of countries of similar language to obtain as wide a measure of compromise as was possible. In the experience of the Scandinavian countries, changes in the spelling of geographical names were accepted with surprising speed despite the almost universal view that spellings should not be changed.

Having completed the first step towards regional standardization, the Scandinavian countries were ready to take the second step. If other groups of countries of similar language did what those countries had done, he believed that international agreement on standardization could be reached within ten years.

Report of the Conference

[Agenda item 13]

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to examine the draft reports of Committees I and IV.

The draft report of Committee I was adopted.

The draft report of Committee IV was adopted with drafting amendments.

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to examine the successive chapters of its draft report.

Chapter I was adopted subject to possible corrections to the list of names and designations of participants.

The meeting rose at 5.10 p.m.

SUMMARY RECORD OF THE NINTH PLENARY MEETING[1]

Held at the Palais des Nations, Geneva, on Friday, 22 September 1967, at 9.50 a.m.

CONTENTS

President:

Mr. BURRILL (*United States of America*)

Report of the Conference

[Agenda item 13] (*concluded*)

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to examine the draft report of Committee III.

The draft report of Committee III was adopted with drafting amendments.

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to examine chapter II of its draft report.

The first part of chapter II was adopted.

Resolution 19 and recommendations A, B, C and D were adopted.

The PRESIDENT pointed out that recommendation E consisted of a series of amendments to the language of recommendation VII of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names.[2]

In reply to a question by Mr. ORMELING (Netherlands), Mr. GOMEZ DE SILVA (Mexico), Rapporteur, stated that, although the Conference had not adopted any resolution endorsing the recommendations of the Group of Experts, recommendation VII of the group had been approved, with certain amendments, in Committee II and was now before the Conference.

Mr. SIMPSON (Ghana) said that, in his view, the Conference was not competent to amend a recommendation adopted by the Group of Experts. The Conference should simply state its views concerning recommendation VII, without attempting to analyse it in detail. It was clearly the view of the Conference that the fourth paragraph of the recommendation was inappropriate. The Conference should include in its own recommendation only those parts of recommendation VII which it considered satisfactory.

Mr. BARANOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) recalled that his delegation had been represented on the working group of Committee II which had dealt with the paragraph in question. The working group had considered that paragraph most carefully and had recommended that it should be deleted because its adoption would result in the addition of a number of new diacritical marks and letters to inscriptions on existing maps.

He felt that the Conference could safely agree to the deletion of that paragraph.

Mr. GEELAN (United Kingdom) endorsed the Soviet representative's comments. There were three possibilities open to the Conference. First, it might leave recommendation VII as it stood, but that would imply that the recommendation had not been discussed. Secondly, it might delete the fourth paragraph and adopt a revised version of recommendation VII; that would be a rather drastic solution. Thirdly, it might accept a minor revision of the recommendation and refer the whole question to the proposed United Nations permanent Commission of experts on geographical names. In his opinion, the last was the most practical course of action.

The PRESIDENT suggested the following procedure: the Conference would state in its report that, after considering recommendation VII of the Group of Experts, it had taken the view that that recommendation might be better worded. It would then approve an amended recommendation in the form of a resolution, which would become resolution 20, concluding with the words: "Recommends that the proposed United Nations permanent commission of experts on geographical names should consider this question further".

It was so agreed.

The remainder of chapter II, as a whole, as amended, was adopted.

The PRESIDENT invited the Conference to examine the draft report of Committee II.

The draft report was adopted with drafting amendments.

Mr. BARANOV (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) observed that, according to a letter from four delegations circulated as a Conference document (E/CONF.53/L.85), the Government of the Federal Republic of Germany was authorized to speak for the whole of Germany. The fact was that Germany was currently composed of two sovereign States, the Federal Republic of Germany and the German Democratic Republic. His delegation had drafted a document on the subject (E/CONF.53/L.87) and requested that it should be circulated as a Conference document.

The PRESIDENT said that, if there was no objection, the Soviet request would be granted.

It was so agreed.

Mr. GALL (Guatemala), supported by Mr. KABEN-GELE (Democratic Republic of the Congo) suggested that the Conference should adopt a resolution addressing a vote of thanks to the United Nations Secretariat.

The PRESIDENT suggested that the Conference should adopt such a resolution in principle, leaving the text to be drafted by the Rapporteur.

It was so agreed.

---

[1] The original text of the record appeared as document E/CONF. 53/SR.9.

[2] See annex, p. 151.

The report of the Conference as a whole, as amended, was adopted, subject to editing by the United Nations Secretariat.

Closure of the Conference

The PRESIDENT expressed his appreciation to all concerned for their collaboration in a very successful Conference. All participants had learned a great deal from contact and discussion with their colleagues from other countries, and he was sure that the work and collaboration thus begun would be continued and intensified in the future. The proposed permanent committee would constitute a useful central nucleus, but all concerned should realize what part they would have to play in future efforts to standardize geographical names. He hoped that it would be possible to work out a practical procedure whereby all who had participated in the Conference could be invited to submit their comments on any action recommended by the *ad hoc* group of experts.

Mr. ARCE (Representative of the Secretary-General) said that he had followed with interest the fruitful work of the Conference. The large number of participants and of countries, specialized agencies and international bodies represented showed what keen interest the first Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names had aroused throughout the world. It had not been able to resolve all the problems involved in such standardization, but it had worked out basic principles which would be of great use in all future work on the subject and had recommended establishment of the machinery needed to continue that work. The permanent committee could not be set up without the approval of the Economic and Social Council, but the work would be carried on in the meantime by an *ad hoc* group of experts. It was to be hoped that the experts would be able to encourage all countries to create national committees on the standardization of geographical names and to advance the process of international co-operation and understanding begun at the Conference.

After the customary exchange of courtesies, the President declared the Conference closed.

The meeting rose at 11.35 a.m.

Part II

TECHNICAL PAPERS

AGENDA ITEM 7

Reports by Governments on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names

PAPER PRESENTED BY KENYA[1]

Many of the problems detailed in section II of the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names[2] have been encountered in Kenya and are now discussed in a separate paper submitted under agenda item 8. The following summary indicates the progress made in Kenya along the lines of the recommendations set out in section III of the report.

Recommendation I

The Survey Act 1961 (Cap. 299 of the 1962 Laws of Kenya) repeats the provisions of earlier Acts that there shall be a Standing Committee on Geographical Names (SCGN) which shall advise the Minister for Lands on the spelling of all names on maps of Kenya, having due regard to historical, orthographical and ethnic considerations.

It will be seen that the SCGN has only advisory powers and no executive authority. It can recommend spellings to be published on maps but not their adoption in other spheres of activity.

The SCGN held regular meetings from 1948 to 1952, during which time many decisions on policy and principles were made; these have been a valuable guide for the Survey of Kenya (as caretaker for the SCGN) ever since.

The Chairman of the SCGN is (ex-officio) the Director of Surveys. The original members of the SCGN were each expert in one or more local languages and also had extensive geographical knowledge of the country. Such qualifications were found mainly among missionaries and retired administrators. However, it was not possible for a dozen members of a central committee to cover adequately such a vast field of research (an area of 225,000 square miles, or 580,000 km² with over thirty main languages and up to 30,000 principal geographical names). The committee examined about 2,000 individual names and the majority of its decisions on spelling have been confirmed, but a large number were based on inadequate local knowledge and have had to be revised after further research.

The supporting secretariat and records work for the SCGN has been provided by the Survey of Kenya. Although the committee has not met for many years, the task of collecting names, processing them through to the printed maps and maintaining records has been carried on by the secretary to the SCGN and by other Survey staff.

The basic unit of collection is one sheet of the 1:50,000 scale national map (1:100,000 where there is no 1:50,000). When a map sheet is being field-checked prior to first publication or revision, the surveyor collects names of all features by local inquiry. The names are listed systematically on a form; the surveyor fills in the first three

columns, which give the map reference, the feature name, and the draft name. Where more than one administrative unit (usually a district) falls in one map sheet, each district is dealt with separately.

The surveyor takes the form to the most suitable local authorities; these may be administrators, missionaries, school-teachers etc. (a specially chosen local committee would be the ideal). The consultant completes the following columns on the forms: recommended spelling; alternative name (if any); vernacular spelling; language; meaning. A final column is provided for the International Phonetic System spelling; but as the committee's only member conversant with that spelling has left Kenya, this column is usually unfilled.

After the forms are returned to the Survey office, the SCGN should approve or alter the recommended spellings and send them to the Minister for publication. These stages are at present in abeyance. The spellings are checked by the secretary (who may refer them to another consultant) and are passed for publication on maps.

Finally approved names are card-indexed. However, out of 30,000 names collected, only 2,000 have reached this stage.

Copies of maps and names lists were supplied to the United States Board on Geographical Names, which in 1964 published a Kenya gazetteer containing 26,400 names. Since that date, more names have been collected and revised spellings for others have been adopted; a new edition of the gazetteer will become necessary.

Recommendation II

Some of the main principles laid down by the SCGN which have been continuously applied to the treatment of names on Kenya maps are stated below.

(*a*) Names should be spelt in Swahili orthography. (It should be explained that, in East Africa, English is the language of higher education, foreign trade and most commercial and government business; but Swahili is the recognized *lingua franca* and is spoken either in pure or simplified form by many more people than is English. It uses a Latin type alphabet omitting the letters "Q" and "X" while "C" occurs only in the digraph "CH". Consonants are pronounced as in English and vowels as in Italian.) This rule is not yet applied to names of foreign origin spelt in English orthography, which are retained in their original spelling even if this contains a "Q", "X" or "C".

(*b*) In addition to Swahili and English, several other orthographies are in use in various parts of Kenya (e.g. Kikuyu and Maasai). Where the spelling in a local orthography of a geographical name has become established by usage, it may be adopted on maps, subject to principle (*a*) above (e.g. Kikuyu "C" must be rendered as Swahili "CH", Maasai "N" as Swahili "NG" etc.). The

1 The original text of this paper, prepared by J. Loxton, Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.3.

2 See annex, p. 151.

SCGN considered that less confusion would be caused by, for example, Swahili mispronunciation of Kikuyu "Thika" than by transliterating it into Swahili "Dheka".

(c) Diacritical marks, apostrophes and hyphens are to be omitted on maps.

(d) Incorrect spellings established by usage are accepted, but the correct spelling may be shown in parentheses (in practice, this is rarely done).

(e) Where different language groups have different names for the same geographical feature, the alternatives should be given.

(f) "Private" names (e.g. of estates, roads etc.) must be accepted as spelt.

Recommendation III

This has been dealt with in outline under recommendation I above.

Recommendations IV, V and VI

No action has been taken on these.

Recommendation VII

See (b) under recommendation II above.

Recommendations VIII, IX, X, XI and XIII

In the compilation of the Kenya gazetteer, some steps have been taken along the lines of these recommendations. However, a great deal more research is needed.

Recommendations XII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, and XIX

Little action has been taken on these.

Recommendation XVIII

Topographic maps of Kenya are plotted on the universal transverse Mercator projection and all medium-scale maps carry a numbered grid. All lists of geographical names give the grid reference of the position of the name on the map.

Recommendations XX and XXI

These are not applicable to Kenya.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE NETHERLANDS*

An official standardized spelling of geographical names is not yet in existence in the Netherlands. In general, a spelling sanctioned by usage is applied.

Various authorities publish their own name lists or gazetteers, of which the spelling is not always identical.

In 1936, a standardized gazetteer of some 40,000 names was published without being officially accepted. The spellings on that list are obsolete.

In 1960, a government spelling committee was asked to elaborate a proposal for a standardized gazetteer in

accordance with the spelling system in use for the Dutch language.

A proposal for standardized spelling of all place names is now ready, and the committee is at work preparing an additional list of all geographical names mentioned on the official topographic map of the whole country on the scale 1:25,000 (except names of roads and buildings); this amounts to about 60,000 names. In this the location of geographical entities is expressed not by their co-ordinates but in reference to the nearest place of more than 100 persons. The gender of the names is not indicated. The proposals of the committee have not as yet been officially authorized.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY*

A. GENERAL REMARKS

The spelling of place names—and only partly of names of natural features—is a matter for official decision in Germany.

As the Federal Republic of Germany is a federation of *Länder*, each *Land* is responsible for the spelling of names within its jurisdiction. The laws of each *Land* define the competent authority, as well as the required procedures for the official spelling and/or changes in spelling, for all communities and places within its jurisdiction.

The official spellings are listed in regional and national *Gemeinde und Ortsnamenverzeichnisse* (lists of names of communes and inhabited places).

Following a proposal of the German Society for Cartography, the Standing Committee on Geographical Names (SAGN) was set up in 1959. Since then, it has been working together with various agencies in Austria and Switzerland. The office of the SAGN is located at the Institut für Landeskunde (regional geographic office), Bad Godesberg. The SAGN is an independent committee of experts in geography, cartography and linguistics from

official and private agencies whose function is to co-ordinate and promulgate the rules for the domestic standardization of names and to publish the results achieved. In addition, it represents the German-language area in questions of international standardization of geographical names. As part of the programme of domestic standardization, the SAGN published the *Duden Wörterbuch geographischer Namen*, volume I: *Europa ohne Sowjetunion*, in 1966. This gives the official spellings of German place names and the authorized forms for geographic entities recommended for domestic use. Included in each reference is a short geographic description and the pronunciation according to the International Phonetic Association (IPA) system. This will be of particular value for foreign users. The standardized spelling of German names was determined through consultation with the various agencies concerned: the *Land* survey offices, the German Hydrographic Institute etc.

B. PARTICULAR POINTS

1. *Geographical names (except names of communes and inhabited places)*

The names of geographical entities, hydrographic features, mountains, large forests and moors, parts of seas

etc., have for the most part not been subject to official decision. Such names have, however, appeared on official maps, hydrological maps and sea charts.

The names of geographical entities appearing on the official topographic maps may be determined, changed or dropped by the various *Land* survey offices for their respective areas.

Thus far, such changes have not been published in the official memoranda. However, the Institut für Landeskunde has a standing documentation service for geographical names, set up as the Kartei der Landschaftsnamen (general catalogue of geographical names) and will publish an official gazetteer of geographical names. A map *"Relief und Landschaftsnamen"* (1:1,000,000), with the recommended geographical names, has been published by the office to promote the authorized spelling approved by the SAGN on a broad basis.

Names of protected natural areas and natural parks are determined by official decision; there are also proposals for determining the names of important highways.

The names of larger rivers and streams appear in the serial volumes of the *Deutsches Gewässerkundliches Jahrbuch*, the official gauging records and hydrological maps which are published by the various local water boards. In the case of artificial waterways (canals, dammed lakes), the official names are published by the responsible authority for the *Land* (Ministry of Transport, Ministry of Agriculture). The spelling of geographical names in the Deutsche Bucht (German coastal area on the North Sea) is co-ordinated for German sea charts and topographic maps at 1:25,000 by the SAGN working together with the German Hydrographic Institute, the various river and shipping authorities, and the *Land* survey offices of Lower Saxony and Schleswig-Holstein. The authorized spellings are published in special lists.

2. Names of communes and inhabited places

The official spelling of such names in each of the *Länder* is determined by the designated authority.

Since 1871, official gazetteers have been published by the State statistical offices and have indicated the authorized spelling of names of communes and inhabited places. Since 1925, general directories covering the then German Reich and the present Federal Republic of Germany, have been published by the National Bureau of Statistics.

Since 1952, the various State statistical offices have notified the Regional Geographic Office at Bad Godesberg of changes in names of communes and inhabited places. The information is recorded and passed on to the various national agencies, such as the Federal Statistical Office and the Institute for Applied Geodesy. The establishment of a central clearing house has the advantage of registration and co-ordination at a national level. Most place names in Germany are the product of a long historical development. This explains the differences in spelling: the retention of older forms, such as "Frankenthal" with a "th", together with the new use of "t" as in "Wuppertal"; "Cochem" with a "C", together with the newer "K" as in Kassel; the parts of compound names written either together or separately (e.g. "Klein Gusborn", "Kleinsachsenheim" and "Klein-Auheim") and different official forms of additional geographic suffixes (e.g. "Bernstein a. Wald", "Giengen an der Brenz"). A complete standardization of all forms (prefixes and additional geographic suffixes) and spellings would be difficult to achieve and extremely costly.

Gemeindenamen (names of communes)

Changes in and additions to communal names are usually proposed by the communes themselves. In other cases, where a change is proposed by the state government, consultation with the local communal board is necessary. In Bavaria, consultation with the township population is mandatory.

Wohnplatznamen (names of inhabited places)

In some *Länder*, changes in names of inhabited places are decided by the local communal board and are then regarded as official. In other *Länder*, changes must be approved by the office of the district government; in Bavaria, the local population must endorse them.

Flurnamen (names of lands and fields)

Such names have in most cases not been determined by any official agency, their entry in official cadastral plans and gazetteers being based upon a study of the most widely used forms in older records and maps. For the *Land* Baden-Württemberg, a general work, *Flurnamenbuch, Flurnamenschreibung in amtlichen Karten* has been published (third edition 1958). This deals with the meaning of *Flurnamen*, gives the spelling according to authorized spelling rules and lists the most important *Flurnamen*. In other *Länder*, *Flurnamen* are approved by the local survey offices before being included in topographic maps.

PAPER PRESENTED BY AUSTRIA*

The Austrian authorities concerned with cartographic and statistical matters have striven for a long time to achieve the standardization of geographical names and have achieved the results set out below.

I

As the present Conference is interested in the problem of standardization of geographical names at a national level mainly from the standpoint of the usefulness of the results for international cartographic work, this report will be based on the publication which is the only one to represent all classes of geographical names, namely, the map of Austria at 1:50,000 published and frequently revised by

the Survey Department of the Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying.

II

Conformity does not exist in all instances between the writing of geographical names on the map of Austria at 1:50,000 on the one hand and that on the map series of the Survey Department on the other.

The map of Austria at 1:25,000 has been published only for a part of Austria and is not kept up to date. Work on the map of Austria at 1:200,000 has just begun. This map will be—as regards geographical names—in full accord with the map of Austria at 1:50,000. The general map of central Europe at 1:200,000, which will be replaced for Austrian territory by the map of Austria at 1:200,000,

often contains names of an older period. It is intended to reach full conformity in the writing of names on the map of Austria at 1:500,000 and on the base map of Austria at 1:50,000.

In addition to the Survey Department of the Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying, we should mention the following offices concerned with the writing of geographical names:

The Austrian Central Statistical Office, which publishes the Austrian gazetteer after every census, taken at intervals of about ten years;

The Cadastre Group of the Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying; this group establishes the cadastre, which contains all names of fields, meadows, pastures, woods etc. in Austria, collectively called "*Riednamen*", and also the names of isolated homesteads (*Hausnamen*);

The Land Register Office; this register, together with the land register map, is a collection of public documents compiled under the Ministry of Justice, containing all *Riednamen*;

The Central Hydrographic Office, under the Federal Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry, which publishes a list of names of all hydrographic entities, together with a map at 1:200,000;

The hydrographic register, administered by the provincial governments and district offices, and containing the names of all usable rivulets, rivers, canals and lakes;

The Toponymic Committee of Vorarlberg, which has produced a list of all geographical names of the area published in the gazette of the province of Vorarlberg. The spelling of names in this list is compulsory for all offices in Vorarlberg.

III

For the purposes of this report, the geographical names on the map of Austria at 1:50,000 may be divided into the categories shown below.

(a) *Names of communes* (Gemeinden), *inhabited places* (Ortschaften) *and parts of inhabited places* (Ortschaftsbestandteile). These names are officially determined and can be altered only by laws or decrees. Their official spelling is registered in the gazetteer of Austria, whose practice is accepted by the Department of Surveying. Alterations in the spelling of names taking place between two censuses, and consequently between two consecutive editions of the gazetteer, are announced by the Austrian Central Statistical Office to the Department of Surveying, which prints the altered names on its maps.

(b) *Names of uninhabited buildings or ruins of any kind: bridges, chapels, monuments, barns etc.* These names are ascertained on the spot by the Survey Department. Only the names of ruins of castles are taken from the gazetteer of Austria, where they are represented in square brackets. As regards Vorarlberg, the practice of the Toponymic Committee is compulsory. Apart from Vorarlberg, the names in this category are official only if they are found in an official publication.

(c) *Names of mountains, passes, glaciers, valleys and areas.* These names are investigated on the spot by the Survey Department. As regards Vorarlberg, the results of the Toponymic Committee are binding. As there does not always exist a sharp distinction between names of mountains on the one hand and *Riednamen* on the other hand, the cadastral map has to be used with caution (see (*d*)

below). As regards the official status of these names, the facts stated in (*b*) above apply.

(d) *Names of fields, meadows, pastures and woods* (Riednamen). These names are registered in the cadastre and are legally fixed by being incorporated in the land register. An alteration in the cadastre is possible only by a decree of the council of the commune. Although the Survey Department uses the cadastral map for purposes of comparison, it follows modern local usage. This is justified by the fact that the names on the cadastre are often obsolete; however, the map affords a practical means of ascertaining the living usage.

It is not intended by the administration of the cadastre and land register to take into account the divergent results of the field investigation done by the Survey Department. Considering the small number of names in this category occurring on topographic maps, the great effort involved in the complex procedure of correction would not be justified.

In Vorarlberg, the Survey Department follows the usage of the Toponymic Committee.

In other areas, and except where the map of Austria at 1:50,000 is in accordance with the cadastre and land register, the names of fields, meadows, pastures and woods on the map are official only so far as they appear in an official publication.

(e) Hydrographic names. With this category of names, the Survey Department follows to a great extent the usage of the Central Hydrographic Office of the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry. In doubtful cases, however, the local usage prevails. On the other hand, the Central Hydrographic Office checks any suggestion for alteration. Complete conformity between the map of Austria at 1:50,000 and the register of the areas of the Austrian river basins does not exist at present, but will be striven for and attained in the future in consequence of the constant exchange of data. The register of the areas of the Austrian river basins has great authority as regards the naming of hydrographic entities. It is partly based on the hydrographic register, partly on intensive field investigation. As regards Vorarlberg, the Survey Department as well as the Central Hydrographic Office follow the usage of the Toponymic Committee.

In other areas, and except in those instances where the names on the map of Austria at 1:50,000 are identical with those in the hydrographic register, the hydrographic names of the Survey Department are official only in so far as they appear on an official map.

In the same way, names of hydrographic features adopted by the central hydrographic office that have not been taken over unaltered from the hydrographic register are official only in so far as they appear in an official publication.

IV

A report on the standardization of geographical names must deal not only with the efforts for co-operation in the field by the different official authorities, but also with the question of the extent to which the naming is done in accordance with uniform rules. In this context, two categories of names are to be distinguished.

First, there are names of communes (*Gemeinden*), inhabited places (*Ortschaften*), and parts of inhabited places (*Ortschaftsbestandteilen*) that have long been determined

by official action. Their spelling will only seldom be altered, and then by official action only.

Secondly, there are other geographical names which the Survey Department is free to decide upon independently (apart from Vorarlberg). This group includes names on which the Vorarlberg Toponymic Committee in its original work had to decide on its own, and the results of which have received official sanction.

Austria belongs to two German dialectal areas: the Alemannic (Vorarlberg) and the Bavarian (other parts of the country). Within the Bavarian dialectal area there exist several subdialects. As dialect is much more commonly used in Vorarlberg than in the other provinces of Austria, the Toponymic Committee has paid special regard to dialectal forms. In that province, less adaptation to the literary language has been achieved. Some standardization has been achieved by unifying the spelling of the generic parts of geographical names, for instance, *Schrofen* (rocks), *Mähder* (mountain meadows), *Tobel* (valley) etc.

The principles applied for the naming of features, areas and hydrographic entities by the Survey Department are fixed partly by instructions, partly by usage. They are set out below.

The surveying personnel hears the names of features, areas and hydrographic entities mostly in a dialectal form. These dialectal names have to be written in letters of the German alphabet. Special letters, accents or diacritical marks as used by dialectologists are not employed. The guiding rule for spelling is that the map user must be understood in asking his way among the local population. As regards the generic elements in names, the following rules are observed: if dialect and literary language use the same word for one term, the spelling used will be literary rather than dialectal. Thus we shall have not "*Beag*" or "*Beri*", but "*Berg*" (mountain); not "*Roan*", but "*Rain*" (ridge between two fields); not "*Doi*", but "*Tal*" (valley) (examples for Lower Austria). If a word exists only in dialect, the writing has to be adapted to the dialectal phonetic form; for example, "*Maib*" (instead of "*Moab*" or "*Boaz*") is so widely used for "forest clearing" or "young forest", and "*Parz*" for "mound", that no other form can be recommended. Within an area of a uniform subdialect, standardization is desirable. For example, for the dialectal "*Greit*" (forest clearing) there can be found in Lower Austria, in older maps, the spellings "*Greut*", "*G'reut*", "*Krait*", "*Kreit* (h)", "*Kräut*" etc. In this case, the form "*Greud*" has uniformly to be used; it is understood by the peasant folk and also etymologically correct. Translations are not permissible: "*Hübel*" and "*Hügel*" (both meaning "hill") are etymologically different words. Where the peasant used "*Hübel*", the topographer is not allowed to write "*Hügel*", although the latter is more commonly used in literary German.

But even with etymologically identical words, the literary form has to be disregraded if there exists a commonly used dialectal spelling, or if understanding would be endangered. Thus the dialectal "*Gupf*" (mountain top) cannot be replaced by "*Kuppe*" (of low-German origin; only in recent times has it been included in literary usage), or "*Arbes*" (pea), as in "Arbesbach", "-tal" by the literary "*Erbse*".

The spelling is often a compromise where cautious consideration has been given to dialectal pronunciation, meaning, etymology, existing and accepted dialectal spellings and literary language. In any event, misspellings such as "*Kräuter*" (herbs) for "*Greute*" (forest clearings)

or "*Zwergäcker*" (fields of dwarfs) for '*Zwerchäcker*" (fields with transversally arranged lots) must be avoided, as well as arbitrary spellings such as "*Werd*", "*Werdt*", "*Wert*", "*Werth*", "*Wort*", "*Wörth*", "*Wirt*", "*Wirth*", used side by side for the same term, namely "*Wert*" (river island).

V

In Austria there exist three minority languages of cartographic importance: Slovene, Croatian and Hungarian.

Hungarian is spoken today by the local majority only in two communes of Burgenland. The official cartography has to deal only with some Hungarian names of fields, pastures and woods, which are spelled according to the rules of the Hungarian language.

Slovene is spoken in the southernmost parts of Carinthia, and Croatian in many isolated areas of Burgenland (twenty-seven communes with a Croatian-speaking majority). Article 7 of the Austrian State Treaty of 1955 provides for official bilinguality of "topographic terminology and inscriptions" in the administrative and judicial districts "where there are Slovene, Croat or mixed populations". The necessary Austrian rules, however, have not been established. In the meantime, the names of communes, inhabited places and parts of inhabited places are officially written in German only, those rare instances excepted where no German name or spelling exist (see also below), e.g. "Tihoja" (inhabited place) and "Drazja vas" (part of an inhabited place).

As regards the spelling of the names of mountains, areas and hydrographic features, the Survey Department is free to fix the correct forms. Non-German names are written according to the same principles as the German ones. The guiding rule here, too, is local usage. In the Croat settlements of Burgenland, the Croat spelling is used, whereas the Slovene names in southern Carinthia are spelt mostly without the diacritical marks of the Slovene alphabet; the Slovene sounds are approximately represented by means of the German writing system. This practice is connected with the fact that southern Carinthia has long been an ethnically mixed area in which Slovene geographical names (and, what is more, often the same name) occur in Slovene-speaking communes as in mixed or German-speaking ones. Furthermore, if the names of mountains, areas and hydrographic features in Slovene-speaking or mixed communes were written according to official Slovene spelling, there would arise an awkward discrepancy in the spelling of the names of inhabited places and parts of inhabited places (according to the gazetteer of Austria) as well as of isolated farmsteads (mostly according to the cadastre); in those sources the rules of German spelling prevail almost to the exclusion of any other.

Only if the name of a mountain, area or hydrographic entity consists of two separately written Slovene names, one an adjective, the other a generic term, is Slovene spelling used without exception, e.g. "Tolsti vrh" (big mountain), "Mrzli vog" (cold grove), "Goli vrh" (bare mountain), "Mrzla gora" (cold mountain), "Dolga njiva" (long field) etc., for what we have here are not proper names whose meaning often remains obscure even to the Slovene-speaking populations, but easily understandable syntactical constructions of the Slovene language.

VI

All authorities concerned are very much interested in further standardization, and the Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying thinks that a definite solution will be best

attained by creating toponymic committees in all *Länder* on the model of the Toponymic Committee of Vorarlberg.

VII

In addition to these efforts by official agencies we may mention the work of SAGN (Standing Committee on Geographical Names) at Bad Godesberg, Germany, in which Austria and Switzerland are represented by two members each. The aim of this committee is to further the standardization of geographical names within the German-speaking countries. The results of its work cannot be considered as official or semi-official; they are nevertheless of scientific and practical importance.

In connexion with the standardization of geographical names in Austria, the volume on Europe of the *Duden Wörterbuch geographischer Namen* (Mannheim 1966), deserves mention. This undertaking was financially supported by the Austrian Federal Ministry of Education and received scientific assistance from the Austrian Academy of Sciences.

The contribution made by this book, which contains about 2,500 geographical names (1,500 place names) of Austria, to the standardization of geographical names of this country may be stated as follows:

(*a*) Comprehensive orthographic rules for German geographical names have been elaborated and strictly obeyed;

(*b*) The writing of place names is in full accordance with the gazetteer of Austria;

(*c*) In Vorarlberg, the usage of the Toponymic Committee of Vorarlberg is strictly observed;

(*d*) Names not mentioned in items (*b*) and (*c*) are spelt according to the latest editions of the map of Austria at 1:50,000;

(*e*) A thorough study of the best cartographic and geographical sources was made in those areas for which the map of Austria at 1:50,000 had not yet been published. Similar studies were necessary to find the correct delineation of large areas and mountain ranges which in consequence of their size were not to be found on the map of Austria at 1:50,000. In doubtful cases local investigation had to be made.

PAPER PRESENTED BY HUNGARY*

Two organizations deal with the standardization of geographical names in the Hungarian People's Republic. The official forms of administrative names (names of counties, districts, communes and towns) are contained in the gazetteer which is published regularly by the Central Statistical Office.

The official form of names other than administrative names is established by the Committee on Geographical Names acting within the framework of the National Office of Lands and Mapping. This committee deals with geographical names in Hungary and also with the regulation of use in Hungarian or foreign geographical names.

Important progress has been made recently in the standardization of place names, so that the official form of such names now approaches the orthography established by the Hungarian Academy of Sciences. Many uncertainties in spelling have thus been considerably reduced.

In regard to names other than administrative names, important progress has been made through the compilation of a collection containing about 800 names. The proposed

list of names of rivers, mountains, regions etc. contained in this collection has been sent by the Committee on Geographical Names to local authorities all over the country as well as to local institutions familiar with geographical names and their use. The committee makes its decisions taking into consideration—as far as possible—the observations received.

The committee has also studied the names of countries throughout the world and established the forms most appropriate for use in Hungarian. The list of country names in Hungarian will be published before long.

The committee's future plans include the regulation of the use and spelling of geographical names of areas outside Hungary regarded as most important.

The committee participates in the very important work of compiling geographical names in Hungary. This work has been in progress for several years, partly on a voluntary basis, partly subsidized. As a result of this work, the compilation for several counties is nearing completion; one county has already published the results. The names compiled and systematized in this way serve as a basis for the fullest possible standardization of geographical names in Hungary.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THAILAND*

Although there is no national body in Thailand to deal with names policy and with the standardization of geographical names, some effective action has been taken or is being initiated by various government agencies and research organizations.

The Government planned the compilation of a geographical gazetteer of the whole kingdom in 1933. In 1935, the work of compiling the Thai geographical gazetteer was assigned to the Royal Institute. It was soon discovered that the source material collected through the various educational supervisors all over the country was

not sufficiently reliable for inclusion in the gazetteer. The Institute had therefore to review and study each name and its related information individually. The Institute's decision upon each name was accepted as the most authoritative one.

In addition to the compilation of the gazetteer, the Royal Institute established a romanization system in 1939.

The Ministry of the Interior is the other main authority responsible for collecting and filing names of all administrative divisions. Within the Ministry of the Interior a committee was set up in 1963 to deal with administrative division names. Whenever a conflict of names exists, or there is any changing of names, those names are sent to the Royal Institute for review and checking.

The Royal Thai Survey Department has also been active in the selection and processing of geographical names. In 1956 there was urgent need for large numbers of geographical names for large-scale mapping of the kingdom. Names were collected in the field during the classification stage of the project. To obtain names in the field, trained researchers questioned local officials and local inhabitants. The names were reviewed and checked with the existing old maps as well as with the Ministry of the Interior lists before being used on map publications.

When it was discovered that many geographical names of the new maps differed from those in other sources, the Royal Thai Survey Department realized the urgent need for an organized body to deal with the standardization of geographical names. A geographical names section was set up within the department for this purpose in 1965. The section is now active in resolving names problems in co-operation with other relevant governmental and non-governmental agencies. A long-range project has been established by the Royal Thai Survey Department to carry out a field check of doubtful geographical names. The results of this field checking will be useful for the consideration of any authorized body already in existence or to be organized in the future to standardize such names.

The need for immediate action to resolve the problems related to the standardization of geographical names has become urgent. A private research organization which is working on the project for the Government—the Village Information System—must have not only standardized Thai and romanized place names, but also officially accepted names on which to build its village data base. In working closely with the Royal Thai Survey Department and the Royal Institute to produce an official list of primary and secondary administrative divisional names (71 *changwats* and 550 *amphoes* and *king amphoes*) of Thailand, it was discovered that no single official list of

either *changwat* or *amphoe* names in Thai characters existed. There were several labelled as official but no two of them agreed on all Thai spellings. Moreover, the Romanization of those names was not uniformly rendered in any one list.

In view of those problems, work was started on a new list immediately. During the period December 1966 to March 1967, the Royal Thai Survey Department produced a list of every *changwat, amphoe* and *king amphoe*, and submitted it to the Royal Institute committee. The committee gave careful consideration to every name. Some Thai spellings were changed from the spelling appearing in the decree published in the *Royal Gazette*. Such changes were always made in accordance with the Thai spelling rules laid down by the committee in the Thai dictionary of 1950. Romanization was checked with equal care. The new names have now been approved by the Government as the official names for the two highest levels of administrative divisions.

The names of the two lower administrative divisions, Tambon and Muban, have now been selected for standardization. The work has been assigned to a Committee for the Establishment of an Official Administrative Divisions Directory appointed by the Ministry of the Interior in May 1967. The committee consists of representatives from the Ministry of the Interior, the Royal Institute, the Royal Thai Survey Department and the National Statistical Office. A sub-committee has been designated to collect names from ministry and National Statistical Office lists with a view to compiling the most reliable list. This list will always include the Thai spelling together with its Romanization.

The Government of Thailand appreciates the encouragement given by the United Nations. It is hoped that a national body to deal with geographical names will be established in Thailand in the near future.

PAPER PRESENTED BY NIGERIA[1]

In Nigeria the national mapping agency—Federal Surveys—which now forms part of the Federal Ministry of Works and Housing, is responsible for the standardization of geographical names. This is effected in close collaboration with the survey departments of the Nigerian states.

Before Nigeria attained independence, the spelling of geographical names was based on what was known as the RGS II system of the United Kingdom Royal Geographical Society. This created a problem because the spelling of some names on published maps did not agree with the local spelling, e.g. "Idogo" and "Sawonjo" were shown as "Idawgaw" and "Shawanjaw" respectively. This problem was later resolved by adopting the local spelling for all geographical names on published maps.

Nigeria is already covered by a map in fifteen sheets at 1 : 500,000, originally published in 1924. The map is a compilation from data supplied by military intelligence officers, administrative officers, explorers' sketches and the then existing records of the survey departments of Nigeria. Its accuracy cannot, therefore, be relied upon. Nigeria is now being accurately mapped on a scale of 1:500,000 and

it is from this map that other smaller scale maps are compiled. The standardization of geographical names is now based on this map series.

All geographical names are collected in the field and are based on the local spelling. The names are then submitted to the Surveyor-General of the state in which the area lies and he, in turn, sends them to the appropriate local authority. The names are certified by the Surveyor-General and the local authority before they are accepted for showing on maps.

The Director of Federal Surveys and all the surveyors-general constitute the Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

A gazetteer of geographical names has been published in two volumes.[2] This gazetteer is based on the 1:50,000 map series. As soon as each map sheet is published, the names are extracted and, through automatic data processing, arranged for publication.

1 The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.21.

2 Copies of these two volumes, presented by the Government of Nigeria, are available for reference in the Map Collection of the United Nations.

PAPER PRESENTED BY CAMEROON*

In Cameroon, the Geographical Service is at present the body which deals at the federal level with the whole problem of standardization of geographical names.

Several authorities publish lists of names from time to time. These lists, being made for different purposes, cover specific categories of toponyms. Thus the Territorial Administration Office prepares lists of polling stations; the prefectures and sub-prefectures prepare lists of villages for census purposes; the French Office of Overseas Technological and Scientific Research (ORSTOM) publishes lists of villages by department.

In preparing the lists of names for the maps it publishes, the Geographical Service has to use all the documents listed above as well as information collected in the field.

The names are transcribed according to principles of standardization described below.

Standardization presents a special problem in Cameroon because the country is bilingual. French and English are the two official languages of the federation, French being spoken in the federal state of East Cameroon and English in the federal state of West Cameroon.

The policies applied in the two states will therefore be examined in turn.

In East Cameroon, the preparation of the final basic maps, at scale 1:200,000, with contour lines, is far advanced and more than four-fifths of the country have been covered. Hence the question of standardizing the names to be marked on these maps has been under detailed consideration for a long time. East Cameroon has adopted the "principles for the transcription of African toponyms" drawn up by the French National Geographical Institute (IGN) for use in the African States where it is responsible for map-making. These principles were laid down in final form in 1963 and represent the fruit of linguistic and cartographic experience in widely varied linguistic areas of Black Africa. They may be summarized as follows:

The Roman alphabet is used;

The conventions adopted do not, generally speaking conflict with the existing rules which link spelling with pronunciation in French;

In principle, all letters are pronounced; however, some digraphs in current use have been preserved;

One letter, or one digraph, represents one phoneme only;

The use of diacritical marks has been reduced to the strict minimum.

The various phonemes to be transcribed have been brought into a fixed relationship with the letters and digraphs used for the purpose. For phonemes which do not exist in French, digraphs have been chosen which come as close as possible to the actual sound.

Field research on geographical names follows a standard pattern: the investigator listens to the local name and, as

far as possible, notes it down phonetically. It is also recorded on tape. All existing information is collected from the administrative authorities and old maps are consulted in the office. From the study and comparison of these various data emerges the transcription of the name which will appear on the map.

Names of sufficient importance as to be in frequent official use, such as names of departments and of the capitals of administrative districts, are adopted unchanged even when they are not in strict conformity with the rules of transcription.

In West Cameroon, the problem is altogether different.

At the date of reunification, cartographic coverage was very scanty; there were only a few small-scale maps of the whole country and a few large-scale maps covering only a fraction of the national territory.

The first thing to be done, therefore, was to provide the country with a complete set of temporary maps on the 1:200,000 scale. This was done between 1962 and 1965. The problem of toponymy was not gone into thoroughly at the time.

Work on the final basic maps has now begun; the field work is finished and the first sheets will be published in 1968.

The first principle will be to respect the linguistic individuality of the federal state and, consequently, to ensure that the conventions adopted do not, generally speaking, conflict with the existing rules which link spelling with pronunciation in English. The other basic principles will be the same as in East Cameroon, i.e.: use of the Roman alphabet; pronunciation (with rare exceptions) of all letters; one letter (or digraph) per phoneme; and the least possible use of diacritical marks.

The application of similar principles in both states will ensure the desired consistency at the federal level. Furthermore, the same letters or digraphs will be used to transcribe a phoneme whenever possible.

For phonemes which are transcribed differently in the two systems, an equivalence will be established between transcription according to the rules of English spelling and transcription according to the rules of French spelling: for example, *sh* and *ch*, *u* and *ou*, *j* and *dj*.

The presentation of the system of standardization will thus be one and the same for the whole federation, but it will be diversified to take into account the special characteristics of the two federal states.

In order that the maps of the federation may be readable by persons of English and French language alike, a phonetic legend will be attached to each map, briefly setting out the principles and equivalences described above.

Later on, in the light of what is learned at the Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, it will be possible to set up a national names authority to prepare gazetteers of geographical names for Cameroon as well as lists or glossaries of geographical terms.

PAPER PRESENTED BY AUSTRALIA*

Essentially, the responsibility for place names in Australia rests with the respective state governments and

the Northern Territory Administration and, in respect of the Australian Capital Territory, with the Minister for the Interior.

In the Territory of Papua and New Guinea, the Territory Administration is the approporiate authority while the

Commonwealth Minister for External Affairs is responsible for approving place names in Australian Antarctic Territory.

Details of the various boards and committees dealing with geographical names are set out in annex I.

The National Mapping Council of Australia has the function of co-ordinating Commonwealth and state mapping activities and in pursuance of this function provides a forum for exchange of ideas on the standardization of geographical names.

The Council has adopted a "recommended procedure for the recording of nomenclature on a national basis"; a copy of such recommended procedures appears as annex II to this paper.

Under the Constitution, the Commonwealth has full responsibility for external affairs. The Commonwealth Division of National Mapping provides the secretariat for the National Mapping Council and in this capacity disseminates to the states and territories copies of those United Nations papers on standardization of names which it receives through the Department of External Affairs.

During the last three or four years, action has been taken in some of the states and territories to widen the scope and powers of appropriate nomenclature authorities.

To some extent, this action has resulted from Council discussion and the dissemination of United Nations technical reports.

The Division of National Mapping also takes action to ascertain the views of members of the Council and other appropriate authorities as a basis for the preparation and presentation of national views on the standardization of geographical names.

Current action on the preparation of gazetteers is summarized in annex III.

In most Australian states there is a regrettable lack of any specific translation rules. Nevertheless, a great many aboriginal place names have been retained in an English translation.

Early in Australian history, the responsibility for this seems to have rested, to a limited degree, on explorers but, more importantly, on the early settlers. Latterly, anthropologists and other research and native affairs officers have done some valuable work in this field, with the cumulative result that the country is now liberally spattered with place names from the many individual aboriginal tribes.

In the Territory of Papua and New Guinea, where the authorities have been faced with the problem of coping with at least several hundred quite distinct languages spoken by the native peoples, definite rules have been formulated.

Before the 1939–1945 war, Papua and New Guinea were administered by different administrations and each developed its own *lingua franca*—police Motu in Papua and pidgin English in New Guinea.

English is currently the official language, but only a limited percentage of the indigenous peoples are fluent in English.

Genuine efforts are being made to preserve native place names and these have provided much colour and distinctiveness to topographic maps of this region.

The procedures followed by various authorities are set out in annex IV.

A proposal is under consideration for these to be approved jointly by the Commonwealth and states through the machinery of the National Mapping Council.

AGENCIES CONCERNED WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

QUEENSLAND

Designation

The Queensland Place Names Board.

Address

The Secretary,
Queensland Place Names Board,
Survey Office,
Department of Lands,
P.O. Box 234,
Brisbane, North Quay, Qld.

Membership

The Surveyor General (chairman) and four members of the Queensland Place Names Committee.

Powers and functions

The powers and functions of the board within the State of Queensland are:

To adopt rules of orthography and nomenclature and to standardize pronunciation in respect of place names in Queensland;

To investigate and determine the priority of the discovery of any geographical feature;

Subject to the Act, to consider and determine any proposed alteration in a place name;

To assign a name to any place in Queensland;

To alter the name of any place in Queensland by substituting another name, or by correcting the spelling of the name thereof;

To omit from official maps and records the name of any place;

To compile and maintain a gazetteer;

To make inquiries and recommendations on such matters relating to the naming of places in Queensland as may be referred to it by the Minister;

To prepare and publish an index of names of places in Queensland with a record of their origin and history;

To collect aboriginal names and words with meanings for new place names;

To investigate and determine, as far as possible, the locality and/or the boundaries of any area covered by a place name;

To exercise and perform such other powers and duties as are conferred or imposed on it by or under the Act;

To furnish a report to each meeting of the committee on the actions taken by the board since the last preceding meeting of the committee.

Advisory Committee

This is known as the Queensland Place Names Committee and has the following membership:

The Surveyor General (chairman and three officers, one each from the Departments of Education, Main Roads and Railways, plus eight nominees, one each from the Anthropological Society, Historical Society, Library Board, Local Government Association, Oxley Memorial Library Committee, Post Office Historical Society, Royal Geographical Society of Australasia and Geological Society of Australia and two persons nominated by the Senate of the University of Queensland.

The functions of the committee are to advise the board with respect to:

The general work of the board;

Any particular matter of investigation or research, and

Any matter which the board refers to the committee for advice.

Guiding principles

The board has adopted a set of principles for its guidance in the matter of the following new or altered names:

Names of aboriginal derivation or association; it is emphasized that the meaning must be appropriate;

Names which have some local significance;

Names which have some historical background: of explorers; of early settlers; of notable Australians; of events;

English word descriptive of the place, which however must be apt and not readily applicable elsewhere;

Consideration is given to the euphony of the word, whether aboriginal or Anglo-Saxon, and to the confusion which may arise from duplication or similarity with existing names;

Except in special cases, the adoption of names of living persons is generally avoided.

NEW SOUTH WALES

Designation
Geographical Names Board of New South Wales.

Address
The Secretary,
Geographical Names Board,
Department of Lands,
Box 39, G.P.O.,
Sydney, NSW.

Membership
The Surveyor General (Chairman), the Chairman of the State Planning Authority, the Principal Librarian of the Public Library of NSW, the Director of the Department of Decentralization and Development together with three appointed members from the Local Government and Shires Association of NSW, the Royal Historical Society, the Geographical Society of NSW and one nominated by the Minister for Lands.

Powers and functions
The powers and functions of the board within the State of New South Wales are:

To assign names to places;

To approve a recorded name of a place as the geographical name of that place;

To alter a recorded or a geographical name;

To determine whether the use of a recorded or geographical name shall be discontinued;

To adopt rules of orthography, nomenclature and pronunciation with respect to geographical names;

To investigate and determine: the form, spelling, meaning, pronunciation, origin and history of any geographical name; as well as the application of any geographical name with regard to position, extent or other factors;

To compile and maintain a vocabulary of aboriginal words used or suitable for use in geographical names and to record their meaning and tribal origin;

To compile and maintain a dictionary of geographical names with a record of their form, spelling, meaning, pronunciation, origin and history.

To publish a gazetteer of geographical names;

To inquire into and make recommendations on any matters relating to the names of places referred to it by the Minister for Lands.

Guiding principles
A broad outline of some of the principles which would influence the determination of place names may be summarized as follows:
Avoidance of duplication;
Retention of euphonious names;
Preference for names of aboriginal origin or names with a historical background;

Preference for the retention of long established place names, except where necessary to avoid ambiguity or duplication;

Avoidance of naming places after living persons;

Perpetuation of the names of eminent persons now deceased, e.g. early explorers, settlers, naturalists;

Avoidance of attempts to restore the original form of place names changed or corrupted by long established local usage and adoption of the spelling sanctioned by general usage;

Avoidance of the use of place names considered offensive or likely to give offence;

Avoidance of use of the cardinal points of the compass as a prefix or suffix to an existing name.

VICTORIA

Designation
The Place Names Committee of Victoria.

Address
The Secretary,
Place Names, Committee,
Department of Crown Lands and Survey,
State Public Offices,
Melbourne, Victoria.

Members
The Surveyor General (Chairman), the Chief Draftsman of the Department of Crown Lands and Survey, the Surveyor and Chief Draftsman of the Office of Titles, the Chairman of the Town and Country Planning Board and two members appointed by the Governor-in-Council, one from the Municipal Association of Victoria and one from the Royal Historical Society of Victoria.

Powers and functions
The functions of the committee within the State of Victoria are:

To adopt rules governing the naming of places and spelling of place names;

To examine cases of disputed spelling of place names, and determine the spelling to be used on official maps and plans and in official records;

To investigate and determine the first discovery of geographical features;

To consider and determine proposed alterations in place names;

To assign names to places;

To alter place names by substituting for them other names or by altering or correcting their spelling;

To have place names omitted from official maps, plans and records;

To compile and maintain a register of place names;

To make inquiries into and recommendations on matters relating to the naming of places referred to it by the Minister;

To exercise other powers and duties conferred on it and perform other duties imposed on it by or under the Survey Co-ordination Act of 1958.

Guiding principles
The committee operates under the following general principles:

For mapping purposes, the use of the apostrophe is discontinued, irrespective of whether the name applies to a locality or feature;

For relatively minor features such as hills, streams, swamps, gullies, etc., the possessive "s" is discontinued, care being exercised to avoid the misspelling of surnames ending in "s";

For inhabited localities and very well known features, the possessive case, without apostrophe, is retained; it is considered that the names of such localities and features should be allowed to preserve the same "sound to the ear" as they have had, both locally and throughout the state, over a very long period of time;

Where localities are situated on or adjacent to minor features of the same name, the feature name retains the possessive "s";

Where the name of a locality or feature gazetted as such under the Land Act has been superseded or the spelling changed by virtue of common usage, the new form will be investigated by the committee which will recommend adoption or otherwise of the changed form:

Repetitive aboriginal names such as Diddah Diddah Creek, Bet Bet, Jika Jika, being part of our national heritage and lending distinctive character to our nomenclature, are preserved in their existing form without abbreviation, mutilation or change;

At the discretion of the committee, other two-worded names are condensed whenever possible in one word;

42

In dealing with inconsistencies of spelling in names, applying to features, the general rule is to adopt the spelling appearing on the first survey showing the feature in question; experience has shown that, in the absence of conclusive evidence on the early surveys, reference to the names of the first settlers in the locality may provide the correct spelling;

Where a feature is known by alternative names, or is named differently on various maps and plans, and where no firm authority is available to confirm a particular choice, the procedure adopted is to reject any name that is already too numerous in favour of one less likely to be duplicated;

Where "North", "South", "West" or "East" is included in the name of a locality, the proper name precedes the directional qualification;

In future naming of large branches of main streams, the use of "Right", "Left", "East" or "West" branch etc. is to be avoided in favour of distinct separate names;

Before giving its approval to the assignment of a new place name, whether applying to an inhabited locality or to a feature, the committee determines: that no duplication with an existing name is created; that careful discrimination is exercised to avoid the introduction of names void of significance and inappropriate to the permanent nomenclature of the state.

TASMANIA

Designation

The Nomenclature Board of Tasmania.

Address

The Secretary,
Nomenclature Board of Tasmania,
Department of Lands and Surveys,
Box 44A, G.P.O.,
Hobart, Tasmania

Membership

The Surveyor General (Chairman), the Mapping Officer of the Department of Lands and Survey, the Mapping Officer of the Forestry Commission, the Town and Country Planning Commissioner, six other members appointed by the Governor, of whom one shall be from the Mines Department and another from the Hydro-Electric Commission.

Powers and functions

The board is given statutory power to enforce its decisions. The functions of the board are:

To adopt rules of orthography and nomenclature in respect of place-names in the state;

To examine cases of doubtful spelling of place names in the state, and determine the spelling to be adopted on official maps;

To investigate and determine the priority of the discovery of any geographical feature;

To consider and determine any proposed alteration in a place name;

To assign a name to any place in the state:

To alter the name of any place by substituting another name or by correcting the spelling of the name thereof;

To omit from official maps and records the name of any place;

To compile and maintain a register of place names;

To make inquiries and recommendations on such matters relating to the naming of places in the state as may be referred to it by the Minister;

To exercise and perform such other powers and duties as are conferred or imposed on it by or under the Act.

Guiding Principles

The board has not laid down any hard and fast rules for guidance in its work; rather, it tends to judge each case on its merits, but in general it can be said to:

Give preference to original names where it considers it can reasonably do so;

Avoid duplication of names as far as possible;

Avoid the use of names of living persons except in exceptional circumstances;

Encourage the use of appropriate descriptive names;

Also encourage the use of euphonious aboriginal names when their meaning can be appropriately related to the feature under consideration;

Avoid acting in such a way as to lay itself open to charges of being autocratic in the use of its powers.

This last point is quite important, as it is desirable that any nomenclature board should retain the confidence of the public even when it feels that it must make an unpopular decision. This can be achieved only if individuals are encouraged to feel that any views they may put forward will be given every consideration.

SOUTH AUSTRALIA

Designation

The Nomenclature Committee of South Australia.

Address

The Secretary,
Nomenclature Committee,
Department of Lands,
Box 293A, G.P.O.,
Adelaide, SA.

Membership

The Surveyor General (Chairman), the Deputy Surveyor General, the Chief Draftsman of the Department of Lands and the Curator of Anthropology, Museum Department.

Powers and functions

The committee functions in an advisory capacity to the Minister of Lands. The Minister in turn advises the Governor, who is empowered by proclamation, to:

Constitute and define the boundaries of new counties, hundreds and towns, and distinguish each by a name;

Alter the boundaries, or name of any county, hundred, or town;

Distinguish by a name or alter the name of any place, whether a county, hundred or town, or any other place whatsoever.

Guiding principles

Generally, the policy of the committee is to oppose the adoption of superfluous subdivision names; to accept local nomenclature for rural post offices and establishments; to oppose the introduction to trade names in South Australian nomenclature and to recommend the adoption of names with due regard to avoidance of duplication, both within and outside the state, and having regard to historical and geographical significance.

WESTERN AUSTRALIA

Designation

The Nomenclature Advisory Committee of Western Australia.

Address

The Secretary,
The Nomenclature Advisory Committee,
Department of Lands and Surveys,
Perth, WA

Membership

The Surveyor General (Chairman); the Superintendent, Mapping Branch, Department of Lands and Surveys; the State Archivist; and representatives of the following: Education Department, Postmaster-General's Department, Main Roads Department, Local Government Association and Town Planning Department.

Powers and functions

The Committee acts in an advisory capacity to the Minister for Lands and, having the Surveyor General as Chairman, is in a position to be of direct help in any matters of nomenclature in which government departments may be concerned and which may be referred to it. It has no statutory powers, however, and beyond that the scope of its activities is limited to whatever use other authorities or private citizens choose to make of it.

Guiding principles

To secure as far as possible suitable aboriginal names for use in naming new features;

To correct duplications of names of land features in the state;

To discountenance as far as possible the naming of streets, etc., after still active members of municipalities and road boards, or persons still living in the locality;

To honour, wherever possible, the names of discoverers or first settlers in any locality under discussion, also ex-servicemen who lost their lives in action;

To avoid hyphenated or double names for either localities or streets;

To decide upon the spelling of names where two or more forms have been used in the past (this especially applies to native names).

NORTHERN TERRITORY OF AUSTRALIA

Designation

The Place Names Committee for the Northern Territory.

Address

The Secretary,
Place Names Committee,
Lands and Survey Branch,
Northern Territory Administration,
Darwin, NT.

Membership

The Assistant Administrator (Chairman), the Surveyor General for the Northern Territory, two members of the Town Planning Board.

Powers and functions

The committee makes reports to the Administrator containing recommendations in relation to the naming of public places or the altering of the names of public places. The Administrator may:

Approve, either without alteration or subject to such alteration as he thinks fit, any recommendation contained in the report;

Reject any recommendation contained in the report; or

Return the report to the committee for further consideration and the submission of another report.

Guiding principles

When the priority of a name has been established by publication, particularly when such publication has occurred in any standard or authoritative work, that name should if possible be retained;

When names have been changed or corrected, if not too firmly established by local usage or otherwise, the original forms should be restored;

As a rule, the first published name should be retained but, where a choice is offered between two or more names for the same place or locality, all sanctioned by local usage, that which is most appropriate and euphonious should be adopted;

The possessive form should be avoided whenever that can be done without destroying the euphony of the name or changing its descriptive application; where the possessive form is retained, the apostrophe should be dropped;

Names consisting of more than one word may be connected by hyphens or combined in one word as may be advisable;

The use of alternative names should be discontinued where possible or not convenient;

Geographical names in a foreign language should be rendered in the original form except where there are English equivalents already fixed by usage;

Places or features may be named after any living person.

TERRITORY OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA

Designation

The Place Names Committee of the Territory of Papua and New Guinea.

Address

The Secretary,
Place Names Committee,
Department of Lands, Surveys and Mines,
Konedobu, Papua.

Membership

The Surveyor General (Chairman), the Principal Anthropologist and one other member from the Department of District Administration, one from the Department of Education, one from the Department of Posts and Telegraphs and two others.

Powers and functions

To adopt rules of orthography and nomenclature and to standardize pronunciation in respect of place names in the Territory;

To investigate and determine the priority of the discovery of any geographical feature;

Subject to the ordinance, to consider and determine any proposed alteration in a place name;

To assign a name to any place in the Territory;

To alter the name of any place in the Territory by substituting another name, or by correcting the spelling of the name thereof;

To omit from official maps and records the name of any place;

To compile and maintain a gazetteer;

To make inquiries and recommendations on such matters relating to the naming of places in the Territory as may be referred to it by the Administrator;

To prepare and publish an index of names of places in the Territory with a record of their origin and history;

To investigate and determine, as far as possible, the locality and the boundaries of any area covered by a place name;

To exercise and perform such other powers and duties as are conferred or imposed on it by or under the ordinance or any other law in force in the Territory or a part of the Territory.

Guiding principles

The committee has adopted the following principles;

When priority of the name has been established by authoritative publication, the name should be retained;

All previously unnamed features, unless otherwise directed by the committee, will be given the name that is used by the indigenous people on whose land the feature is situated;

Where the name of a feature contains a descriptive term, that term shall be rendered in English; e.g. "Ok Tedi" should be "Tedi River";

Spelling and pronunciation of native names shall be in accordance with part 1 of "Language Notes", published by the Department of District Administration (1966);

Acceptable names are:
Names of native derivation or association with appropriate meanings;
Names with local significance;
Names with a historical background, e.g. names of explorers, early settlers etc;

Consideration will be given to euphony, whatever the derivation;

Confusion from duplication or close similarity is to be avoided;

Except in special cases, the adoption of names of living persons is to be avoided;

The possessive form should be avoided whenever that can be done without destroying the euphony of the name or changing its descriptive application; where the possessive form is retained, the apostrophe should be dropped.

AUSTRALIAN ANTARCTIC TERRITORY

Designation

The Antarctic Names Committee of Australia.

Membership

Chairman (appointed by Minister for External Affairs), Director of Antarctic Division, Director of National Mapping, Hydrographer RAN, Head of Southern Section, Department of External Affairs, Geographical Officer, Antarctic Division (Secretary) and two other members appointed by the Minister for External Affairs.

Powers and functions

To advise the Minister for External Affairs on Antarctic place names.

Guiding principles

As a general principle the committee has endeavoured to record permanently the names of persons of all countries who have contributed to the exploration of the Australian Antarctic Territory and to avoid repetition of names within Antarctica as a whole.

When allocating place names for features in a given region, the committee endeavours to follow the principle of recognizing the names proposed by expeditions of whatever nationality which have demonstrated clear priority of exploration in that region.

Annex II

NATIONAL MAPPING COUNCIL: RECOMMENDED PROCEDURES FOR RECORDING OF NOMENCLATURE ON A NATIONAL BASIS

(Prepared in accordance with resolution No. 300, adopted in April 1966.)

The individual states and the Commonwealth, which are responsible for the nomenclature occurring within their respective spheres, may each be expected to prepare and publish a name gazetteer of its own region. A national gazetteer may be formed by combining the various regional gazetteers. It is desirable, therefore, that there be uniformity of content and format, and possibly of size and binding, throughout the series.

The large number of entries involved may make it necessary to publish the national gazetteer, and probably also the gazetteers of at least several of the states, in a number of volumes. As the regional gazetteers must precede the national one, it is desirable for the regional gazetteer to be accepted as constituting a part of the national record until such time as it can be combined and collated therein as a composite alphabetical record.

Random listing is economical in space and possibly is most convenient for subsequent processing. Listing on separate cards permits progressive alphabetical collation to obviate duplication. However, such cards are liable to misplacement or undisclosed loss. The advantages of each method may be retained by random listing for the purpose of card punching, and progressive sorting of the punched cards into alphabetical order as the work proceeds.

Electronic processing with punched cards is considered essential. The punched card input is preferred to punched tape because of its greater versatility in sorting and handling. From the punched card file, the cards may be machine-sorted into alphabetical order and a document copy produced by line printer for subsequent duplication in small numbers by contract printing, or in large numbers by lithographic printing. Samples of a card and print-out are given in annex IV.

File maintenance by magnetic tape, upon which the current alphabetical master file of the gazetteer has been recorded from an input of punched card records, would be an economical aid. Special extractions may be obtained therefrom and recorded on a special magnetic tape from which the document copy may be obtained by line printer, leaving the original master file undisturbed. The master tape may be updated periodically by incorporating new names gleaned from a supplementary alphabetized record.

The deterrent to extravagant extraction lies in its cost. For example, the special extraction of a nine-character field (e.g. geographical co-ordinates) from a file of 100,000 cards may cost about $240. The return of the cards to their original alphabetical order may cost a further $1,060. The use of magnetic tape will obviate the need for the latter restoration action and will lessen costs in other directions.

The eighty column punch card is considered to be essential. Its full range may be utilized and subdivided to provide the desired data fields. Certain items which may not be considered essential to all authorities may be segregated at the end of the line on the punched card. This may prove to be generally advantageous for ease of omission as desired.

Data essential to all authorities should comprise name, designation code, latitude and longitude and locational reference or sheet number, grid reference and state or territory should be provided for use as required. The inclusion of such data in the sequence and with field widths and inter-field spacing should be as follows:

Item	Field	Space
Name	33	1
Designation	4	2
Latitude	5	2
Longitude	6	2
Locational reference or sheet number	8	2
Zone number	1	1
Grid reference..	6	2
State or Territory	3	
Type key	1	
Listing control	1	
	68	12

It is desirable for the field titles to appear at the top of each printed page in the published gazetteer. Explanations relative to the respective data fields are given below.

Name. The national nomenclature record should contain all geographical names occurring within the region as gleaned from all known and available sources. It should include approved names, variant names and names which may not have been approved (suitably identified as such if thought desirable) and which would be subject to review by the appropriate nomenclature committee in due course.

The width of field adequate for the longest name that may be encountered cannot be predicted with certainty. The thirty-three character width that has been provided should prove sufficient for the approved or most acceptable name.

A variant name should be followed by a cross-reference to the standard name and hence may exceed the field width provided. However, the omission of all locational information other than the state from the record will permit the notation to extend to seventy-three character's width, which should be adequate for the longest notation. An entry of this nature departs from the normal processing routine and would necessitate the inclusion of a type key column in the punched card to inform the computer of the particular type of entry that is involved.

Consistency in treatment and alphabetization is essential. The practices described below are in common use and are recommended for acceptance as standards by all associated authorities.

A name shall be shown in the form approved by the nomenclature authority or, in the absence of such approval, as appearing on the source material, including diacritical signs and possessive case when applicable. However, as such matters present difficulties in electronic processing, and as they are considered to be inimical to good map presentation and are generally avoided by mapping authorities overseas, it is desirable for such signs and for the possessive case to be eliminated at source.

A variant name or spelling shall be listed in its own alphabetical sequence, and shall be cross-referenced to the standard or most acceptable name by use of the word "See . . . ", and the record shall not include any locational information other than the state or territory.

A name shall include its specific and other elements when applicable. (e.g. Roper River).

A name that includes specific and other elements, except the name of a populated place, shall be alphabetized by specific part (e.g. *Darling River). When in fact the other element precedes the specific

part of the name, the parts shall be separated in the record by a comma (e.g., *C*arpentaria, Gulf of).

The name of a populated place which includes specific and other elements shall be alphabetized in its approved form (e.g., *The* Entrance, *M*ount Magnet).

Names which occur more than once shall be listed in ascending order of latitude, that is, the most northerly name first.

A name shall be recorded unabbreviated in all its elements, except when otherwise approved by the nomenclature authority.

Designation. A four-letter (or shorter) code is recommended to indicate the type of feature to which the name refers. The Commonwealth is committed under SEATO agreements to use the Seastag No. 2213 code, and its adoption by all associated authorities is therefore desirable. Supplementary designations will be required to provide for certain mapped features and topographic terms which are peculiar to Australian mapping, or which have not otherwise been provided for. The appendix is a composite list of recommended code symbols for designation of topographic features for use in official gazetteers.

Geographical co-ordinates. Latitude and longitude define position in nature in a form readily understood and universally acceptable. The following principles are recommended for general adoption:

Position shall be defined to the nearest minute as scaled from any suitable source material;

The feature shall be defined and not its mapped name;

An area feature such as a desert, and a running feature such as a river or range, shall be defined by a convenient central point;

The geographical co-ordinates shall be listed in the sequence of latitude first followed by longitude;

With a view to conserving space, the letter "S" for latitude, and the letter "E" for longitude, and the symbols for degrees and minutes, shall appear in the field headings to each published page and not against the values in the body of the tabulation. One character space shall separate the degrees from the minutes in each case and a two-character space shall separate the respective fields.

Locational reference. A reference to the source material upon which the name occurs may be considered desirable by some authorities. However, as numerous maps and other name source material comprise the complete reference material, its individual tabulation in a gazetteer could prove very cumbersome and space-consuming, and probably out of proportion to its value to the user. An alternative would be to group the reference material into series of types. However, as a particular name may appear on a number of different items, some order of preference would have to be established by the recording authority.

Name reference material lacks finality. New editions supersede old ones, new mapping supersedes other mapping. Hence the entry would require continual revision in the nomenclature record to be currently appropriate. Its utility in a complete national or regional gazetteer is considerably diminished when its use is dependent upon the availability of the referenced material at the time of need. However, in the case of a gazetteer of a particular map series, the sheet number, which is a particular case of the locational reference, will be essential.

A field width of eight columns will be necessary to provide for this data. Sheet numbers of the 1:50,000 series will occupy this spread, which should be more than adequate for the other national map series or other reference material.

Grid reference. This locational aid can be used only when the name reference material is gridded. In fact, it would normally be derived from that material. In the gazetteer of a single map series (gridded), the grid reference would be a much more convenient and speedy aid to positional identification than geographical co-ordinates. However, it loses much of its value when maps of different grid spacing, possibly maps of different grid systems, and non-gridded name reference material are all included in the same nomenclatur record. Again, a grid reference is tied to a particular map projection for identification of position on a particular edition of the referenced map. Neither projection nor map may be considered as perfect or final. Each is subject to change.

The national and regional gazetteers would be of the assorted name source variety, and the incomplete and disjointed grid reference data that would appear in the publication may not be considered by all authorities to be of sufficient value to the user to justify its inclusion. However, provision should be made for it on the punch card for use when recording series mapping, and for general use by authorities who may require it. A field width of eight columns, which would include the zone number and a six-digit reduced reference, should be adequate for the purpose.

State of territory. This information is clearly desirable in a gazetteer that extends beyond the confines of any one state. A three-column field is necessary to provide for normal abbreviations, such as "QLD", "VIC", "SA", "WA", "NT", "TAS", "NG", "PAP", "NSW".

A type key and document listing control are necessary on the punch card as machinery items, and not for the printed record. The former is for selection of the type of entry or record required. The latter is used to control the operation of the document listing machine, such as directing it to skip a line.

Field titles should appear at the top of each published page.

It is desirable that the flyleaf or title page to a map gazetteer should show the date of publication and that special provision be made thereon for the recording of supplementary and amending notices, which themselves should be dated and numbered for identification and ready reference.

The introduction to the map gazetteer should include such explanation of the contents as would facilitate its use. As the various gazetteers may differ in the data contained, and in the nature and extent of their source, it is not practicable to prescribe a common standard for the preamble. However, it should include the standard designation code listed alphabetically by designations and also by code letters, the key to the map locational reference and indexes to the sheets of the map series involved.

A minimum coverage in the introductory remarks should be along the following lines;

"This gazetteer includes names of places and of features in . . . gleaned from all available maps and other name source material."

"The first column shows the approved *name*. A variant name is cross-referenced to the approved name from which the locational details may be gleaned."

"The *designation* of the type of feature to which the name refers has been abbreviated to a code of four letters or less for convenience of processing and listing. Separate code lists are appended, one alphabetized by designation and the other by code letters."

"The *latitude* and *longitude* of the named feature have been scaled from the source material to the nearest minute. They are included for map locational purposes only and are not intended to convey positional accuracy. An area or a running feature has been defined by some convenient central point."

"The map or other source material upon which the name appears has been shown under the heading of *locational reference*. It has been given by map sheet number or by numerical code, details of which are appended together with map indexes to the main map series involved."

"The zone number and grid reference have been shown in cases where the locational map is gridded. It should be read in conjunction with the map scale if grid spacing is significant to the user, but is specifically provided for map locational purposes only and not as an accurate measure of position."

SUGGESTED CODE FOR DESIGNATIONS FOR TOPOGRAPHICAL FEATURES FOR USE IN OFFICIAL GAZETTEERS

Code	Designation	Code	Designation	Code	Designation
ABAT	Abattoirs	DEEP	Trough (marine)	MILL	Mill
AF	Airfield	DEPR	Depression		Sawmill
	Airport	DESM	Deserted monastery	MINE	Mine
ANCH	Anchorage	DESV	Deserted village	MON	Monastery
AQDT	Aqueduct	DI	District	MONU	Benchmark
ARCH	Archipelago	DIKE	Dike		Cairn
BANK	Bank	DOCK	Basin		Column
	Sandbank		Wetdock		Marker
BAPL	Baths	DRN	Drain		Monument
BAR	Barracks	DSRT	Desert	MRKT	Market
	Customs barracks	DUNE	Dunes	MSSN	Mission
BAY	Bay	ENTR	Entrance		Mission station
BCH	Beach	ESTY	Estuary	MT	Mountain
BCON	Beacon	FARM	Farm	MTS	Mountains
BCST	Broadcasting station		Dairyfarm		Mountain range
BGHT	Bight	FLD	Enclosure	OS	Out station
BLDG	Agricultural establishment		Field	PARK	Park
	Asylum		Meadow	PASS	Pass
	Barn		Pasture		Passage
	Chalet		Uncultivated land	PEAK	Mountain peak
	Coal depot	FORD	Ford	PGDA	Pagoda
	Guard house	FORT	Fort	PIER	Pier
	Hotel		Redoubt	PIT	Pit
	House	FRST	Forest		Sandpit
	Hut		Woods	PL	Plateau
	Inn	FTRY	Brewery		Tableland
	Institute		Factory	PLAN	Plantation
	Museum		Plant	PLN	Downs
	Observatory		Steel works	PLN	Table and
	Rest house		Tannery		Plain
	Sanatorium		Works		Prairie
	Shelter	FY	Ferry	PLNA	Place name
	Tavern	GATE	Gate (city exit)	PO	Post office
	Tower	GL	Grassland	POND	Fishpond
	Town hall	GLCR	Glacier		Pond
	Warehouse	GLLY	Gully		Stagnant pool
BORE	Bore	GRDN	Garden	POOL	Pool
BRDG	Bridge		Vineyards	POPL	City
	Culvert	GULF	Gulf		Town
BRKW	Breakwater	HBR	Harbour		Village
BRYD	Brickworks		Haven	PORT	Port
	Brickyard		Roadstead	PRO	Province
BTRY	Battery	HDG	Hedge	PROM	Promontory
CAPE	Cape	HILL	Butte	PRSH	Parish
CAS	Castle		Hill	PRSN	Prison
CAVE	Cave	HMSD	Homestead	PT	Head
CEM	Cemetery	HOSP	Hospital		Headland
CHAN	Channel	HWY	Highway		Point
CHCH	Abbey	INTL	Intermittent lake	QUAR	Quarry
	Bell tower	IS	Cay	RAV	Gorge
	Chapel		Island		Ravine
	Church		Island group	RCH	Reach
	Convent	ISTH	Isthmus	RDGE	Ridge
CHSM	Chasm		Neck	REEF	Reef
CLAY	Clayhole	JUNC	Junction	REGN	Region
	Claypan		Road circle	RES	Reservoir
CLIF	Bluff	KILN	Coke ovens	RESV	Reserve
	Cliff		Tile works	RH	Gnamma hole
CNAL	Canal	LAGN	Lagoon		Rockhole
	Ditch	LAKE	Billabong	RLY	Railroad
	Waterway		Lake		Railway
CNTY	County	LBED	Lake bed	RNGE	Rifle range
COMM	Commune	LGRD	Landing ground	ROAD	Avenue
COVE	Cove	LH	Lighthouse		By-pass
	Inlet	LNDG	Landing place		Expressway
CP	Camp	LOCK	Lock		Lane
CPST	Campsite	LSTA	Lifeguard station		Road
CRRD	Crossroads	LT	Light		Roadway
DAM	Dam			ROCK	Rock

Appendix I

SUGGESTED CODE FOR DESIGNATIONS FOR TOPOGRAPHICAL FEATURES FOR USE IN OFFICIAL GAZETTEERS
(*continued*)

Code	Designation	Code	Designation	Code	Designation
RSNL	Arsenal	SOAK	Native well	TANK	Tank
RSTA	Railway station		Soak	TERR	Territory
	Siding	SPAN	Salt pan	TMPL	Temple
	Stop	SPIT	Sandspit	TO	Telegraph office
RTRK	Auto track	SPRG	Pool spring		Telephone office
	Cycle racing track		Spring	TUNN	Tunnel
	Race track	SPUR	Spur	TVST	Television station
RUIN	Ruin	ST	Street	VAL	Valley
SCHL	College	STA	Canal station	VDUC	Viaduct
	School		Police station	WEIR	Weir
SEA	Sea	STAT	State	WELL	Well
SFST	Sparse forest	STDM	Stadium	WOOD	Brushwood
SHFT	Mining shaft	STOK	Stock route		Copse
SHOL	Shoal	STR	Strait		Cutting (hedge)
SHR	Cross	STRM	Brook		Scrub
	Shrine		Creek		Thicket
SIGS	Coastal telegraph		River	WRFL	Cascade
SLP	Hillside		Stream		Cataract
	Slope		Watercourse		Waterfall
SLQ	Slate quarry	SUB	Suburb	WTR	Water tower
SLTM	Salt marsh	SWP	Marsh	WTRH	Waterhole
SM	River mouth		Salt marsh	YD	Yard
SND	Sound		Swamp		

Note. The singular includes the plural unless otherwise indicated.

Appendix II

EXCERPT FROM GAZETTEER

Standard and variant name	Feature code	Lat. S Degree	Lat. S Minute	Long. E Degree	Long. E Minute	Location ref.	Zone	Map ref.	State
Moora Creek (see Five-mile Creek)									VIC2
Moorang Creek (see Crabhole Creek)									VIC2
Moorarbool Reservoir	RES	38	24	152	39	VIC 500	7	654321	VIC1
Moorarbool River	STRM	36	23	145	30	VIC 500	7	654321	VIC1
Moorarbool West	D1	34	53	145	28	VIC 500	7	925459	VIC1
Moorookyle	POPL	36	53	145	35	VIC 500	6	202399	VIC1
Morgan Creek	STRM	35	12	146	35	VIC 500	6	653245	VIC1
Morgan Creek	STRM	36	24	144	16	VIC 500	6	500473	VIC1
Morgan Gully (see Barkers Creek)									VIC2
Morgan Hill (see Mount Buckle)									VIC2
Morning Star Creek	STRM	34	23	145	32	VIC 500	7	214640	VIC1
Morning Star Mine	MINE	36	45	146	32	VIC 500	7	230665	VIC1
Morning Star Spur	SPUR	36	23	145	59	VIC 500	7	090355	VIC1
Morrison	POPL	36	57	145	38	VIC 500	6	218339	VIC1
Morses Creek	STRM	36	27	147	28	VIC 500	7	977513	VIC1
Mortchup	POPL	35	12	152	37	VIC 500	6	160358	VIC1
Mortjup (see Mortchup)									VIC2
Mortons Hill	HILL	35	48	145	51	VIC 500	8	183382	VIC1

Annex III
CURRENT GAZETTEER ACTION

The Division of National Mapping has printed a gazetteer of place names on the back of its 1:6,000,000 map of Australia and its 1:2,534,400 map of New Guinea.

A gazetteer will be prepared and published separately for the 1:2,500,000 map of Australia.

As each map of the new 1:1,000,000 series is compiled, a gazetteer will be prepared for the individual map sheet and a composite gazetteer will be printed for the whole series.

Similar action will be taken in respect of the new 1:100,000 series.

The State of Victoria has commenced production of a state gazetteer.

It is most likely that the National Mapping Council will ultimately sponsor an Australian national gazetteer which will include all geographical names that appear on published maps.

The Antarctic Division of the Department of External Affairs has produced a gazetteer of the Australian Antarctic Territory (ANARE interim report series A (2) Geography—publication No. 75, 1965).

Annex IV
PROCEDURES FOR ADOPTION OF NAMES FROM UN-WRITTEN LANGUAGES

QUEENSLAND
No rules for the translation of native spoken names exist.

NEW SOUTH WALES
No rules of translation have been adopted.

The Geographical Names Board of NSW is required to compile a vocabulary of aboriginal words used, or suitable for use, as geographical "place" names.

VICTORIA
Apparently there are no accepted rules of translation.

Repetitive aboriginal names such as Diddah Diddah Creek, Bet Bet, Jika Jika are preserved in their existing form without abbreviation, mutilation or change.

SOUTH AUSTRALIA
From the earliest days of settlement, place names of aboriginal origin have been set down as understood by the explorer or surveyor. No phonetic alphabet or recording was used.

In 1947, the use was approved of the phonetic alphabets "International Phonetic Alphabet" and "Geographic II".

WESTERN AUSTRALIA
The rules of orthography adopted in Western Australia are those set out by the Royal Geographical Society in 1891 in a pamphlet entitled "Orthography of Geographical Names".

Although these have been the accepted rules, for some considerable time it has been the practice of the Nomenclature Advisory Committee to use the information in other books in their deliberations on native names. For example, "oo" is now used for that sound instead of the single "u".

The books referred to are: *A vocabulary of the dialects of South-Western Australia*, by Captain George Grey (London 1840); *A descriptive vocabulary of the language in common use amongst the aborigines of Western Australia*, by George Fletcher Moore (London 1842); *A descriptive vocabulary of the native languages of Western Australia*, by John Brady, Roman Catholic Bishop of Perth (Rome 1845).

TASMANIA
No rules exist for the translation of native spoken names into English.

Early in the state's colonial days, persons transcribed native words into English and varying versions of the same word were obtained in this way.

The most complete work on the language of the Tasmanian aborigines is Schmidt's *Die Tasmanishen Sprachen*, in which the work of the earlier scholars is co-ordinated. The Nomenclature Board refers to this book from time to time, and where possible uses the most euphonious pronunciations.

NORTHERN TERRITORY OF AUSTRALIA
The Nomenclature Committee refers native names to the local welfare branch of the Northern Territory Administration for advice from its Research officers and is guided by their recommendations on the origin, meaning and accepted spelling of native names.

In cases where a choice of spelling is available, the simpler spelling is adopted, having due regard to euphony. In general, no hard and fast rules apply.

TERRITORY OF PAPUA AND NEW GUINEA
(See "Guiding principles", annex I)

The true sound of the word, as locally pronounced, is taken as the basis of spelling.

Broadly, the system adopted is that vowels are pronounced as in Italian and consonants as in English.

Every letter is pronounced. Where two vowels come together, each is sounded, but the result, when spoken quickly, may scarcely be distinguished from a single sound.

Certain place names have come to have an established pronunciation somewhat different from the original native pronunciation. No alteration is made in these established cases.

PAPER PRESENTED BY ISRAEL*

The first Israel Government Geographical Names Committee was appointed by the Prime Minister in 1949 with the function of establishing Hebrew names for the Negev. The committee revived biblical names for all the places, hills, valleys, springs, roads etc. in Israel and various outstanding geographical features, as well as ancient Hebrew names. The committee tried to find a Hebrew form for place names which survived in the Egyptian, Assyrian, Greek and Roman languages. Towards the end of 1950, the committee published a list of geographical names for the Negev.

However, in March 1951, it was decided to appoint a government names committee for the whole country, whose decisions should be binding on all State and public institutions. In 1953, the committee published the gazetteer for the second sheet of the 1:250,000 map of Israel, and in 1955 it completed the fixing of names for all the geographical objects shown on the 1:250,000 map.

Three sub-committees had been formed with a view to making recommendations on new names and fixing old ones: on historical names, on geographical names and on names of new settlements respectively. These sub-committees, composed of experts in various branches, submit their recommendations and suggestions to the plenary meeting for its approval. In the last decade, much has been done towards the unification of names all over the map of Israel.

Throughout the period of its existence, the committee has laid down names for new villages and towns as the need has arisen; most of them have been taken from the Bible. In 1958, the committee approached the conclusion of the task of fixing names for all objects shown on the 1:100,000 map and began the third stage of its work: names for the 1:20,000 map.

The committee has also published a gazetteer of historic sites and a hydrographic gazetteer. Altogether it has thus far added about 7,000 names to the map.

There are twenty-one members on the committee including outstanding geographers, historians, archaeologists, authors etc. Dr. A. Biran, Director of the Department of Antiquities of Israel, is Chairman of the Committee.

All decisions taken by the committee are published in *Reshumot*, Israel's official gazette.

The map does not contain any special sign for rivers, mountains, antiquities etc., but only the initials or full names of the items.

The transcription system is based upon the rules of transcription established by the Hebrew Academy. Outstanding biblical names are published as in the Bible, and not according to their pronunciation.

The transcription of non-Hebrew names into English is the same as was used during the mandatary régime in Palestine.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA*

Seventy-five years ago, the trouble caused by geographical name confusion in government publications had become so serious that a handful of federal employees decided that corrective measures were needed. After a winter of discussion of principles and some months of trying to induce conformity with their findings, they concluded that government agencies would not change their ways and use standard names unless told to do so.

I

The situation was called to the attention of President Benjamin Harrison, who agreed that improvement was needed. On 4 September 1890, he issued an executive order establishing a Board on Geographic Names and provided that "to this Board shall be referred all unsettled questions concerning geographical names which arise in the Departments, and the decisions of the board are to be accepted by these departments as the standard authority in such matters".

Official standardization of geographical names in the United States had begun. The accomplishment of the board and its successors during the past three-quarters of a century reflect the ability, integrity, courage and devotion of men and women in the federal service. More than 200 have served without additional compensation as board members or deputy members or as members of advisory committees or groups. Hundreds more have participated in staff work.

II

Geographical name standardization by the Federal Government has been marked by five principal periods beginning, respectively, in 1890, 1927, 1934, 1943 and 1947. In the first thirty-seven years—1890–1927—the successive boards were independent, but had no staff. In the next seven-year period—1927–1934—the board had a staff of one to three persons.

In 1934, the independent board was abolished in a general reorganization of the Executive Branch, and the functions were transferred to the Department of the Interior.

The former board was essentially reconstituted as an advisory committee and its staff of one to three persons became a division in Interior. The title "US Board on Geographical Names", later was assigned to the committee and division taken together. In 1943, after nine years, the staff was greatly enlarged to meet wartime demands and the advisory committee was reactivated, beginning a short but significant period of four years.

The present period began with the statutory authority act of 25 July 1947, creating a new board to act conjointly with the Secretary of the Interior.

In the first period, which began in 1890, the general framework of name policy was laid down and tested. A few foreign names were handled from the very first, and some county names were systematically treated. In 1916, a committee of the board urged a more aggressive programme to standardize names *before* they caused serious confusion rather than afterward. The function of co-ordinating mapping was assigned by executive order, and before

that responsiblity was reassigned to the Board of Surveys and Maps, the first set of standard symbols for topographic maps were developed. Cumulative lists of standardized names were published in 1892, 1901, 1906, 1916 and 1922.

In the second period, which began in 1927, the pace was accelerated by active committees and a paid staff. The "first report on foreign names", containing some 2,500 names, included a few of the more important names from each country, and some of the changes were made following the First World War. Large lists of names in Hawaii and the Philippines were made official. A cumulative report, published in 1933 contained about 25,000 domestic and foreign names.

During the third period, which started in 1934, the range of interest and activity was progressively narrowed and practically no foreign names were standardized. An executive committee of three gradually took over the functions of the full advisory committee, which did not meet at all from 1941 to 1944. Three or four hundred domestic names were decided each year and were published at year's end, but the board was quite unprepared for the Second World War.

The fourth period began in 1943 when, at the request of some fifteen federal agencies and with ample working funds, the Department of the Interior quickly organized and assembled a large staff and began mass production to meet war needs. Indexes of names on the maps used in the invasion of Europe were prepared on short notice and filled a real need. Some 3 million Chinese, Japanese and Korean names were transcribed systematically into Roman letters, most of them for the first time.

"Guides" to the geographical names of China, Japan and Korea were prepared which included transcription systems, general rules, analysis of sources, tables showing Chinese characters and corresponding syllabic characters, and romanizations. These tools are still useful to a wide range of people in and out of government. For many roman alphabet countries, "directions" citing the pertinent board-approved policies and evaluating the source material gave some help. However, they could not produce enough uniformity in names and, after the war, when new material made them obsolete rapidly, they were dropped. The new material also showed up the deficiencies in wartime information. Accordingly, in many parts of the world it was necessary to start afresh. Intelligence studies quickly made it obvious that individual name standardization in volume was indispensable, and the board's help was sought. The gazetteer programme was started because it became clear that it was more useful and cheaper to standardize names before confusion occurred than to unravel confusion. Also, in that war time period and immediately thereafter, domestic name standardization was greatly increased and record systems were established.

The fifth period began on 25 July 1947, with the enactment of legislation authorizing geographical name standardization and creating the present Board on Geographic Names. Members were appointed and the first meeting was held on 15 September 1947. The volume of foreign names processed each year since 1947 has made it impractical for the board's committees to examine each name individually before approval. Instead, committee approval is sought first for policies and for individual names that raise policy questions, illustrate policy problems, or involve changes in names previously acted upon individu-

ally. Files of names, by country or area, are then approved *en masse* as official standard names. This procedure also was followed in standardizing names for Alaska and Hawaii.

Because of the weight assigned to local usage in the case of domestic names, a "docket list" procedure was developed. A brief was prepared for each name and a recommendation made. Recommended names, with identifying descriptions, were then compiled in docket lists for board consideration not earlier than thirty days from the release date. The lists were circulated to the board members and also were given to the Press wire services with an invitation for comment. Any names questioned then were considered individually; the others were approved as recommended. More than 9,000 names were approved in the fiscal year 1949.

During the 1950s, a systematic examination of terms used in all geographical names on the topographic maps of the United States, and the mapping of their distribution, provided many surprises. For example: most of the named "summits" actually were found to have higher land on either side and many were in the bottom of deep valleys; they had been named "summits" simply because they were the high points on railway and highway grades.

Incontrovertible evidence was provided that the variety of terms and of connotations of terms used in names was far greater than had been suspected. Many clues were uncovered leading to a better understanding of the evolution of both names and terms, and showing how to identify named things so that communication about them would not be distorted.

III

In 1958, after domestic name standardization had been greatly reduced by lack of funds, the Geological Survey took over the staff work and record keeping and publication of decisions on domestic names. The docket list procedure was then resumed, with some changes.

For years all intelligence materials produced were edited for name consistency and conformity. However, the gazetteers gradually made it easier to obtain the correct names and so the editing programme which had dealt with more than a half million names a year, was largely phased out. The gazetteers of official standard names were classified for a few years, but later were made available to the public. The first sixty-eight were sale documents. The last twenty have been free, since it was found more economical to issue them on that basis.

Advisory committees, provided for in the authorizing act, have been created to deal with Antarctic, Arabic, Persian and undersea features. In addition, committees in some of the states have operated at various times.

These three committees have brought expert knowledge to bear on special problems. The committee dealing with the Antarctic, when it was established in 1943, faced the monumental problem of bringing order into the chaotic geographic nomenclature of a vast, inaccessible, inhospitable continent, an expanse larger than the United States.

Exploration and naming had been done by individuals from many countries. Many of the records were scattered, fragmentary or conflicting. Extraordinary hazards of travel and frequently poor visibility had led to observational errors. Navigation by sea, land, or air encounters special problems in polar areas. Reported positions were sometimes greatly in error, and features could not be found where other explorers had located them. Naming rules applicable to the area were developed, tested and approved. Later, other countries adopted similar rules and set up or reactivated more or less comparable committees.

Over a period of a dozen years, the United States committee and staff collected and digested reports, books, maps, charts, photographs, log books and flight records, plotted positions, traced and retraced routes, corresponded and conferred with explorers and cartographers. The resulting answers to "who named what, when, for whom, why and where" provided the basis for acceptance of names or for choice among alternatives. By the beginning of the International Geophysical Year 1959, the nomenclature had been fixed well enough so that the new IGY and post-IGY names could be fitted in as exploration proceeded. In less than two decades, chaotic confusion in names in the Antarctic has been resolved into an orderly nomenclature largely agreed upon internationally.

IV

The systematic processing of names from Arabic and Persian involves not only screening out dialectical variations, but also supplying the short vowels that are commonly not written and in names where they are not apparent from the context. To fashion an example from English: one might readily make "batter" from "bttr" in a story about baseball, but "Bggs" for the small town where the game was played could be "Baggs", "Beggs", "Biggs", "Boggs" or even "Buggs". Reconstruction of the whole name is accomplished by identifying the language of origin, etymologizing the word or words that present problems, and then converting to Roman letters systematically. This is a difficult and complicated process, but the committee has developed a high degree of skill in applying it. More than 100,000 names have been processed from Arabic and Persian and standardized in this manner.

The Advisory Committee on Undersea Features has made excellent progress in its one and one-half years of operation, but actually is only well started. Exploration of the oceans and their basins has been sharply increased in recent years. More and better equipped expeditions have gained new knowledge and new insights. Old features have taken on a new look and new kinds of features have been discovered. Names for these features and terms to describe them need to keep pace with discoveries. The committee helps both in the focusing of information about past and present exploration and in the developing of names and terms for international agreement.

During most of the fifth period—the current one—continuing attention has been paid to international co-operation and standardization. World acceptance of the idea of international name standardization through international co-operation and based on nationally standardized written forms has developed step by step. At the request of the United Nations, an international programme was designed and is being carried out. Some of the recommended actions have already been taken and a major one, an international conference, will be held in Geneva in August 1967.

V

Co-operation with individual countries also has proceeded. Cordial relations with the comparable agency in

Canada were established soon after the 1943 reorganization and have been continued. Close co-operation with the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names in the United Kingdom began in 1947 with the adoption of a joint system for Romanizing Cyrillic and now includes not only all the Romanization systems, but also most phases of operations.

VI

During three quarters of a century, the work of the Board of Geographical Names has been characterized by successes and disappointments, but attainments have far overshadowed setbacks.

Included among its many accomplishments are:

Development of a well-tested body of policies;

Establishment of a list of more than 3 million standard names, with supporting evidence for each;

A standard name file for every part of the world, including extensive files of names converted into Roman-letter forms from other scripts by systems developed and adopted jointly with one or more other countries;

A solid foundation for international co-operation and assured continuation of this upon which to build further;

A beginning of an understanding of the processes by which geographical features get names, how such names become accepted, and how understandable terms promote acceptance of programmes and further the spread of information and knowledge.

PAPER PRESENTED BY SPAIN[1]

The Commission on Geographical Names carries out its work each year on the basis of the cartographic work plans which are co-ordinated and prepared by the Superior Geographical Council. Independently of these plans, it deals on a current basis with the problems relating to the standardization of geographical names which arise in all regions, and for this purpose it seeks information from the various local and provincial technical agencies as a basis for its studies and eventual decisions. The standardization of Spanish geographical names is affected by certain peculiarities resulting from the survival of Iberian roots and the later incorporation of the classical designations of the west and the east. It is therefore not surprising that, in addition to a learned and even conventional form of a place name, there will exist two or more other names which are well known locally and have a considerable cultural tradition, even though in official usage they survive only as the designation of the inhabitants of the locality. The following are some examples in this regard taken from the *Diccionario Ideológico de la Lengua Española* (second edition, 1966):

Place names	Names of inhabitants
Alcalá de Henares (Madrid)	alcalahino, complutense
Mérida (Badajoz)	emeritense, merideño
Sevilla	sevillano, hispalense, itálico
Toledo	toledano, carpetano
León	leonés, legionense
Lérida	leridano, ilerdense
Zaragoza	zaragozano, cesaraugustano saldubense[2]

The same situation exists with regard to some of the more important ortographic systems, although in this case the historical designations have more easily been supplanted through the introduction of a more rational terminology and as a result of the less developed state of general research on the geographical aspects of Spanish regionalism in so far as mountains are concerned. We thus have, for example: Sistema Central (Carpeto-vetónico); Cordillera Cantábrica (Galibéricos, Cantábricos and Astúricos); Sierra Morena (Mariánica); and Montes de Toledo (Oretana). Among the important rivers, the archaic designation has been retained in popular usage only in the case of the Guadalquivir (Betis or Baetis), although among the specialists and in official usage this name is used to refer to the river basin as a whole because of the geological

and orogenic importance of the ancient depression which linked the Mediterranean with the ocean. A more rational geographical terminology also applies to the regional divisions, since today the two main subdivisions of the Spanish meseta are designated as north and south instead of the former Castilla la Vieja and Castilla la Nueva. There is, however, within the government administration a regional revisionist trend towards a better accommodation between natural resources and social and economic development.

As far as the less important geographical names are concerned, the adoption of a single standard has given way to practical considerations. Thus the existence of dialects has made it necessary, especially for postal purposes, to accept duplicate spellings or duplicate versions for some of the smaller localities. This has been due to a reluctance to accept the rules of spelling and grammar and adapt them to the prevailing regional dialects. To take an example, the entries under the letter "A" in the Spanish postal directory (*Diccionario Geográfico Postal de España*) include varient spellings for forty-eight localities. Increasing contacts with the rest of the country, however, and the influence of publicity media will probably lead to a decline in the villages of the forms rooted in oral tradition and their replacement by the forms based on standard usage. This will not, on the other hand, be true of forms corresponding to the dominant dialect, for these will most logically survive and come to be accepted as authentically reflecting the prevailing vernacular situation.

Although there would be little point in reporting on everything that is being done in Spain with regard to geographical terminology, both national and international, a tribute must be paid to the many philologists and specialists who have aided our research and whose efforts will make possible the publication of such important works as the *Enciclopedia Lingüística Hispánica* of the CSIC (volume I published in 1960), in which seven specialists take up the most important aspects of toponymy in the pre-Roman, Phoenician, Punic, Latin, Germanic, Arab and reconquest periods. Such studies will encourage a resurgence of geographical research in fields of toponymy, especially in conjunction with such works as the great history of Spain which is being co-ordinated and directed by that outstanding authority, Menéndez Pidal, the linguistic atlases and the etymological and dialectal dictionaries, the quality of which is being constantly improved.

The increased interest in geographical names is further reflected in the 1960 gazetteer of the National Institute of

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.35.

[2] This form exists, although it is not recorded in the *Diccionario*.

Statistics, published in Madrid in 1963, and in recently issued maps and cartographic publications. The tasks still before the Commission on Geographical Names are none the less enormous. They include the dissemination of the prescribed standards, the introduction of modern study, research and data compilation techniques, and the exchange of experience both within the continental area and with adjacent zones.

Our efforts within the Superior Geographical Council will in the meantime continue to be directed towards improving and bringing up to date the standardization of geographical names, especially in cartographic documents. This work will be carried out both in the office and in the field, and its ultimate aim will be to achieve the accuracy and precision compatible with the historical background of the names.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE UNION OF SOVIET REPUBLICS*

The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is a multinational State. Nearly 130 nationalities live in its vast territory. The largest of them are grouped in Union and Autonomous Republics, autonomous regions and national districts Before the Great October Socialist Revolution, the vast majority of nationalities had no written languages of their own. This applies especially to the nationalities of the Far East, Siberia and the far north. After the victory of the October Revolution, all the peoples of our country obtained equal rights, their national languages were recognized and began to develop freely. Our country was faced with the primary task of creating national alphabets for peoples who had no written languages of their own and introducing national languages for school education as well. Linguists of the Academies of Sciences, higher educational institutions and research institutes of the national Republics created alphabets for a number of national languages of the USSR; wrote new school textbooks and grammars, compiled dictionaries of Russian and the various national languages and studied the national phonetic systems. All this made it possible to begin a systematic standardization of both Russian and National geographical names on a scientific basis by comparing the writing and phonetics of the national languages with those of Russian.

To transpose names of one language into another, using the same alphabet, the method of direct adoption is employed which is widely used in Roman-alphabet countries. To render names from languages with other alphabets, a method of practical transcription is used. In Russian, the method of practical transcription is usually employed when rendering names from all languages, including those using the Cyrillic script. In the latter case, the letters that do not exist in Russian or carry different phonetic values undergo change.

The Russian practical transcription is intended to render foreign geographical names as closely to their pronunciation as possible by Russian characters without any additional marks.

The establishment of a stable and uniform spelling of geographical names in the official language of any country, as well as a uniform rendering of foreign geographical names, in other words, a standardization of geographical names, is a very complicated business, especially for countries with a multilingual population.

The need for authority in spelling geographical names induced many states to set up special boards whose duty was to approve geographical names. In the Soviet Union the establishment of a uniform spelling of names on maps in Russian is the responsibility of the Chief Administration of Geodesy and Cartography (GUGK), under the USSR Council of Ministers.

To resolve the problem, the GUGK set up a special standing transcription committee to whose work the representatives of the main cartographic agencies contributed. A standing joint committee on geographical names has now been created. The membership of this committee has been enlarged as compared with that of the previous one. It consists of representatives of various ministries, departments and the USSR Academy of Sciences. The committee has been authorized to consider and decide on problems of method in naming and renaming populated places and natural features as well as in transposing foreign names into Russian; as well as to consider instructions and dictionaries of geographical names which would be compulsory throughout the USSR, for submission to the GUGK for its approval.

A uniform spelling of geographical names can be established only with the help of compulsory special instructions, that is, rules for rendering foreign names into Russian, as well as gazetteers and standard maps.

The rules for rendering names from languages of the Soviet Union and foreign countries are very important for the standardization of geographical names. They are worked out for any language in accordance with a definite scheme. They provide information on language areas, new cartographic, literary and reference works on the territory and language concerned, alphabets and rules for rendering foreign characters (or sounds) into Russian. They also contain principles relating to geographical terms, rules for writing compound names and lists of conventional names and nomenclature terms in geographical names. We now have 103 sets of instructions, fifty-eight for the Soviet Union and forty-five for foreign countries. In addition, there have been issued general rules for spelling USSR names on maps and general rules for rendering geographical names. There now exist rules for rendering names from the following languages:

Indo-European languages: Byelorussian, Ukrainian, Bulgarian, Serbo-Croatian, Czech and Slovak, Polish; Latvian, Lithuanian; Bengali, Hindi, Urdu; Tajik, Ossetic, Persian, Pushtu; Danish, Swedish, Norwegian, Icelandic, Faeröese; English, Dutch, Afrikaans, German; Moldavian, French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, Romanian; Armenian; Greek; Albanian;

Caucasian languages: Abazin, Abkhazian, Avars, Adigei, Georgian, Darghin, Kabardian-Circassian, Ingush, Lak, Lezghin, Tabasaran, Chechen;

Turkic languages: Azerbaijanian, Altai, Bashkiri, Kazakhian, Karakalpak, Karachaevo-Balkar, Kirghiz, Kumik, Nogai, Tatar, Tuvinian, Turkish, Turkmen, Uzbek, Uigur, Chuvash, Khakass, Yakut;

Finno-Ugrian languages: Hungarian, Komi, Mansi, Mari, Mordvinian, Udmurt, Finnish, Khanti, Estonian;

Samodian languages: Nenets, Selkup;

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.40.

Chinese-Tibetan languages: Burmese, Viet-Namese, Chinese, Laotian, Thai;

Mon-Khmer languages: Khmer;

Mongolian languages: Buryat, Kalmuk, Mongolian;

Tungus-Manchurian languages: Nanai, Evenk, Even;

Paleo-Asian languages: Koryak, Chukot, Eskimo;

Semitic languages: Amharic, Arabic, Hebrew;

Malay-Polinesian languages: Indonesian, Malagasy, Tagal;

Bantu languages: Swahili.

Russian geographical names in their modern form are spelled in accordance with the existing rules of Russian orthography adopted in 1956, and the rules (issued by the GUGK in 1961) for writing USSR geographical names on maps.

Geographical names in the national languages of the USSR are rendered from their modern lettering in their literary pronunciation. Dialectal differences are retained when rendered if they are consistently fixed in official and other sources.

Geographical names of foreign countries are rendered from their modern spelling in the official language of a country. If there are two or more official languages in a country, their language areas are fixed and geographical names are rendered in accordance with their location. For instance, in Belgium, the boundary between the Flemish and French language areas is taken into account; in Switzerland, four language areas are fixed: German, French, Italian and Romansh. In case a foreign country has administratively detached national districts, the names of those districts are rendered, if possible, from the local languages.

However, there is a group of non-Russian geographical names that is an exception to the rules mentioned above, namely, conventional Russian names. They are mostly the names of states, capitals and the most widely known physiographic features. The Russian form 'of those names differs from the form long established in the language and familiar through long usage. For instance, we write Бухарест instead of Букурешти, Рим instead of Рома Копенгаген instead of Кёбенхавн, as it should have been according to the rules. Conventional names are usually related to a single feature, e.g. the name Сидней is used only for the Australian city while the populated places carrying the same name in the United Kingdom and the United States are referred to as Сидни, which is in accordance with the rules for rendering English names.

Compound Russian names are spelled in accordance with Russian orthography: separately, with a hyphen or as a single word, e.g. Белые Берега, Волоста-Пятница, Анжеро-Судженск, Среднеурадьск.

Compound names in languages employing a Roman alphabet are represented in Russian according to their spelling in the national language. If the original is spelled as one word, the rules provide the same spelling in Russian; if the original name is spelled separately or with a hyphen, it is hyphenated according to Russian orthography, e.g. Niederlausitz (GDR) = Нидерлаузиц; Big Springs (United States) = Биг-Спрингс; Catán-Lil (Argentina) = Катан-Лиль.

Compound non-Roman-alphabet names are usually spelled as single words. This is typical of names rendered from Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Tibetan, Burmese,

Khmer, Hindi, as well as from languages using an Arabic alphabet: Persian, Pushtu, Urdu: e.g. देहरा दून (India) = Дехрадун; 山 川 (Japan) = Ямагава; 金 川 (China) = Яньчжоу; 水 원 (Korea) = С.:вон; دره گرگ (Iran) = Деррегорр. It is also true of compound names in the majority of the Turkic and Finno-Ugrian languages and the languages used in northern USSR, e.g. Кöрт Кёрос (Komi ASSR) = Корткерос; Бэйрэкэ Тамак (Tatar ASSR): Байря Китамак; Пужымо Йыл (Udmurt ASSR) = Пужмоил.

Nomenclature terms in geographical names (mountain, lake, bay, channel, island, point etc.) are translated or transcribed in accordance with the morphological and syntactical structure of a language, the strength of connexion between the nomenclature term and the proper name, and established practice. It is agreed that generic terms should be transcribed if they are accompanied by an adjective or a numeral. In such cases their connexion with the proper name is the strongest. Examples: колодец Кырккуи (well) (Turkmen SSR), where кырк = "forty" and куи = "well"; Сефидруд (river) (Iran), where сефид = "white", руд = "river", Сноуи-Ривер (river) (Australia) = "Snowy River".

It is established practice in rendering names into Russian to retain terms in some oriental languages and to translate them in others. They are retained when they come after the proper name, as is the case with the Chinese река Сицзян (Sikiang) where цзян (kiang) = "river", or the Korean залив Ионилман (Yongil Man), where ман (man) = "bay". They are translated when they precede the proper name as is the case with the Arabic, Viet-Namese, Indochinese, Khmer, Laotian and Thai names. We write река Эль-Касимия (Al Kasimiya River), not Нахр-эль-Касимия (Nahr al Kasimiya), where Нахр (Nahr) = "river" (Iraq); we write река Лебам (Lebam River), not Сунгей-Лебам (Sungei Lebam), where "сунгей" (sungei) = "river" (Indonesia).

The role of gazetteers and standard maps in effecting a uniform spelling is essential. In recent years much has been done in our country in this direction. The administrative authorities issue reference books on the administrative and territorial division of the USSR, Union Republics, Autonomous Republics and regions. These reference books contain the names of administrative units and populated places.

The GUGK has issued dictionaries of geographical names in the territory of the USSR and foreign countries, a dictionary of geographical names of Iran, a dictionary of geographical names of the Latvian SSR etc.

The academies of sciences of some Union Republics and research institutes of Autonomous Republics issue dictionaries of geographical names in their own areas in their own national languages: a dictionary of geographical names of the Azerbaijanian SSR, the Kazakh SSR, the Tuvinskaya ASSR, a glossary of river names of the Ukrainian SSR etc.

The reference books on the administrative and territorial divisions of the USSR and the Union Republics as well as dictionaries of geographical names approved by the joint committee and sanctioned by the GUGK are compulsory for all institutions.

Glossaries are also issued of geographical terms and words found in geographical names. They are of great significance as they enable field workers to avoid mistakes

in recording names on topographic maps. Geographical Names are studied by specialists individually, as well as by the department of geographical names of the Central Research Institute of Geodesy, Air Surveying and Cartography under the GUGK. This department systematically collects geographical terms and issues lists of them as appendices to the instructions for rendering names into Russian and as separate publications.

Glossaries of geographical terms of the Kazakh SSR, the Yakut ASSR and a glossary of Even and Evenk geographical terms have been issued thus far. A number of terms have been published in appendices to the world atlases (1954 and 1967).

In the GUGK, the preparation of standard maps is in progress. A standard map contains the approved spelling of names which are to be used on maps and atlases to be issued. To keep such maps up to date, they are closely monitored and any changes in names are published in special reports.

To achieve better results in establishing a uniform spelling of geographical names throughout the entire world it is necessary, in our opinion, that standard gazetteers embracing at least all the geographical names in national atlases should be issued in every country and that all countries be kept well informed through the agency of the United Nations of changes in geographical names. It is desirable that non-Roman-alphabet names be represented in national script and transcribed into Roman script.

The task before us is to complete work on rules for rendering foreign geographical names into Russian and to compile dictionaries of geographical names within the territory of the Soviet Union and outlying regions so that the scientifically based form of a name sanctioned in those dictionaries may become uniform and binding for all institutions and agencies in the Soviet Union.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO*

. . .

Items 7 and 8: Since the Democratic Republic of the Congo has as yet no national body dealing with the standardization of geographical names, it has no report or experience to offer on the subject. It will follow with interest the discussions on these two items in order to derive the maximum benefit from the experience gained by other countries.

Item 9. National standardization.

(a) Field collection of names

There is a plan to establish field completion teams which will be responsible for this activity. These teams will collaborate with the administrative authorities and local inhabitants and will base their collection of geographical names on the rules governing the spelling of Congolese geographical names, which are reproduced in the annex.

(b) Office treatment of names

At present this is done at the Geographical Institute of the Congo according to the above-mentioned rules (see annex).

(c) Decisions relating to multilingual areas

The Democratic Republic of the Congo has chosen French as its principal language. In addition to this principal language there are four main languages of communication: Kikongo, Lingala, Tshiluba and Kiswaheli. Geographical names are collected from the local inhabitants in one of these four languages of communication and their spelling is determined according to the above-mentioned rules (see annex).

(d) National gazetteer

A national gazetteer has been started. A list of place names has been prepared for each region on the basis of the 1:200,000-scale regional maps, the only series of maps covering the whole country. The location of these places in the regions is indicated in terms of the quarter-degree square in which each of them is situated. Work on this gazetteer has come to a halt for lack of staff and information from regional authorities. It could be resumed when the field completion teams are formed.

(e) Administrative structure of national names authorities

No comment, since there are no bodies of this kind in the Congo. Developments in this matter will be kept in view for information and possible future action.

(f) Automatic data processing

Developments will be kept in view and discussed with reference to possible use in the future.

Items 10 and 11: Geographical terms and writing systems. Developments will be kept in view for information and discussed with reference to possible action in the future.

Item 12. International co-operation. The Congolese delegation will have occasion to give its views and explain its position when the various topics under item 12 come under discussion.

. . .

Annex

SPELLING OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN THE DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO

The former Belgian Commission on African Linguistics, which was responsible for drawing up rules for the spelling of Congolese geographical names, laid down the following rules to be applied exclusively (circular No. 21/30 of 12 August 1953);

The actual sound of each name as it is pronounced by the local inhabitants shall be used as the basis for its spelling.

Since it is not possible to obtain a perfect phonetic representation of every sound by means of the letters of our alphabet and orthographic signs, every effort shall be made to convey the local pronunciation as accurately as possible with the following characters:

1. The vowels "a", "e", "i" and "o" and the consonants "b", "d", "f", "j", "k", "l", "m", "n", "p", "r", "t", "v" and "z" shall be pronounced as in French.

2. The difference between long and short vowels shall not be shown.

3. "C" and "q" shall not be used to denote the sound "k".

4. The difference between the closed "e" (as in the French *"été"*, *"nez"*) and the open "e" (as in the French *"très"*, *"mes"*, *"net"*, *"même"*) shall not be shown.

5. "G" shall always be hard, as in the French *gare*, irrespective of the vowel immediately following it. Examples: Isangila, Bakenge, Zange, Kenge, which shall be pronounced as if spelt "Issanguila", "Bakangai", "Zangai", "Kenghé".

6. The letter "h" shall be written only in the group "sh" and in names which contain a true aspirate (Yahuma, Kahemba, Kalehe).

---

* The original text of this paper, submitted in French, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.42.

55

7. The semi-vowel "i" shall be represented by "y" as in "yard". Examples: Yambuya, Yalundi, Yakoya. The sounds "ya", "ye" etc. shall never be represented by "ja" ,"je" etc.: hence "Bayanda", "Bayeye" and not "Bajanda", "bajeje", "Bapeja". The letter "y" shall never be used at the end of a word to represent the vowell "i": "Noki", "Dri", not "Noky", "Dry".

8. "J" shall be used only to represent the sound it conveys in the French "jour". Example: Bunji.

9. The difference between the closed "o" (as in the French "chose", "aube", "beau") and the open "o" (as in the French "tort", "robe") shall not be shown.

10. "S" shall always be sibilant, as "s", "c" and "ç" in the French "servir", "acier" and "garçon" respectively; hence Isangi, Kasongo, Yakusu, pronounced as if written "Issangui", "Kassongo", "Yakussu".

11. "U" shall always represent the French "ou". Examples: Rubi, Ubangi, Uele.

12. The semi-vowel "w" shall be pronounced as in the English "William". Care shall be taken not to confuse "wa", "we", "wi" etc. with "ua", "ue", "ui". With the spelling "wa", "we", "wi", the whole stress falls on the vowels "a", "e", "i", whereas the spelling "ua", "ue", "ui" shall be used to represent, in each of the diphthongs, two distinct sounds articulated with equal stress ("ua" being pronounced as in the French "ou-a" "ue" pronounced "ou-é" and "ui" pronounced "ou-i"). Examples: Kalungwa, Nyangue, Kwilu, Muala, Duela, Duizi.

13. "X" shall never be used.

14. The sound represented in French by "ch" shall be written "sh". Examples: Shonzo, Tshuapa.

15. Double consonants shall be represented by the letters corresponding to their component sounds. Examples: Tshubiri, Budja.

16. Two vowels written together shall be pronounced separately. Thus "ai" shall be pronounced "a-i" as in the French "maïs", "ao" pronounced "a-o" as in "cacao"; "au" pronounced "a-u" as in "raout", "ei" pronounced "e-i" as in "pléistocène", "réitéré".

17. "Ph" shall never be used to represent the sound "f".

18. All letters shall be pronounced.

19. Vowels shall be doubled only when there are two distinct sounds to be represented. Examples: Zuulu, pronounced in French "Zou-ou-lou"; Oosima, pronounced in French "O-o-sima".

20. Consonants shall not be doubled; hence "tt" "ss" ,"bb" shall not be used. Examples: Mangbetu, Bangaso, Kasai, Kobo.

21. Congolese words often begin with the letter "m" or "n" followed by another consonant; in such cases the "m" or "n" is an integral part of the word and shall therefore be written wihout an apostrophe. Examples: Mbao, Mpozo, Ndekesha, Ngozi, Nko, Nsontin.

22. The use of accents and the diaeresis shall be abolished.

23. By way of exception, the word "Congo" shall continue to be written with a "C".

24. The letter "s" shall never be added to the name of a tribe to form the plural. Hence: the Mombutu, the Bangala, the Ngombe.

PAPER PRESENTED BY GUATEMALA*

The countries within the northern part of the Central American isthmus are no longer among the unknown parts of the New World. Since the region's incorporation in the modern world economy, with the resulting structural changes in its economic production, those countries have emerged from the secular isolation which had been their lot during the colonial period and have engaged the attention of scholars by reason of the importance of their location.

Isolated investigations in connexion with modern geographical problems require, above all, extensive and trustworthy cartographic material and a better scientific knowledge of the environment, without which any work would be incomplete and to a great extent hypothetical. In recent years, rigorous scientific work has been started in both these areas. Such work is a requirement of utmost urgency; it is designed to achieve a better understanding of our country and the maximum utilization of its vast natural resources for the collective benefit within a planning system which looks to the future and is at the same time in complete harmony with present needs. It is a known fact that, in order to understand the present, we have to study the past and apply the experiences thus gained in order to be able to plan adequately and wisely for the future.

Guatemala is located almost in the geographical centre of the American continent, between the 13° 44′ to 18° 30′ parallels north and 87° 30′ to 92° 13′ meridians west of Greenwich. It has an extension of approximately 131,800 km, including its territory of Belice.

This most northerly of the Central American Republics, rich in unexploited natural resources, borders to the north and west on Mexico, to the east on the Atlantic Ocean, the Republics of Honduras and El Salvador and to the south on the Pacific Ocean. Lying as it does between both tropics, its temperature is as varied as the soil surface, but without anywhere touching the extremes of cold or heat. The yearly seasons scarcely differ one from another, knowing commonly only two: summer, or the dry season from November to April, and winter, or the rainy season, from May to October. The common apothegm attributing to Guatemala an eternal spring is no mere hyperbole.

The dominant feature of the physical geography of Guatemala is its mountain system, which gives the country a matchless beauty with its high plateau, lofty peaks, marvellous lakes and picturesque shores.

The Cuchumatanes mountains (in Mam and Quiché = "congregation" or "preunion by force", from the root "cuchu", a form of the verb "cuchuj", "to reunite", whence is in turn derived the passive form "cuchutajinac", "molotajinac"; and from "matán", the adverbial mood expressing "by force", as though the mountains had been united by a superior force), are located principally in the departments of Huehuetenango and Quiché; they are the highest massive elevation of Central America. The Xémal peak (the Maya word means "wooden stick to go across"; in Mam it would derive from "tsmal" = "horse-hair") rises to approximately 3,800 m above sea level.

There are over thirty-five volcanoes in Guatemala in the range which runs parallel to the Pacific coast, that is to say, from the Mexican border, near the Tajamulco, with the highest elevation in Central America (4,200 m above sea

level), to El Salvador, and which forms the volcanic axis whose mean distance from the Pacific shore is always between 70 and 80 km.

The orographic system of the country clearly determines two hydrographic regions: that of the streams flowing into the Pacific and that of the rivers which shed their waters into the Atlantic Ocean. The latter is divided into two others: the hydrographic region of the Gulf of Mexico and that of the Gulf of Honduras. The rivers flowing into the Pacific are distinguished by their somewhat reduced length, while the others are generally, less impetuous at their origin and calmer at the final part of their course, allowing some navigation with shallow craft. Among the main lakes are Atitlán, covering 126 km² (the name means "place of much water" from the Mexican "*atl*" = water and "tlan = place); Amatitlán, covering 15 km² (the Mexican word means "place of letters", as the Indians used the fibre and bark of the amati (ficus) tree for their hieroglyphs; Izabal, covering 590 km², the largest in the country, and Petén Itzá, covering 99 km². (The Maya called the islands within the lake "*petenes*"; "*itzá*" was one of their tribes.)

Essentially, Guatemala is an agricultural country, as its economy centres mainly on coffee, cotton, bananas and essential oils. However, many industries—some of them with large capital investment—have been established in recent years.

The country is crossed from border to border by modern highways, some of them partially still under construction. There are 7,053 km of roads in service: 1,293 km international; 2,286 km national and 2,256 km departmental routes, as well as 1,218 km of third category roads. The above total includes 1,357 km of paved roads. The International Railways of Central America Link Guatemala with Mexico and El Salvador. The main airlines of the world have connexions in the country, and the National Aviation Company (AVIATECA), with regularly scheduled flights to some countries of Central America, Mexico and the United States, renders efficient passenger and cargo service.

The National Constituent Assembly of Guatemala abolished slavery in 1823; Guatemala was the first American country to do so. Although the population may be divided roughly into *ladinos* or non-Indians and *indígenas* or Indians, there is very little physical difference between them. Generally those referred to as *indígenas* or *indios* have as their familiar language one of the Indian spoken languages, dress in traditional costumes and maintain certain traditional customs. *Ladinos* are those whose customary language is Spanish.

It would be hard to find a town in Guatemala where there were no Indians, just as there are no Indian towns where there are not at least a few *ladinos*. Nevertheless, the Indian population is concentrated mainly in the mountains to the north-west and west, at the piedmont towards the south-west and in the northern part of the central zone of the country. There exist also some small Indian regions disseminated in the *ladino* area, among them, the eastern *pocoman* in Jalapa; the *chortís* in Chiquimula and in Zacapa, as well as many small communities speaking Kekchí, Lacandón, Mopán, Chol, Yucateco and other minority languages.

Each of the streams forming the present population has contributed its patrimony of ancestral customs, tradition and culture which has amalgamated with the aboriginal heritage and over which the Latinity and Christianity professed by our forefathers, one of our most precious heritages, extended like a protective robe. Latin America has thus become one of the most genuine expressions of this great continent, because here the Indians survive, either in their primitive form or mingled with the other races which have contributed to form the countries. Not so in other regions, where, after the extinction of the Indian or aboriginal tribes, a new way of life was forced upon the country.

It is true that, after the Spanish conquest, the language and body of laws influenced the less enlightened classes. Culture and religion influenced the classes which considered themselves of higher standing, and the struggle for independence consolidated that sentiment. This perhaps can help explain the development and prosperity attained in its time. It should also be admitted, notwithstanding the lack of understanding engendered by the swords of some of the conquerors and the whips of the *encomenderos* (persons who were given grants of land, including the Indians and their produce), covetous of wealth, that a sort of natural analogy has existed between the aborigines, the adventurers impelled by greed and the mass of immigrants driven by necessity to establish themselves in the new lands.

This fusion, which has united different countries and given them a common element amidst divisions and varieties of political rule, has deep and concealed roots. The origin of the inhabitants, historical vicissitudes, the soil on which we live, the climate which conditions us and the languages we speak, are so many elements which help us to understand this continent in progressive evolution, where countries are still being formed, and which are a mixture and synthesis of diverse races.

The fertile fields are tilled by generations of farmers who constitute the most authentic expression of the soul of this old world. As in other parts of the world, it is in the rural population that the spirit of this continent, still in its formative stage, must be sought, as well as the common feeling which unites those living in the most diverse latitudes and in the most distant places, in sometimes completely different environmental conditions and relatively nearer or farther from the centres which we have come to designate as civilized.

The definition of geographical names in Guatemala is rendered difficult because not only Spanish names have to be investigated but also those of any of the forty-three Indian groups in the country. Sometimes investigations must go back to still extant documents of the first part of the sixteenth century. An additional complication is the constant use made of diminutives.

In Guatemala, the analysis of many geographical terms tell us their genealogy, mutations and life, since words are subject to evolution. There are terms which have a long history. The name often reveals the most characteristic feature of the region it designates, as it is a known fact that the Indians, whose geographical names have been kept, searched always for the most colourful phrase to designate the places through which they passed.

On the other hand, the Franciscan friar, Gerónimo de Mendieta, who in 1596 completed his *Historia Eclestiástica Indiana* in Mexico and mastered the Mexican language with great elegance and thoroughness, cautions us in our search for etymologies:

"And I can truly assert that Mexican is no less graceful and curious than Latin, and I even believe that it is more

artistic in the composition and derivation of words and in metaphors, the knowledge and use of which has been lost and which the common speech corrupts more every day, because we Spaniards speak it commonly in the same way as Negroes and other slaves recently brought from Africa speak our language. And the same Indians adopt our way of speech and forget the one used by their parents, grandfathers and ancestors. And the same happens here with our Spanish language, which we have partially corrupted with words which adhered to ours when we conquered the islands and other words taken over from the Mexican language."

When analysing the geographical names of Guatemala, it must also be borne in mind that, since the time of the Spanish domination, many places have either kept their original Indian designations or have had those names prefaced by the name of the saint under whose patronage they were placed. It is also a fact that many *conquistadores* or their descendants named the towns they established after their patron saints, adding their own names in memory of the place in Spain from which they came, or of some historical event. Through the natural evolution of geographical names, many have changed or become abbreviated.

The extent of the philological investigations which the author was obliged to carry out in Guatemala when establishing his geographical dictionary may best be illustrated by two or three random examples. The word "Quiché", which designates one of the departments of the country, was first mentioned in the *Popol Vuh*, the Indian myth telling of the creation of the world and also referred to as the "sacred book", supposedly written down shortly after the Spanish conquest in 1524 and copied at the beginning of the eighteenth century by the Dominican priest and excellent linguist, Francisco Ximénez, in the town of Chichicastenango. The document starts: "*Are u xe oher tzih varal Quiche u bi.*" "*Are*"=demonstrative pronoun; "*u xe*"="its origin"; "*oher tzih*"="old histories", "words"; "*varal*"="here", "in this place"; "*u bi*"="its name": "this is the beginning of the old histories in this place called Quiché".

The Polochic river, which flows into lake Izabal in the north-eastern region of Guatemala, was first mentioned by Hernán Cortés in his letter to Charles V dated 3 September 1526 as "Apolochic". In the Pocomchí language of the region, "*polo*", from "*palau*", means "lake" or "sea"; "*chic*" means "it is already". In other words: "It is already a lake or sea", which applies to the width of the river as it flows into the large Izabal lake.

The author also deemed it proper that Indian geographical names should appear on the maps with their exact pronunciation, for very obvious reasons. Being familiar among other languages, with Quiché, he knows that the Maya used hieroglyphis or ideographic writing in which the signs or characters contain not a picture or design of the idea but a symbol thereof. The characters employed in this writing system generally have lost all resemblance to the images of the ideas they represent, and are scarcely more than conventional symbols.

Around the middle of the sixteenth century, a Franciscan priest, Francisco de la Parra, invented five characters with which he was able to put Indian Quiché words in writing and which were used for centuries when setting down catechisms, doctrines and all kinds of documents utilizing the Roman system. Because, in the sixteenth century, the letter "h" was aspirated like the modern Spanish "j" or the English "h", the "h" in Indian words has been changed to "j": "*oher*" (old) has become "*ojer*"; "*hun*" (one) has become "*jun*", and so on. This not only simplifies spelling, but any person using the maps issued by the Instituto Geográfico Nacional, the official mapping agency of Guatemala, can thus be sure that he will rightly pronounce Indian geographical names.

Another problem encountered, and a very serious one, is that of etymologies. For instance, in Quiché, a common place name is "*xolbé*" ("*xol*"=crossing; "*bé*"=road), but "*xol*" also means murderer. Of course, since the place is at or near a crossroad, the first meaning is the proper one. The city of Quezaltenango is mentioned by that name by the conqueror Pedro de Alvarado in his letter of 11 April 1524 to Hernán Cortés. It derives its name from the Mexican "*quetzalli*", now "*quetzal*", the national bird of Guatemala, and "*tenanco*" (place), although its ancient Quiché name "Xelajú" still persists and is also widely used ("*xe*"=beneath; "*lajú*" from "*lajuj*"="ten"). Fernando Antonio Dávila, in his study of the region of Quezaltenango, wrote in the third decade of the last century that the name of the town meant "under the ten", which is absolutely exact, as volcanoes and domes in numbers of ten surround the second largest city of the Republic of Guatemala located in the western highlands, at 2,357m above sea level. Contrary to this, and in an etymology that is not accepted by the author, the chronicler Fuentes y Guzmán towards the end of the seventeenth century had stated in his *Recordación Florida* that the city areas were divided into ten sections or separate governments. Even if erroneously repeated by some later chroniclers, this would imply—knowing the arrangement of Indian armies during the time of the conquest—that each captain led a group or *xiquipil* of 8,000 men, or a total of 80,000, which is an excessive number not only for Quezaltenango or Xelajú but for any Indian town in the second decade of the sixteenth century. Besides, in Quiché there is no known proper term for the idea of government and, when the Indians wanted to express that concept, they did not employ one word but many which—in some manner—conveyed the equivalent meaning. This shows how carefully one must proceed with etymologies.

As previously mentioned, as far as our Spanish-speaking American countries are concerned, it is a known fact that the diffusion of the Spanish language resulted in insecurity in the transcription of words proceeding from European languages. The situation became more complicated with the confusion arising as words changed with the spelling. To this must be added the corruptions born of popular or dialectal usage; the omission of one or more initial letters of a word; the omission of internal letters; the adoption of essentially Indian names, as well as the difficulty of reproducing foreign words which have become part of our geographical names.

PAPER PRESENTED BY VENEZUELA*

By reason of its geographical position as part of the

western hemisphere, Venezuela has a varied toponymy derived from the indigenous groups which settled in its territory at various times over the centuries before the

discovery of America. Many hydrographic and orographic features all over the country bear names of interest to students of pre-Columbian language and ethnology.

As in other countries of Spanish America, the influence of the conquest is also in evidence in the names of towns, rivers and other geographical features. The colonial area and the nineteenth and twentieth centuries have also provided their share of geographical terms, which usually apply to local topographic features in the various regions of Venezuela.

The study of Venezuelan names involves a number of scientific disciplines, such as history and sociology, so that the examination of existing cartographic data and current usage may be combined with the application of rules for the standardization and classification of toponyms.

Under a cartographic programme now in progress in Venezuela, names are collected in the course of geodetic surveys carried out with photogrammetric support. The purpose of the cartographic programme is to prepare basic maps, each covering 5″ latitude by 7.5″ longitude on a scale of 1:25,000. These maps, scaled down to 1:100,000, are used in preparing maps covering 20″ latitude by 30″ longitude, which are now being published.

Collection of names is the specific function of a section of the geodetic division of the Directorate of National Cartography, which began its work in the middle of 1960 and has so far classified 4,800 aerial views, most of them on the scale of 1:60,000 or 1:50,000 with a few on the scale of 1:25,000.

An area of some 262,850 km² has been covered by this classification in Venezuela. This area comprises three-quarters of the state of Falcón, the eastern shore of Lake Maracaibo and the state of Zulia; 60 per cent of the state of Lara; 70 per cent of the state of Trujillo; 20 per cent of the state of Mérida; 20 per cent of the state of Táchira; 60 per cent of the state of Barinas; 80 per cent of the state of Apure; 50 per cent of the state of Carabobo; 70 per cent of the state of Aragua; one-third of the state of Miranda; 80 per cent of the state of Guárico; 60 per cent of the state of Sucre; 60 per cent of the state of Anzoátegui; 50 per cent of the state of Monagas, and the island of Tortuga.

In addition to this work for medium-scale publications, forty-five urban areas have been classified for large-scale publications on the basis of 1:5,000 enlargements and views.

This work is carried out according to general rules, and the symbols used are those given in the handbooks on classification.

The field work of classification is done in two stages: preparation and execution.

Preparation is the responsibility of the aforementioned section. It involves selecting the views to be classified in each project; setting the limits of superimposition for views of transfer zones and indicating the numbers of adjacent views; providing maps, charts or similar documents on the working area; relating the views which are to be classified to the same centres; marking the names of towns, villages, principal rivers etc., on the views; and selecting and delimiting the enlargements of populated centres which are to be classified in greater detail in order to show more information.

Execution entails, first of all, a comprehensive study of the area to be classified, in accordance with the guide-lines laid down in the rules and in the section's supplementary circulars.

Information is usually obtained from local sources. Efforts are made to enlist the co-operation of persons in each locality who are best informed in the matter or who are most likely to provide accurate data. In open country the information is obtained from guides and other persons familiar with the terrain, who accompany the investigators on their travels.

The technique of classification and the use of signs, colours, legends and explanations conform, as already stated, to the instructions given in the handbooks.

Attached to each view is a card giving the names of all features shown on it; evidence of correct spelling, where required; and a description of the named feature (populated centre which may be a capital, district, municipality, village, settlement or hamlet; lake, river, ravine, mountain range, isolated height etc.). This is followed by the name of the informant, and the report is completed with the date and the signature of the person who did the work.

The new section on geographical names has been established in the Directorate of National Cartography, with the following duties:

To examine field data;

To prepare toponymic index-cards;

To revise names given in original source-documents;

To prepare geographical dictionaries, state by state, and gazetteers;

To select type faces for printing names on maps in accordance with the rules in force;

To compile a Venezuelan bibliography of geographical names.

PAPER PRESENTED BY CHINA[1]

The Chinese writing system is unique. It is not alphabetical but composed of individual characters, each consisting of three elements: writing form correct reading and meaning.

Since there is only one official language in China, there is no problem in writing form. In 1928, the Government published a phonetic system known as national phonetic letters which was taught at primary school level in an effort to improve the spoken language throughout China.

Although China has a long history, the writing form of

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.46.

geographical names at the present time is practically the same as it was in ancient times. All important geographical names are shown on published maps or in local geographical reports, such as *hsien* (county) and province geographical monographs. The problems that we have most frequently encountered are as follows:

The same character with different tones, for in Chinese each character has four tones: first, second, third and fourth; for example, 長 (chang) in 長子 (changtzu) and 長(Ch'ang) in 長江(ch'ang, the Yangtze River);

Abbreviations, as the abbreviation of Shang-hai is "Hu" and that of Canton province is "Yueh";

Names in common usage: for instance, "Wu Hsien" in Chiang-su province and "Taipei Hsien" in Taiwan province are official geographical names, but "Soo-chow" and "Pan-chaio" are of local usage; in most cases, names of local or public usage would take precedence over names in official documents; it has been found that local residents object to using a name that is different from that in local use.

Because there was no systematic method in the treatment of geographical names, the Ministry of the Interior of the Republic of China established a Research Committee for Map Standardization in 1959. Agreement on a workable outline was reached as follows:

Collection of information concerning geographical names to have correct reading and spelling;

Determination of the extent of physical features to which names could be properly applied;

Elaboration of a standard procedure in defining geographical entities;

Treatment of existing names from unwritten languages or minority languages or from dialects and regional forms of principal language;

Determination of the names of all entities so that abbreviations are unambiguous;

Provision of such useful information on names as gender, position of stress and pronunciation;

Establishment of an authoritative agency for treatment of geographical names and decision on name policy;

Endeavour to bring about both local and international acceptance of nationally standardized names.

In the meantime, the committee, being aware that the problems involved will not be resolved in a short period of time, has laid down a three-year long-range programme in an effort to designate all the basic geographical entities of China at the earliest date. Priorities are established as follows:

First priority is to be given to Taiwan; the information to be used will be for 1:25,000 and 1:|50,000 scale topographic maps of Taiwan; it is estimated that there are 10,000 basic entities;

Second priority is to be given to the area from the south-eastern coastal area up to north-east of Manchuria and inner provinces. Based on the 1:1,000,000 scale maps of China, the total entities will number 110,000;

Third priority is to be given to the peripheral area which includes Mongolia, Tibet, Hsin-an, Liao-pei, Jeh-ho, Cha-har, Shiu-yuan, Nin-hsia, Tshin-hai and Si-kan provinces; the source materials to be used are 1:1,000,000 scale maps of China; the total number of basic entities is estimated at 10,000 entries.

The card system is in preparation and will be used. The information contained in the card will be Chinese geographical names, English transcription, geographical co-ordinates, the extent of physical features, population, historical evidence, abbreviations of geographical names and alternate names. If better methods result from the Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names the Chinese delegation will take them into consideration with a view to improving the system in its own country.

As far as the transcription of geographical names is concerned, this will be only in English at present. The existing Romanization system is the *Key to Wade-Giles Romanization of Chinese Characters*, revised jointly by the Chinese Topographic Service and members of the United States Army Map Service in 1961.

The standardization of geographical names will be checked by the group of experts of the Research Committee for Map Standardization of the Ministry of Interior in accordance with the recommendations of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names.[2]

The following achievements may be listed:

In 1961, a geographical gazetteer of Taiwan was published;

Geographical name cards of five provinces along the south-eastern coastal area of the Chinese mainland were established;

In 1967, the *Key to Wades-Giles Romanization of Chinese Characters* was published.

It is the Government's intention to set up a Chinese name standardization agency with the assistance of the United Nations.

The Government agrees that the United Nations should establish an international committee on geographical names responsible for the collection and publication of information concerning geographical names in the member countries.

It is recommended that English be designated as the only language for international transliteration or transcription.

---

[2] See annex, p. 151.

PAPER PRESENTED BY THE UNITED KINGDOM[1]

In the United Kingdom, except in the case of certain administrative names, there exists no national body or group of bodies responsible for laying down for official use the names and spellings of places appearing upon official maps or in other official documents. The Ordnance Survey has always, therefore, itself assumed the responsibility of deciding what place names are to appear on its maps and how they are to be spelled. In making its decisions, the department is guided primarily by local usage and custom and makes such inquiries and consults such authorities as appear appropriate in order to establish with as much authority as possible the most suitable name, form and spelling for all places shown. Evidence tendered as a result of such inquiries is never in principle mandatory, although it is frequently accepted. Any conflict is resolved by the Ordnance Survey itself.

The policy on names collection is as follows:

(a) To find out and adopt the recognized name of all surveyed features, areas and localities likely to be of value to the map-user, including archaeological features and sites but excluding administrative names; a recognized name is defined as that form of name and spelling which at the date of survey is most generally useful and acceptable in the locality concerned, the extent of a locality

---

in that context depending on the type of feature or area whose name is being considered;

(b) To investigate separately all administrative names and, subject to the overriding principle that any conflict is resolved by the Ordnance Survey itself, to adopt the names and forms of spelling which either have statutory authority or have been agreed with the principal statutory bodies concerned;

(c) In areas of which large-scale plans are published, to collect street numbers of houses and other buildings and, where they exist, the names of any premises which do not bear a street number;

(d) To record the evidence relating to names collected and also the form of each name to be adopted by the Ordnance Survey; evidence may be visual, documentary or written;

(e) Subject to the general provisions of (b) above, in adopting names to be guided primarily by the following for the type of name indicated:

Names of properties owned by a single authority—the owner or his recognized agent;

Administrative names—see (c);

Names of towns, villages and districts of towns—the borough council, urban district council and rural district council concerned.

(f) Subject to the foregoing provisions, for Gaelic and Welsh names of minor natural features where there is no current contrary evidence, to accept the form and spelling recommended by the School of Scottish Studies and the Board of Celtic Studies respectively.

Annex[2]
UNITED KINGDOM ORGANIZATIONS CONCERNED WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

In addition to the Ordnance Survey, the organizations listed below are concerned with geographical names.

1. Ordnance Survey of Northern Ireland (Armagh House, Ormean Avenue, Belfast)

The rules for the spelling of names in Northern Ireland are similar to those of the Ordnance Survey of the United Kingdom.

2. Directorate of Overseas Surveys (Department of Technical Co-operation (Kingston Road, Tolworth, Surbiton, Surrey, England)

It is the general policy of the Directorate of Overseas Surveys to regard the director of survey of the country concerned as the final authority for the spelling of geographical names. Some territories have their own official place-name committees:—

British Antarctic Territory, South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands. Names here are spelled in accordance with decisions of the Antarctic Place-Names Committee, an inter-departmental body including representatives of Australia, New Zealand, the Royal Geographical Society and the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names;

British Solomon Islands Protectorate. A Geographical Names Committee has recently been established and has already issued a list of approved spellings of the names of principal islands and island groups.

3. Permanent Committee of Geographical Names for British official use (c/o Royal Geographical Society, 1 Kensington Gore, London, S.W.7.).

The Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (PCGN) is an advisory body, under independent chairmanship, composed of representatives of the Admiralty, Colonial Office, Foreign Office,

Ministry of Defence, War Office, Ordnance Survey, Ministry of Transport, Post Office, the Royal Geographical Society and the Royal Scottish Geographical Society.

Its principal function is to advise British official mapping and charting authorities on the writing of geographical names, excluding those of the United Kingdom and colonies. It also studies and advises on international aspects of geographical nomenclature. It develops and keeps under review principles of geographical nomenclature; it recommends and, where necessary, devises systems of transliteration and transcription; it takes account of linguistic problems arising out of changes of sovereignty and administration; it records information about foreign orthography and geographical terminology; it corresponds with Commonwealth, foreign and international organizations concerned with relevant problems.

It publishes lists of approved geographical names in countries and regions overseas, and glossaries of foreign geographical terms.

The PCGN "principles of geographical nomenclature" are set out below.

(a) The spelling of the names of regions and geographical features of continental or international extension; of water-areas extending beyond the territorial limits of recognized government, and of countries, shall be in accordance with English conventional usage (e.g. "Sahara", "Alps", "Danube"; "Bay of Biscay"; "Italy").

(b) In the case of oceanographic features lying outside territorial waters, the descriptive terms entering into their names shall be in English (e.g. "Challenger Bank", "Dogger Bank", "Walfisch Ridge" not "Walfisch Rücken").

(c) The approved names of any administrative division of a State,[3] or federation of States, or of any natural or artificial geographical feature or of any place lying wholly within one State, or federation of States, shall be that adopted by the supreme administering authority concerned with that State or federation of States. Thus we shall have "Uttar Pradesh", not "United Provinces"; but should a different name be current in English conventional usage, the latter may be given subordinate recognition: e.g. "Cabo de Hornos" (Cape Horn), "Dhiórix Korínthou" (Corinth Canal), "Moskva" (Moscow).

(d) Where any name of the kinds referred to in section (c) above contains a descriptive term in a foreign language, that term shall not be translated into English: e.g. "Cabo de Hornos", not "Cape de Hornos", "Schloss Bellinghoven", not "Bellinghoven Castle", "Isola d'Ischia", not "Island of Ischia"; but where a geographical term on a foreign map or chart stands in isolation and is neither a geographical proper name nor attached to such a name, it may be translated: e.g. "bridge", not German "*Brücke*", "ford", not Russian "brod".

(e) The names of places and of geographical features in countries which officially use varieties of the Roman alphabet shall be accepted in their official spelling, including the accents and diacritical marks used in the respective alphabets.

(f) The non-Roman letters in the official names of places and geographical features in countries which use partly Roman alphabets may be transliterated into Roman letters in accordance with the conventions of the respective partly Roman alphabets: e.g. Icelandic ð and þ are transliterated "dh" and "th".

(g) In countries where the official alphabet of the administering authority is not Roman:

(i) Where an official Romanization acceptable to the PCGN is in current use, the spelling of names shall be in accordance with it, e.g.:

Burma: Government of Burma 1908 rules;
Cambodia: Modified service géographique khmère 1959 system;
Egypt: Survey of Egypt system;
Israel: Survey of Israel system;
Thailand: Thailand Royal Institute (general) system;

(ii) Where no acceptable official national Romanization exists but a system of Roman translation has been approved by the PCGN for the country or language under consideration, the official forms of names shall be transliterated in accordance with it, e.g.:

---

[2] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.71

[3] For the purpose of applying these principles, the term "State" shall be taken to include an independent country, or colonial territory, or protectorate, protected State or Trust Territory.

Arabic—the BGN/PCGN system;
Bulgarian—the BGN/PCGN system;
Greek—the BGN/PCGN system;
Persian—the BGN/PCGN system;
Russian—the BGN/PCGN system;

(iii) Where there is no system of Romanization, or none acceptable to the PCGN, the official forms of names shall be transliterated into the conventional alphabet given below.

(*h*) In countries where the official script is not alphabetical, the official forms of names shall be rendered in Roman letters in accordance with systems of transcription approved by the PCGN, e.g.:

China: the Wade-Giles system as modified in 1942;
Japan: the Hepburn system as recommended in 1942;
Korea: the McCune-Reischauer system.

(*j*) In territories where the foregoing principles may prove to be inapplicable, geographical names should, whenever possible, be recorded in the alphabets officially used for the languages concerned or be collected in the field by scientific methods employed for the phonetic recording of speech. Only when these names fail should they be recorded in the conventional alphabet given below:

CONVENTIONAL ALPHABET

Symbol	Range of sound represented
(Vowels)	
a	"A" in "father"; all the sounds represented by "a" in the French words "*patte*", "*pas*", "*page*", "*pâle*"; "o" in "son" or "u" in "cut"; also a shade of the unstressed neutral vowel (see under "ö" below).
e	The first part of the diphthong in "day", "e" in French "*thé*"; "ai" in "fair", "*è*" in French "*père*"; "e" in "bet"; a shade of the unstressed neutral vowel (see under "ö" below).
i	"Ee" in "fee"; "i" in French "*si*"; "i" in Italian "*via*"; "i" in "sit";
o	"ou" in "bought", "aw" in "law", "o" in "not"; "*eau*" in French "*beau*"; "o" in "rotund".
ö	"Ö" in German "*schön*,", "eu" in French "peu"; "eu" in French "*peur*"; "oe" in French "oeuf"; "ea" in "earth" (the last is the stressed neutral vowel in English). The unstressed neutral vowel (the sound of "a" in "marine", "e" in "often", "u" in "difficult") is better represented, according to its nearest approximation, by "a" or "e".
u	"oo" in "boot"; "oo" in "foot" or "u" in "put" (but not in "but").
ü	"Ü" in German "*über*", "u" in French "*lune*".
y	The cavernous vowel, unknown in standard English, represented by ы in Russian and by "i" in Turkish. Note that "y" is also used for a consonant symbol (see below).
(Diphthongs)	May be represented by combinations of the vowel-symbols given above.
(Consonants)	
b	English "b", any other sound recognised as a kind of "b" by English ears, as "b" in Spanish "*saber*".
ch or c[4]	"Ch" in "church"; "c" is established with this value in parts of Africa.
d	Any sound recognised as a kind of "d".
dh	The soft sound of English "th" in "this," "they" etc.
f	Any kind of "f".
g	"G" in "got" or "gift".

[4] See instruction 6 below.

Symbol	Range of sound represented
(Consonants)	
gh	The soft guttural sound represented by "غ" (ghain) in Arabic, which resembles that of the Parisian "r".
h	(i) The aspiration of vowels (the sounds preceding the vowels in "her hat"); (ii) the aspiration of consonants (emphatic "k", "t" and "p" are aspirated in English; "b" is often aspirated in Irish-English). In a conventional alphabet it is possible to distinguish between the diagraphs (pairs of letters standing for single sounds) "dh", "gh", "kh", "sh", "th" and "zh", and aspirated "d", "g", "k", "s", "t" and "z" respectively only by means of elaborate devices.
j	"J" in "jib" or "g" in "gem".
k	Any kind of "k" sound, as "c" in "cat".
kh	"Ch" in Scottish "*loch*" or German "*ach*".
l	"L" in "leave"; "ll" in "wall"; "ll" in Welsh "*llan*".
m	English "m".
n	English "n".
ñ or ny	As in Spanish "*cañón*". Established in many parts of Africa.
ng	"Ng" in "singer"; "ng" in "finger".
p	Any kind of "p".
q	The guttural sound represented by "ق" (qaf) in Arabic.
r	"R" as sounded in Scotland; any other clearly rolled or trilled "r" sound as "r" in Spanish "*pero*".
s	"Ss" in "hiss" (but not "s" in "his").
sh or s[4]	"Sh" in "fish".
t	Any kind of "t".
th	Hard English "th" as in "thistle".
v	English "v".
w	English "w".
x(ks)	"X" in "extra" (not in "exact").
y	"Y" in "yet". Note that "y" is also used as a vowel-symbol (see above).
z	English "z", or "s" in "was".
zh (or ẓ[4])	"J" in French "*je*"; "s" in "measure."
(')	Inverted comma; the Semitic sound representa- by "ع" ('ain) in Arabic; the glottal stop. (In practice the two will not conflict.)

INSTRUCTIONS FOR SPELLING IN THE CONVENTIONAL ALPHABET

1. Standard native pronunciation is to be taken as the basis for spelling.

2. Each sound is to be represented by its closest corresponding symbol, and a symbol may be double only to indicate a clear repetition of the same sound.

3. If their representation be indispensable, a vowel-symbol may be marked with: an acute accent (') for stress; a macron (‾) for length; a tilde (˜) for nasalization.

4. Retroflex, emphatic, implosive or ejective consonants may be indicated by dots beneath the symbols representing them.

5. Palatalization of consonants, as in Russian, may be indicated by an apostrophe after the symbol affected.

6. If it be imperative to distinguish between "sh" and "zh" (the symbols given above) and aspirated "s" and "z" respectively, the alternative symbols "š" and "ž" may be used for the former pair. Similarly, "c" and "ch" could stand for the unaspirated and aspirated "ch" sounds respectively.

7. In the narrow rendering of names in, and their close transliteration into, the conventional alphabet, recommended for textual documents and particularly for gazetteers, the diacritical marks listed in 3, 4, 5 and 6 above, should be used. From the broad rendering in, and broad transliteration into the conventional alphabet, appropriate to maps and charts, these marks may be omitted. (This instruction applies only to the conventional alphabet and has no bearing whatever on (e) of the principles of nomenclature.)

ALPHABETICAL ORDER

The full conventional alphabet consists of the following thirty-seven symbols: a, b, ch or c, d, dh, e, f, g, gh, h, i, j, k, kh, l, m, n, ñ or ny, ng, o, ö, p, q, r, s, sh, or š, t, th, u, ü, v, w, x, y, z, zh, or ž, ('), but names written in it should be filed or arranged in common English alphabetical order, disregarding (').

DIRECTORATE OF MILITARY SURVEY (WAR OFFICE AND MINISTRY)

The Directorate of Military Survey is responsible for the spelling of names on maps and aeronautical charts. The principles followed are those stated above, as appropriate.

HYDROGRAPHIC DEPARTMENT OF THE ADMIRALTY

The Hydrographic Department is the authority on the spelling of the names of features in waters of the United Kingdom falling between the low-water mark and the hundred fathom line. It is also responsible for the spelling of names on hydrographic charts, and follows the principles stated above, as appropriate.

PAPER PRESENTED BY CANADA*

Alberta is the most westerly of the three Canadian prairie provinces and the second most westerly province in Canada itself. It entered recorded history comparatively late—in 1754, when the first European explorer, Anthony Henday, crossed the vast prairie hinterland and sighted the Rocky Mountains from the foothills. Alberta did not become a province until 1905, which is in living memory of many people. In those sixty-two years, it has progressed from a predominately rural area to one which is becoming more urban and diversified thanks to the discoveries of oil within the past two decades.

Even if Alberta was a latecomer to the historical scene, it came bearing a rich heritage of place names. The names of Alberta are derived mainly from three sources; Amerindian, French and Anglo-Saxon. Other groups have added to these names over the years, but the first three are the principal ones. The period covered is from the era of the fur-trader and later the missionaries and the time of settlement and railway building, which in its turn extended from the early nineteen-hundreds to the present day. As examples, there are such names as the Saskatchewan (both the north and south Saskatchewan rivers flow through Alberta), meaning "swift current" and derived from the Cree Indian "Kis-is-ska-tche-wan". There is Lake Wabanum from the Indian word for mirror. Wesaskiwin, another city in the province, derives its name from "hill of peace". Athabaska means "where there are reeds". The list is almost endless and these names are in current use today even if they have been anglicized to some extent. The fur trade brought both French and Anglo-Saxon influences. Many French traders worked with the Northwest Company and Hudson's Bay Company and left their mark upon Alberta, although most French names derive from the active missionary period when the Oblate Fathers were prominent. Lacombe is named after Father Albert Lacombe, OMI, a famous early missionary in Alberta. Lac Ste Anne, Lac Des Arcs, Lac La Nonn all date from this period in names. Isle Lake, a rather poor adaptation of a descriptive name, appears on old maps as "Lac Desisles" and no one knows why this was not retained.

The Anglo-Saxon influence was greatest after the Indian, for Alberta came ultimately to be settled both in fur trade times and later by persons of predominantly British extraction. Alberta itself was named after Princess Louise Caroline Alberta, fourth daughter of Queen Victoria and wife of the Marquis of Lorne, who was Governor-General of Canada from 1878 to 1883. This gifted man wrote a sonnet dedicated to his wife in which he gave the name to the province. Edmonton was named after Edmonton, Middlesex, England (now a suburb of London), by a Hudson's Bay trader, William Tomison, as a compliment to his chief clerk, John Peter Pruden, who hailed from Edmonton, England. The list is endless and would demand a paper in itself to do it justice.

The representation of Alberta on the geographic boards of Canada was originally limited to one member who was on the early Geographic Board of Canada and who did what he could to keep the central board in Ottawa informed. During that formative period, many names came into use—in many instances names that would better have been forgotten but which came into being through common usage. At first, there seem to have been no definite rules. This state of affairs however, informal though seemingly effective, continued until the close of the second World War.

It was in 1947, following one or two unfortunate incidents, that the Geographic Board of Alberta came into being. It had been felt that the naming of features was too haphazard and that the one person acting as the agent was likely to be subject to pressures from groups and individuals anxious to perpetuate memories of events and persons unworthy of such honours. The board early established liaison with the central board at Ottawa and, in 1949, the Geographical Names Act was passed setting out the duties and responsibilities for correlating, collecting and ruling on new names and controversial names already in existence. The legislative librarian acts as secretary to the board and Alberta member for the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names; three other members are appointed by order-in-council, while the fourth, the director of surveys, is, like the legislative librarian, a statutory member.

Since its formation, the board has been responsible not only for new names of geographical features but also for the checking of existing names. This involves not only the correct spelling but also the correct use and application of these names. In carrying out this work, it aims to co-operate with other levels of government—federal, provincial and municipal—as well as with all organizations and individuals concerned with geographical features. Examples of some of these are government departments, railway companies, outdoor mountaineering clubs and conservation authorities. To this end the board has built up a useful liaison with these groups.

The question may now be asked, why a provincial board? After all, the federal committee should be sufficient with one member in each province. The answer is that a single member in his own province is too often exposed to pressures and blandishments of individuals and organizations who might wish to perpetuate honours where such are not entirely forthcoming. Such pressures have been brought to bear upon single members who have all too often been unable to resist them. Secondly, the axiom that two heads are better than one holds true, and a thorough discussion of the merits of a name makes it easier to reach a wise decision. It should be clearly stated here that the Geographic Board of Alberta in no way intends to impose names upon features. Rather, it invites suggestions concerning new names and also arbitrates to the best of its ability any dispute that may arise. This is not always easy, for emotions can run high and it is sometimes best to let the matter rest until they have cooled. Some of the other provinces of Canada have taken steps to establish local geographic boards and in so doing they help the Canadian Permanent Committee, in that it will have the advice of the local bodies.

The relations between the Geographic Board of Alberta and the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names have always been very close. Close liaison is maintained, each body advising the other of new names or any changes in names that might appear. The Canadian Permanent Committee often sends maps to Alberta for checking. These are verified so that as much information as possible about the location and source of the name is collected. On the other hand, if a new name is suggested and approved in Alberta, it is forwarded to the Canadian Permanent Committee for endorsement. If names are suggested by the Canadian Permanent Committee, they may be approved by the Alberta Geographic Board and subsequently endorsed by the Canadian Permanent Committee. This simple procedure has much to recommend it. There is always liaison between neighbouring provinces where names are close to the borders of the provinces concerned or common to both provinces.

It is expected that the Geographic Board of Alberta will continue its useful work in the future. One of its projects, which it hopes will eventually be realized, is the publication of a new edition of *Place names of Alberta*. This appeared in 1928, with derivations of all the names then known in Alberta and is of course out of date. The Alberta Geographic Board keeps a card file of names and their derivations, to which new information is added as it is received.

NOTE. A booklet setting out the principles and procedures of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names is available upon request from: The Director, Department of Mines and Technical Surveys, 601 Booth Street, Ottawa, Canada.

PAPER PRESENTED BY BELGIUM[1]

When the Commission (now the Royal Commission) on Toponymy and Dialectology was first set up in 1926, its Flemish section was concerned at the anarchy prevailing in the spelling used in gazetteers of Dutch-language geographical names.

Except in the case of large centres of population, names of communes were written in an archaic form, entirely out of keeping with the modern rules of Dutch spelling. In addition, there was fantastic variation in the spelling used even in official circles.

Efforts at modernization had been made from time to time on the initiative of numerous Flemish cultural groups, but no permanent official solution had been found.

In 1928, a special commission composed of the Flemish section's toponymists embarked on a study of the problem.

The results appeared in a booklet[2] tens of thousands of which were distributed, and the proposed gazetteer was approved and used by all the Flemish cultural organizations without exception.

The reform was fiercely opposed by conservative elements for a number of years but was officially accepted by the Belgian Government in 1937 and made compulsory for all official purposes.

Following the Dutch spelling reform of 1954, the gazetteer was simplified as necessary and these changes, too, have been officially recognized.[3]

In general, the principles of the new gazetteer are also applied to the names of hamlets appearing in official publications. There is still, however, some work to be done on these names, and the publication of an up-to-date list of names of hamlets should come up for consideration in the near future.

The official orthography is normally used for street names as a result of the supervisory authority conferred by the Belgian Ministry of the Interior on the two sections (Flemish and Walloon) of the Royal Commission on Toponymy and Dialectology.

A modern bilingual dictionary of Belgian communes has been in existence for several years.[4] In addition to much useful administrative information, this work contains the official gazetteer of communes and shows, for each commune, the names of hamlets and principal features (streets etc.). It was prepared by an official of the National Statistical Institute and is a useful working tool, but is in need of thorough revision.

The situation with regard to the Belgian ordnance survey map is excellent.

Since 1951, the two sections of the Commission[5] have maintained fruitful co-operation with the Military Geographical Institute of Brussels, under the Ministry of National Defence, on the linguistic and orthographic revision and modernization of the geographical names to be included in the new edition of the Belgian ordnance survey map on the scale of 1: 25,000.

Some two thirds of the Flemish communes have been examined so far, and probably the same number of Walloon communes. Once this rather laborious task has

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared in French by H. J. van de Wijer, Royal Commission on Toponymy and Dialectology, Flemish section, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.65.

[2] H. J. Van de Wijer, *De Vlaamsche gemeentenamen in modern spelling*, Louvain, Instituut voor Naamkunde, 1929.

[3] The new (bilingual) gazetteer is published annually by the National Statistical Institute. See "Official population census for the kingdom as at 31 December 1966", *Moniteur belge* (19 July 1967).

[4] A. Houet, *Dictionnaire moderne géographique, administratif, statistique des communes belges* (Brussels, F. van Muysewinkel).

[5] On the Walloon side, under the direction of Mr. J. Herbillon; on the Flemish side, under the direction of the author. Both are members of the Royal Commission on Toponymy and Dialectology.

been completed, consideration should be given to the preparation of a glossary.

The cadastral lists for the Flemish region defy description. The spelling of the names given in those lists is more than a century old, and absurd and often incomprehensible forms abound. The revision of the Flemish cadastral gazetteer—which moreover, is not entirely up-to-date—will take a very long time. A preparatory scheme has been put forward by the author but the Belgian cadastral administration has been unable, for the time being, to accept it.

PAPER PRESENTED BY ROMANIA*

The Government of Romania welcomes the action taken by the United Nations in regard to the standardization of geographical names.

It also fully agrees with the Group of Experts that the adoption and standardization of geographical names is a matter within the exclusive competence of each State, and that the international standardization of names must be based on national standardization.

In the Socialist Republic of Romania, the question of geographical names is dealt with by the National Geographical Committee which, through its Commission on Geographical Nomenclature, composed of geographers, linguists, cartographers, historians and others, co-operates with organs of the State in resolving all problems arising in this field.

Romania has long been concerned with the national standardization of geographical names, but it was only after 1875, when the Romanian Geographical Society was founded, that the work was properly organized. In 1882, the Society drew up a nineteen-point questionnaire intended to obtain information for the publication of a geographical dictionary of Romania. This undertaking, besides resulting in the publication of the first regional gazetteers, led to the appearance, in 1887, of an index of Romanian rural and urban communes.

Twelve years later, in 1897, the work of preparing the regional gazetteers was concluded, and in 1898 there appeared the first volume of the large geographical dictionary of Romania. The publication of this work was completed fifteen years later, in 1902, with the issue of the fifth volume.

At the beginning of this century, the training of geography teachers for higher education in Bucharest, Lassy and then Cluj stimulated geographical research in the field, and consequently local documentation on the problem of geographical names. Fruitful research on Romanian toponymy was carried out not only by geographers, but also by linguists, historians, geologists and others.

We may also mention the work of St. Hepites, vice-president of the Romanian Geographical Society, who in 1921 submitted to the Society a paper on geographical names in which, invoking the decisions of the thirty-first Congress of French Geographical Societies held in 1913, he showed that a State had the sovereign right to decide on the names of all places within its territory.

The younger generation of experts assigns an important place to this problem in its scientific work, which includes:

Production of medium and large-scale maps;

Production of the atlas annexed to the geographical monograph of the Socialist Republic of Romania;

Production of regional linguistic atlases;

Production of regional geographical and linguistic monographs;

Production of the national geographical atlas;

Compilation of a preliminary glossary containing some 1,500 classified Romanian geographical terms;

Compilation of a preliminary glossary of generic geographical terms with their French and English equivalents;

Publication of toponymic dictionaries;

Publication of the Romanian encyclopaedic dictionary and the technical lexicon, in which geographical terms have an important place.

Progress in dealing with the names of inhabited places and administrative units, from the village to the administrative region, has resulted from the decisions of the Council of Ministers in 1950 concerning the administrative division of the country, as well as from the amendments thereto provided in the decrees of 1952, 1956 and 1964, the object of which was "continuous improvement in the territorial distribution of the forces of production and the increase in the economic potential of the less developed regions, districts and towns".

As to the names of bodies of water and forms of relief, it may be said that our future research can be directed towards the following objectives:

Identification of names which, as a result of being wrongly transcribed on topographic maps, have suffered distortion of their historical, geographical or ethnographical significance;

Standardization of names of certain geographical sub-units which sometimes differ in the works of different geographers;

Establishment of a standard name for the same object (river, mountain etc.) where its designation differs from one locality to another;

Preparation, through extensive collaboration with historians, linguists, geologists, sociologists and others, of an inventory of geographical names used in Romanian territory, with special reference to the compilation of the large geographical dictionary of Romania;

Compilation of a bibliography on the problem of Romanian geographical terms.

As a result of this prolonged activity, it may be said that the standardization of geographical names is no longer a problem. This state of affairs is also partly due to the absence of Romanian dialects which might lead to differences in spelling and pronunciation.

At the same time, special attention is given to the accuracy of certain geographical names which raise problems for international standardization. An example is provided by the Romanian Carpathians which, divided as they now are on the maps into the Western, Eastern and Southern Carpathians, give rise to confusion when related to the whole range, as in the case of the Eastern Carpathians, which acquire a special meaning. For this reason, it is proposed to revert to the names adopted long ago by the geographer S. Mehedinti, namely: "Dacian

---

* The original text of this paper, submitted in French, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.68.

Carpathians" instead of "Eastern Carpathians", "Getsean Carpathians" instead of "Southern Carpathians" and "Roman Carpathians" instead of "Western Carpathians" —which names have historical significance.

PAPER PRESENTED BY FINLAND[1]

In Finland there is close and regular co-operation between cartographers and toponymists. The National Board of Survey, which is responsible for Finnish maps, deals with the field collection of names, chooses the names for maps, and before printing, submits them for revision to the Finnish Names Archives or, because Finland is bilingual, to the Swedish Society of Literature in Finland. Parliament has recommended that experts in linguistics discuss these questions. The correction and checking of names is based on the collection of geographical names, maps and other information available in the Finnish Names Archives and in the guide-books for standardization.[2]

The collection of names throughout Finland, and the office treatment of those names, are comprehensive tasks, entailing most of the problems mentioned in the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names. As an example of the amount of work which has been done, it can be mentioned that, for the compilation of the Finnish base maps at scale 1 : 20,000, now in progress, about 700,000 names have so far been collected. The whole work will be completed in the early nineteen-seventies. More than 1 million names will be included in this uniform series of maps. The geographical names used in base maps form the basis for the nomenclature in maps at smaller scales. When maps are revised, names are checked and corrected.

Particular attention has been paid to the standardization of geographical names in a new map at 1 : 1,000,000 which is now under preparation. The main purpose of this new type of map is to show the location of the most important names in Finland, about 8,000 altogether. By means of a rotating indicator, the names mentioned in a list can easily be found on the map. This will obviously be the kind of map needed by cartographic agencies abroad, and which they can use for constructing their maps of Finland.

The orthography of compound foreign place names has developed in a direction slightly different from that used for compound place names in Finland. In foreign compound names (mainly conventional), the elements are written as separate words more often than as Finnish names proper. Thus we have "Guinean lahti" (Gulf of Guinea), but "Suomenlahti" (Gulf of Finland); "Viktorian järvi" (Lake Victoria), but "Hiidenjärvi" (a lake in Finland); "Musta meri" (Black Sea), but "Selkämeri" (part of the Gulf of Bothnia) etc. Probably because foreign place names occur less frequently in everyday speech than domestic place names, their orthography, influenced by other languages, has not been as well estab-

lished as that of the Finnish places. That is why it has recently been recommended by the Finnish Names Archives that the same orthographic rules should be applied to conventional compound names of foreign places as to domestic place names. These rules are set out below.

1. When the modifier (the first part of the name) is a noun in the nominative singular, the name is written as a single word, e.g. "Kapkaupunki" (Cape Town), "Bahamasaaret" (Bahama Islands), "Comojärvi" (Lake Como). Names with a so-called epexegetic part (designation) should also be written as a single word, because it can be very difficult to distinguish them from the aforementioned names, e.g. "Araljärvi" (Aral Sea), "Atlasvuoristo" (Atlas Mountains).

When the modifier is in the genitive singular, the name is written as a single word, e.g. "Genevenjärvi" (Lake of Geneva), "Adrianmeri" (Adriatic Sea), "Gibraltarinsalmi" (Straits of Gibraltar), except when:

(a) The genitive mark is separated by an apostrophe indicating that the last letter is not pronounced, e.g. "Calais'n salmi" (Pas de Calais, Straits of Dover);

(b) The modifier is itself a compound, e.g. "Kap Verden Saaret" (Cape Verde Islands);

(c) Both parts of the name have a distinct stress, e.g. "Nubian aavikko" (Nubian Desert), "Englannin kanaali" (English Channel), "Wegenerin jäätikkö" (Wegener Inlandsis), or the latter part of the name indicates something constructed by man, e.g. "Suezin kanava" (Suez Canal), "Hooverin pato" (Hoover Dam);

(d) The two parts of the name are proper nouns, e.g. "Espanjan Guinea" (Spanish Guinea);

(e) The latter part of the name is a compound, e.g. "Atlantin valtameri" (Atlantic Ocean), "American Yhdysvallat" (United States of America).

When the modifier is in the genitive plural, the name is written as two words, e.g. "Brittein saaret" (British Isles), "Alankomaiden Antillit" (Dutch Antilles).

2. When the modifier is an adjective, and the latter part of the name is a proper noun, the name is hyphenated, e.g. "Uusi-Seelanti" (New Zealand), "Isot-Antillit" (Greater Antilles), "Vähä-Aasia" (Asia Minor), except when the stress is approximately the same on both elements, e.g. "Brittiläinen Columbia" (British Columbia), "Dinariset Alpit" (Dinaric Alps).

When the latter part of the name is a non-compound generic term, the name is written as a single word, e.g. "Kuollutmeri" (Dead Sea), "Isokanjoni" (Grand Canyon).

When the latter part of the name is a compound, the name is written as two words, e.g. "Dominikaaninen tasavalta" (Dominican Republic), "Pohjoinen jäämeri" (Arctic Ocean), "Iso valtameri" (Pacific Ocean), "Brittiläiset Salomoninsaaret" (British Solomon Islands), "Iso Karhujärvi" (Great Bear Lake).

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.70.

[2] Viljo Nissilä: *Suomalaista nimistöntutkimusta* ("On research of names in Finland"), Helsinki, 1962; Viljo Nissilä: *Paikannimistömme huolto ja suojelu* ("Care and maintenance of our geographical names"), Helsinki, 1965.

PAPER PRESENTED BY GHANA*

The question of the standardization of geographical names in Ghana is not merely academic, but very practical

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.74.

and urgent. The area where geographical names feature most commonly and conspicuously is in the activity of the Survey Division of the country, which is responsible for the preparation and publication of all official maps in

Ghana. The maps published by the division are widely used in Ghana and elsewhere and the division has come to be accepted as the principal and most authoritative body for information concerning geographical names in Ghana.

With the expansion in governmental administration, several other bodies have emerged which either handle geographical names published by the Survey Division or are in a position themselves to influence the introduction and dissemination of various renderings of such names. The most important of such bodies are:

The Public Works Departments, which undertakes road construction and the sign-posting of the names of localities in the country;

The Post Office, which publishes a telephone and other directories in which many localities with postal facilities are listed;

The Census Bureau. Censuses have been taken in Ghana or parts thereof since 1891 and each census has resulted in the publication of a report in which are listed localities and their populations. However, until the 1960 population census, which was the first really modern and scientifically conducted census ever to be undertaken in Ghana, there was no permanent census office and the identity and existence of this aspect of government was represented solely in the published census reports. Since 1960, a permanent Census Bureau has been established and this forms an important repository for data on geographical names as well as on the demographic characteristics of localities.

The 1960 census resulted in the publication of several volumes in many of which localities and other geographical entities of demographic significance, such as administrative divisions, are featured. There is no doubt that these publications represent the most comprehensive lists of place names to be found in the country.

In determining the geographical names to be included in the census publication of 1960, the Bureau relied upon various sources. First, the preparation of area maps involved the use of geographical names as contained in published survey maps. Secondly, the geographers and field assistants and, later on, compilation staff working on such names exercised their discretion in the choice of forms and in some cases in the choice of one or other of several names or renderings. Thirdly, various lists of localities such as those employed by the Central Revenue Department for the collection of local rates and those employed by the Ministry of Local Government for electoral purposes were utilized, although the exact authority for the name forms employed was not always clear. Lastly, in the course of the final editing of the census reports for publication use was made of the expert knowledge of vernacular orthography from the Bureau of Ghana Languages.

The result is that, although we now have a very comprehensive list of place names, there is very considerable divergence between the renderings or even the forms of many of these names as they appear in the census publications and as they appear on the maps published by the Survey Division.

The problem that faces the country in this matter is more than simply a question of reconciling names from these two sources; it is principally one of establishing definitely whether any of the name forms now in use in the different spheres already enumerated are indeed authentic, correct and acceptable, having regard to the prevailing rules of orthography in different parts of the country and

also to the norms which have to be observed by the Survey Division in the rendering of geographical names on maps which are intended for both national and international use. It is the guide-lines to be followed in this matter that constitute the real essence of the problem of geographical names now facing Ghana.

Unlike many other countries, including some in Africa, Ghana has never had an official body or authority responsible for geographical names. Consequently, various and divergent efforts in the compilation and publication of place names have resulted in the creation of ever-increasing confusion.

The Survey Division, which is most intimately concerned with this problem, has compiled a gazetteer for its own use, but it is clear from the maps which continue to issue from the Division that very much more remains to be done before order can be restored to the present confused situation. During recent months the question of geographical names has been given a new urgency by the decision of the Ghana Academy of Sciences to sponsor the preparation of a national atlas of Ghana to be produced under the joint direction of the head of the department of geography at the University of Ghana, Legon, and the Director of Surveys. Since it is intended that this atlas should be an authoritative work of reference, it is most essential that all information provided in it should be as accurate and reliable as possible.

One of the first problems which the working party set up for the atlas encountered was that of geographical names. It became obvious that, unless that problem was tackled, the maps contained in the atlas would fail in a very essential respect to serve the purpose for which they were intended.

The present position in regard to the problems of geographical names in the country is described below.

1. *Prevalence of name duplications from one part of the country to another.* In 1964, a commission set up by the Government for the delimitation of electoral districts, observed as follows: "The names of certain proposed electoral districts are inconvenient . . . (owing to) their length or the tendency to confuse one name with another." This observation referred specifically to the administrative area names, but it serves to emphasize the problem of duplication and to underline the need for some regularization of the geographical name structure of the country.

The 1960 census report also noted: "There is as yet no fixed and universally accepted standard for the spelling of locality names in Ghana . . . names printed on the maps published by the Survey Division often help to popularize certain forms of spelling (which are) sometimes at variance with phonetic renderings and with spelling adopted elsewhere." Observations of a similar kind are also made by Grove and Huzsar in their *Towns of Ghana*, published in 1964. Obviously such discrepancies are undesirable and the *ad hoc* and unco-ordinated attempts at improvement by individuals and departments have served only to aggravate the problem and cause further confusion.

The question of duplication has a quantitative, a spatial and what may be called a feature status aspect. The quantitative aspect refers to the number of times a particular name occurs in an area, while the spatial aspect refers to the distribution of the occurrences over the area. The feature status aspect refers to the size and over-all importance of the actual features or places involved. All three are relevant in Ghana where, in the eastern region, for example, forty-nine place names have an average

duplication of about 2.6 times within an area of 8,693 square miles. In this connexion, the problem of commemorative naming or dedications may also be mentioned. It is apparent that dedicative naming is excessive in village names, at least in certain parts of the country, considering the frequency with which the words: *"krom"*, *"kura"*, *"kope"*, and *"kofe"* occur, as generic parts attached to proper names, thus signifying that the localities concerned are named after their founders or elders. This leads to duplication, since several different founders have the same names. For reasons not altogether clear, this tendency is not so common in the names of the larger towns, which more often have designative names—names bearing a reference to other features, such as rivers. These questions also raise the larger question of the historical and social aspects of commemorative naming.

Various attempts to avoid or modify duplication have already been made. In some cases, numerals are added to place names to differentiate them, although the practice is not as systematically applied as might be expected. Aboabo No. 2 for example, occurs twice in Brong Ahafo and Aboabo No. 4 occurs twice in Ashanti. Compass points are also employed, e.g. Seseama SW and Seseama SE. This is also unsatisfactory, since an impression of direction rather than of the name of a locality is created. Similarly, the use of the word "Central" as a differentiating element may not be desirable.

A number of solutions are under consideration for the problem of duplication. One of these is to attach descriptive or qualifying words to signify the administrative or traditional area where a particular locality occurs. But one of the main problems here has been the many changes which have occurred in the boundaries of these areas as well as the corresponding changes in their names. If the names of the areas themselves are continually undergoing change, this method is ineffective and further confusion is created. There is also a limit to the number and length of qualifying names which can be employed to assist in the identification of other names. While one blanket solution for this problem is obviously unlikely to be found, it is hoped that a number of alternative solutions will be found and applied as circumstances dictate.

2. *Alternate name forms.* The evidence of the 1960 census report would seem to indicate that places with two or more different names are quite few, although the full extent of the problem may not be small, because there is evidence of numerous alternate spellings which may be considered as an aspect of the same problem. The possible causes of the problem or phenomenon of alternate (or variant) spellings are numerous. The different written forms may reflect different spoken forms or dialectical forms. Thus "Effiduase" and "Affiduase" may simply be the Fanti and Asante forms, spoken and written. This often occurs when the initial recording of the name has been made by persons from dialect or language areas other than the area where the name in question occurs. Similarly, some names have anglicized written forms. "Nkawkaw", "Larteh", "Mampong", "Akin" and "Ashanti" have written forms which are not usual in the written form of the language in which they occur.

The confused use of the Akan endings "si" and "se" and "su" and "so" is also a problem. Often the former pair are intended to mean "under" or "beneath" and the latter "upon" or "by". Sometimes, too, "su" means a stream. "Kumasi" and "Kumase" as well as "Pepeasi" and "Pepease" both occur, but historical evidence would seem to suggest that the last syllable in each case should be "se" and not "si". Similarly "Prasu" and "Praso" occur. Here either name makes sense, but the correct name of the village can be only one of these.

The rendering of the sounds "gy" as in *"gye"*, "ky", as in *"kye"*, "dw" as in *"dwa"*, "hw" as in *"hwe"* and "nw" as in *"nwe"* in Akan and other local languages has sometimes been done with "j", "ch", "j" or "du", "fw" and "nhw" respectively. Whether these are acceptable alternatives, having regard to the relevant orthography, must be determined not only within the context of place names but also within the context of the written form of the language concerned.

3. *Syntactical problems.* There are syntactical problems with names which have generic Twi endings such as "krom"/"kurom", and with those which have the adverb ending "so" and those with the traditional group descriptions, e.g. "Akim" ("Akyem"), "Ashanti" ("Asante"), "Agona" etc. The manner of combination of the two parts of the name is not regular. "Nkwaakwaakurom" and "Nkwaakwaa Kurom" occur. "Ashanti Mampong" and "Mampong Ashanti" with or without hyphens occur in various places.

All the above examples have necessarily been drawn from only one language group with which the writers are familiar, but similar examples from other languages could be cited.

4. *Multiplicity of languages and consequently of orthographies.* Ghana has some nine major languages and over fifty others which are grouped more or less geographically. Since geographical names commonly reflect language, it may be expected that each of these sixty-one linguistic areas will have different name characteristics and orthographies. The specific problems are, first, that not all the languages are written, and, secondly, that the alphabets used for the writing of the written ones differ as to number and forms of characters or letters. So far, not all the letters in the alphabets have been employed in the written forms of our geographical names, especially those recorded on maps. This is true of the Ga, Ewe and northern languages. Although this approach is convenient in so far as it avoids typographical complications, it nevertheless begs the question whether geographical names are to be rendered differently from the rest of the language. The tendency has been for the people in the various linguistic areas themselves to refer to names within their areas by the authentic oral and/or written form, while other persons, including officials, tend to employ what they consider to be the most suitable forms. The fact that many of the people who decide on name renderings are unfamiliar with the languages in the areas concerned has resulted in some very strange renderings which bear little relationship to the local forms, e.g. Anamloampa instead of "Anamrampa" and "Pawmpawm", inseat of "Ponpon".

It appears that, since the present written forms are based largely on the English alphabet, an element of anglicization has crept into the forms of many names.

Finally, there are a few names, especially those of important and well-known localities or features which through long usage among various European nations from the fifteenth to the nineteenth centuries now have forms which are anything but Ghanaian. Such names include "Accra", "Ashanti", "Cape Coast", "Winneba", "Saltpond", "Elmina", "Princes Town", "Dixcove", "Axim", "Volta",

"Ankobra" etc. The problem therefore is not only to remove objectionable elements or forms resulting from the indiscriminate use of the English alphabet, but also to render names belonging to unwritten languages.

5. *Other problems.* There are many other problems, the principal ones being:

(*a*) The retention or replacement of names where the systematic rendering differs from the existing form with respect to the local vernacular or orthography;

(*b*) Local acceptance of standardized names;

(*c*) The determination of the extent of geographical features, many of which still need to be clearly identified and named.

Thus it can be seen that Ghanaian geographical name problems may be divided into those which are common to other parts of the world and those which are peculiar to Ghana.

The efforts now being made to tackle these problems in connexion with the preparation of the national atlas of Ghana are being made in the light of the recommendations of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. It is hoped that the procedures followed will be acceptable to whatever statutory national body may be set up in the future for the standardization of geographical names.

The body undertaking the work at the moment is the Committee on Geographical Names set up within the Ghana national atlas project. The committee is a large one of fifteen members drawn from the following bodies: the Public Works Department; the Post and Telecommunications Services Department; the Survey Division; the Institute of African Studies, University of Ghana; the Bureau of Ghana Languages; the Chieftancy Secretariat, Office of the National Liberation Council; the Department of Geography, University College of Cape Coast; the Department of Geography, University of Ghana, Legon; the National Cultural Centre, Kumasi. The composition of the committee to a large extent reflects the complex nature of the problems under study. The committee's first meeting was held in April 1967. A smaller sub-committee to formalize arrangements for local consultation is due to be convened in July 1967.

The method approved for the compilation of place names consists in the collection of the following details for each name: census rendering, 1960; rendering on published survey maps; local rendering; linguistic area; local council area, 1960; geographical co-ordinates; population, 1960; remarks. This is followed by a decision on the form recommended for adoption. It is proposed to consult local communities in reaching this decision.

At present, work is proceeding on names of places or localities with a population of 1,000 or more in order to test methods and ascertain the range of problems more accurately before embarking on full-scale operations for all localities in the country.

PAPER ON THE SPELLING OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN EASTERN GERMANY*

In the German Democratic Republic, a commission dealing with the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language has been in existence since 1959 under the Ministry of the Interior, Administration for Surveying and Cartography. The task of the commission is to lay down principles for the standardized spelling of geographical names. It is a task which corresponds to the recommendations of the United Nations in this area. Thus, the German Democratic Republic follows the example of other States which have set up such commissions for the concerted regulation of the spelling of geographical names.

In its work, the commission abides by principles set out hereunder.

In fixing the spelling of geographical names, not only national interests have to be considered but also, and to the same extent, those of other peoples.

In principle, names have to be written in the national spelling of the State concerned.

If geographical names have been fixed by the competent authorities by virtue of laws, decrees, orders, etc., this spelling shall be binding.

If a State has changed names on its territory, the new name and/or the new spelling shall be binding; the old name may be added temporarily, in brackets, for as long as that is deemed necessary for an accurate identification of the object.

If there exists no official national spelling, the spelling shall be valid which is commonly used in international trade and transport, based on the language in common use in the country concerned.

---

* This paper was transmitted to the Conference on 14 September 1967 by the following letter (E/CONF. 53/L.81) from the representative of Hungary to the Executive Secretary:

"The representative of the Hungarian People's Republic to the Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names has the honour to transmit to you the following documents:

Letter from the Director, Administration for Surveying and Cartography, German Democratic Republic, to the President of the United Nation's Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Palais des Nations, Geneva;

Report by the Council of Ministers of the German Democratic Republic, Ministry of the Interior, Administration for Surveying and Cartography, on progress in the spelling of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic.

"The representative of the Hungarian People's Republic asks you kindly to circulate these documents among the representatives as an official document of the Conference." (*Signed*) Ervin FOELDI

The following communication (E/CONF.53/L.85) was addressed to the President of the Conference on 21 September 1967 by the delegations of the Federal Republic of Germany, France, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the United States of America:

"Under cover of his letter of 14 September 1967, distributed by the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names under document E/CONF.53/L.81, the head of the delegation of the Hungarian People's Republic to the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names requested the circulation as an official document of the Conference of a letter and a report dated 28 August 1967, from the authorities of Eastern Germany. This letter implies that there exists a state or a government other than that of the Federal Republic of Germany entitled to speak as the representative of the German people in international affairs.

"This is not the case. The Government of the Federal Republic of Germany is the sole German government freely and lawfully elected and, therefore, authorized to speak in the name of Germany as representative of the German people in international affairs.

"We should be grateful if you would have this letter circulated

Historical names shall, in principle, be used only on historical maps.

No difference shall be made in the transcription of names consisting of an adjective and a common noun (for instance, "Rocky Mountains", "Beloye ozero"). All combined names of this kind shall be regarded as a unit.

The orthographic rules valid in the State concerned (use of a single word or separate words, use of the hyphen, capitalization and lower case) shall be observed.

Names of localities preceded by an article and suffixes to the name have always to be written in full. The suffix may be omitted if the point referred to by the suffix is marked on the map. Relevant rules for the other geographical names are contained in the general directions.

In bilingual or multilingual areas, the leading official language of the area concerned shall, in principle, be binding for the spelling of geographical names. The second customary name shall appear after or under the first name.

If in multilingual areas no spelling has been given official priority, both names shall be treated as equal.

The principles set out below have been established for the transcription of names written in foreign languages.

Rule for States using Roman script

Foreign names shall be written unchanged, with the use of all letters and diacritical marks valid in the language concerned.

Rules for States using non-Roman script

Here a distinction shall be made between States using letters (e.g. the Soviet Union, Greece, India, Korea)

(Continued)

as an official document of the Conference."

(Signed) François NÉDÉLEC
Head of the delegation of the Republic of France

Emil MEYNEN
Head of the delegation of the Federal Republic of Germany

H. A. G. LEWIS
Head of the delegation of the United Kingdom

G. E. PEARCY
Acting head of the delegation of the United States of America

The following communication (E/CONF.53/L.87) was addressed to the President of the Conference on 22 September 1967 by the delegations of Bulgaria, Hungary, Poland and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics:

"In a letter addressed to you on 21 September 1967 (E/CONF. 53/L.85) some delegations to the Conference claimed that solely the Government of the Federal Republic of Germany was authorized to speak in the name of Germany as the representative of the German people in international affairs.

"The undersigned delegations, proceeding from the undeniable existence of two German states, resolutely reject this pretension as being contradictory to the real situation and international law. They state that the maintenance of the claim referred to above seriously impedes peaceful international co-operation on the basis of the United Nations Charter.

"We should be grateful if you would have this letter circulated as an official document of the Conference."

(Signed) B. COHEN
Head of the delegation of the People's Republic of Bulgaria

E. FOELDI
Head of the delegation of the Hungarian People's Republic

L. RATAJSKI
Head of the delegation of the People's Republic of Poland

A. M. KOMKOV
Acting head of the delegation of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

and States using hieroglyphs (e.g. the People's Republic of China).

Names to be rendered from non-Roman letters shall be transliterated. Characters consisting of hieroglyphs shall be transliterated, in accordance with the systems agreed upon. The transliteration systems are laid down in the general directions. The names resulting from these systems shall be written in Roman characters with an alphabet which may, in addition to the customary twenty-six letters, comprise such letters and diacritical marks as are contained in alphabets of other languages using Roman characters.

If States using non-Roman script have their own official systems for transliteration into Roman characters, such systems shall be binding for the spelling of names on maps in the German language. In cases where such systems legalized by the Government do not exist, one of the hitherto customary provisional systems shall be fixed in the general directions.

Special rules applicable to special problems are set out below.

Names of towns to which a German spelling or a spelling in general use in international trade and transport may be added are listed in the instruction for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language, Berlin 1964, under paragraph 6: "Application of German spelling to names of towns".

Geographical features which extend over the territory of several States and for which a German spelling may be used are listed in the instruction for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language, Berlin 1964, under paragraph 7: "Application of German spelling to names of geographical features".

In the case of major inland waters (lakes, rivers) extending over several States, those German names shall be binding which are given in the instruction for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language, Berlin 1964, under paragraph 7, if the map scale does not permit the use of several national names.

Names of seas which are international waters or which touch several national areas shall be written in the German spelling. The basis for this is the "Application of German spelling to names of international waters, parts thereof and submarine relief forms", in paragraph 7 of the instruction for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language, Berlin 1964.

On geographical and thematic maps, names of States may be written in the full German form or in the German abbreviated form.

The commission for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language has revised the "Instruction for the spelling of geographical names on maps in the German language", Berlin 1964, and the "General directions for the spelling of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic", Berlin 1966.

The above-mentioned principles and rules are set out in these documents, to which supplements are constantly issued.

Beyond this, general directions for the spelling of geographical names of European States are in preparation. Directions for the spelling of geographical names in Belgium and the Netherlands, for instance, are in the process of completion.

PAPER PRESENTED BY NORWAY*

Since the 1890's, the Royal Ministry of Education has been responsible for the standardization of the spelling of geographical names. It is assisted by an officially appointed Board of Advisers. This Ministry is also the authority responsible for the spelling of geographical names in the Norwegian Territories in the Arctic (Svalbard and Jan Mayen) and the Norwegian Antarctic Territory. The Board of Advisers is charged with the task of giving advice on the spelling of geographical names to all government offices and institutions (Norges geografiske oppmåling, Norges sjøkartverk, Norsk polarinstitutt, the Ministries of Post and Telegraph, Roads, etc).

In 1913, special instructions were issued, laying down that all Norwegian place names should be written in accordance with an orthographic system suitable for the standardization of genuine Norwegian dialect material. All later rules for the standardization of the spelling of place names are derived from the instructions of 1913. The latest instructions were issued in 1933 and 1957, and deal with specific details of standardization.

From the beginning, the Board of Advisers has been able to base its advice on the spelling of place names on a very famous work, *Norsk Gaardnavne* ("Norwegian Farm-Names") in twenty volumes, with an introduction and an index, listing all names of farms and subdivisions of farms, with a selection of written forms from the sixteenth, seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, all known mediaeval forms

and present-day local pronunciation. Since 1940, all names on new topographical maps published by Norges geografiske oppmåling are written in phonetic script and checked by specialists. Standardization of the written forms on the maps is based on this material.

In northern Norway there is a Lapp minority. There is a special government adviser on Lapp place names. In the two northernmost counties, Finnmark and Troms, there are maps where almost all the names are of Lapp origin, and in border districts between Norwegians and Lapps, there are many places with two different names, one Lapp and one Norwegian.

There is as yet no Norwegian national gazetteer. Plans have been worked out for a gazetteer, which can be based on the maps at 1:250,000 (about 100,000 names).

Norsk polarinstitutt applies the official rules for the standardization of place names on its maps. Names of special features originally given and used by explorers of other nationalities and in use in other countries are very seldom changed into Norwegian names in the Norwegian Arctic and Antarctic Territories. For the Arctic Svalbard region, see the volumes *The place names of Svalbard* and *Supplement to the place names of Svalbard* (1942-1958).

The national names authority is the Board of Advisers on Place Names, and the Royal Ministry of Education is the executive authority.

The Norwegian Place Names Archives is the institution responsible for the collection of place-name material and directs the research work carried out in that field.

PAPER PRESENTED BY CAMBODIA*

Since its establishment in 1955, the National Geographic Service of Cambodia has had a place-names section, which deals with geographical names in the preparation of the country's maps. This section, with an inexperienced staff, has been unable to play an active role during the first seven years of its existence and has accordingly evolved along the same lines as the other activities of the Service.

In the time of the Geographic Service of Indo-China, i.e., up to 1955, there were no Cambodians on the staff of the geographical service. The senior staff were principally French, and the subordinate staff Viet-Namese. As a result, the pronunciation of most of the names appearing on the maps published by the Geographic Service of Indo-China is represented in a distorted or inaccurate form. The factors responsible for this situation include:

Interpretation by persons not knowing the language of the country or not knowing it well;

Unreliable information supplied by inhabitants having a faulty pronunciation;

Recording of names in letters of the Roman alphabet, but according to French procedures;

Absence of fixed rules for the phonetic transcription and romanization of Cambodian characters.

The names on all maps of Cambodia on the scales 1:100,000, 1:400,000 and 1:500,000 were printed in the Roman alphabet. Although this practice is still followed

today, the National Geographic Service has published a series of special maps for schools in which the names are given in Cambodian characters.

A bilateral Cambodian-United States agreement of 1957 made it possible for the National Geographic Service, from 1961 onwards, to participate actively in the national standardization of geographical names and, with the aid of the mapping service of the United States Army, to produce maps of Cambodia on the scale 1:50,000 on which place names are shown in Cambodian characters and in the letters of the Roman alphabet according to the phonetic transcription. As, unfortunately, no thorough study of the rules for the writing of Cambodian characters in the Roman alphabet had been carried out by the Service up to that time, a few small errors crept into the transcription of names and are now being corrected.

Teams have been sent into the field by the Service for the purpose of inquiring of the inhabitants, and then recording, the names of inhabited places, watercourses and other features. The investigators record these names according to their pronunciation and verify them with the aid of the land registers in the cantonal offices. Where possible, they indicate the origin of these names in order that they may be spelt correctly and that the proper pronunciation may be adopted. It is by no means possible to rely on the information obtained from the inhabitants—and even less so on the names furnished by them—on the basis of their pronunciation because of the fact that in some regions, particularly in the north-west, they have a rather pronounced accent. Foreign investigators tend to make the

mistake of adopting the names supplied by the inhabitants and of following their pronunciation.

Field operations in the easily accessible areas were carried out by the Service's own teams, and in other areas by the Philippine firm, Certeza.

The final determination of the names was then made by the central office, although some errors undoubtedly did slip by in the case of the areas entrusted to the foreign investigators.

At the present time, our task has been facilitated and simplified through the co-operation of the Ministry of the Interior, which has compiled a list of names for the entire country. The *mékhum*, or head of the commune, makes a list of his *phoum* (villages) and other named places, watercourses and other features. He then sends the list to the *chauvay srok* (head of canton), who examines and classifies the names. The latter, in turn, makes a list of his *srok* (cantons) and sends it to the *khet* (province or prefecture), where the same procedure is followed as at the *srok* level. The *chauvay khet* (governor of province) sends the complete list in its final form to the Minister of the Interior, who thus has all the lists in his possession and can perform his task that much easier in the event that new *khet* or *srok* are established.

Many names in the Kingdom of Cambodia have an historical or legendary origin or have some special characteristic. The Batdambang *khet*, for example, has an historical origin, *"bat"* meaning "to lose", and *"dambang"* meaning "wand", the explanation being that in ancient times a great Cambodian warrior cast his magic wand at enemy troops in order to destroy them and never found it again.

Phnom-Penh, the name of the capital of Cambodia, is of legendary origin. *"Phnom"* means "mountain" or "hill", and *"penh"* is the name of an old woman, and legend has it that the hill which now rises in the centre of the town was built up under the direction of an old woman by the name of Penh.

A *khet* situated in the central part of the country is called Kompong-Chhnang, "kompong" meaning "port", and "chhnang" meaning "saucepans". In this *khet*, many of the inhabitants make their living through the manufacture of earthenware which they export to other *khet* in launches, the Kompong-Chhnang *khet* being situated in the lake region. Another instance where a name is related to some particular characteristic is the maritime province in the south-west called Kampot. This is a word meaning "tetrodon", a fish which abounds in local rivers.

The Cardamom chain is the habitat of the cardamom, a variety of plant whose seeds have a sharp taste, and the inhabitants have given this chain the Cambodian name for "cardamom", namely, "Phnum-Kravanh", *"phnum"* meaning "mountain", and *"kravanh"* meaning "cardamoms".

In the case of certain villages in the north-eastern province of Stung-Treng, which formerly had Laotian names, the Cambodian Government has "Khmerized" these names either by translating them into Cambodian or by creating new names that have some connexion with local history or legend.

Through a careful study of these names, it has been possible to eliminate minor errors due to the faulty pronunciation that was recorded when information was being gathered in the field. In order that foreign map-users may be able to avoid phonetic errors, the correct Cambodian spelling must be used, and the Cambodian characters must be transcribed in the Roman alphabet in accordance with the accepted pronunciation and the rules which have been adopted.

It is to be noted that Phnom-Penh, the capital of Cambodia, is often called "Nam-Yang" by the Viet-Namese and "Kim Thak" by certain Chinese. Cambodia, however, while still recognizing the names which it gave to its former provinces in what is today South Viet-Nam—for example, Prey-Nokor (Saigon), Méat-Chrouk (Chaudoc), Préah-Trapéang (Travinh) and so on—also recognizes the names which have been Viet-Namese since the occupation.

The names of some of the maritime provinces of Thailand which formerly belonged to Cambodia have likewise been transformed more or less into Thai names; for example: Bachoem-Borei, meaning "western region", has become "Chantaburi" in Thai, and Nokor-Réach was originally changed to "Korat-Aranhvar" in Thai and is now called "Aranya" in modern Thai.

Although some mispronunciation of town and province names by the Viet-Namese and Chinese is to be expected, the fact of giving new names to the capital and to certain provinces and cantons which are still Cambodian is indicative of questionable intentions.

The proper name of the country is "Kampuchea", which in French becomes "Cambodge" and in English "Cambodia". Phonetic research has shown that the English pronunciation is closer to the Cambodian than is the French.

AGENDA ITEM 8

Exchange of experience on problems identified in the report of the group of experts on geographical names

DISCUSSION OF THE REPORT OF THE GROUP OF EXPERTS

Paper presented by Kenya[1]

Some duplication of the information given in the paper submitted under agenda item 7 and the present paper is unavoidable. The problems are identified by the letters used in the experts' report.[2]

(a) Names of features are collected by land surveyors of the Survey of Kenya engaged in the field-checking of topographic maps. If local written forms are available, the surveyor copies them. If there is no written form available he records what he hears, using Swahili orthography. The spellings are checked wherever possible by a local authority (usually administrative, educational or religious) whose recommendations are also recorded, together with information on language, meaning and alternative names.

The whole record is examined by the Standing Committee on Geographical Names, or its secretary, and amendments may be made to conform with accepted principles on published usage etc. (see paper submitted under item 7). Historical evidence prior to about 1880 does not exist for Kenya, except for some places on the coast of the Indian Ocean.

(b) The statement under (a) above applies equally to determining the extent of features. Kenya is completely covered by topographic maps at scales 1:50,000 or 1:100,000. This simplifies the task. Generally, current usage outweighs historical evidence. For example, the mountains called "Ol Dainyo le Satima" by the Maasai were first indicated on the map in 1883 as the "Aberdare Range". The latter name is still in common use, the name "Satima" being now restricted to the highest summit.

(c) Where there is doubt, alternative names are added on the maps in parentheses after the name commanding most support.

(d) The local name is shown on maps against the part of any feature to which it is known to apply. No principle has been laid down for deciding on an over-all single name for a feature not already possessing one.

(e) Principles have been laid down for dealing with names written in minority languages (see paper under item 7).

(f) Choice of variations: this problem occurs mainly in areas where there is no written form of the local language or where a written form is comparatively new. The advice of an expert on the language must be sought. For example, we have on maps of Maasai country, the

forms "Uaso", "Waso", "Ewaso", "Ewuaso", meaning river. The Government's adviser on the Maasai language recommends the last spelling. This will be adopted on revised editions of maps.

(g) Optional parts: this problem has not been encountered in Kenya.

(h) Only one successful attempt has been made to change an established name in Kenya ("Teita" to "Taita"). This has proved so difficult under present procedures that no further attempt will be made unless or until the SCGN is given more powers. A recent attempt to change "Garba Tulla" to "Garba Tula" failed.

(i) The SCGN has no control over commemorative naming.

(j) No attempt has been made to change any duplicated name.

(k) See (f) above.

(l) See (r) below.

(m) and (n) These problems occur in Kenya; a few attempts at solution on the lines suggested have failed.

(o) Kenya is fully covered by topographic maps at scale 1:50,000 or 1:100,000 which form the basis of geographical names recording. The maps are all gridded so that a grid reference can be quoted for any feature or the position of any name.

(p) The problem exists, but little work has been done on it. An example is the word "dam", which in the original English means a bank of stone or earth impounding water. In Kenya, it refers to the body of water so impounded.

(q) (1) On maps, the generic term is usually omitted, since the name is attached to a feature whose nature is self-evident; for example, river names are printed in blue along the blue river line symbol. However, where the specific part of the name is an adjective, the generic term must be added, such as "Cold river", not "Cold". This simple rule is complicated in Kenya by the problem of local and national languages. For example, Nairobi was founded in Maasai territory and takes its name from the Maasai name "Enkare Nairobi", meaning "river of cold water". In and around the city, Maasai is no longer a language of daily use, English being at present dominant. Hence the river is usually referred to as the Nairobi River. But there are other streams in Maasai land also called "Enkare Nairobi" and these are so written on maps.

(2) There is at least one case in Kenya where an ambiguous abbreviation is deliberately used: this is the use of "L" for "Laga" (Boran) or "Lagh" (Somali). The reason for this is that a large part of north-eastern Kenya

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by J. Loxton, Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.4.

[2] See annex, p. 151.

73

was originally inhabited by Boran who gave names to features which are still in use. Somali nomads are now the principal inhabitants and the problem (unresolved) is whether the Boran or the Somali name should be adopted in each case.

(*r*) The problem of the definite article occurs mainly in the Maasai language group. Usually it is considered as integral in the name. It changes its form with the number and gender of the noun. It is frequently shown as a separate word, although it is probably more correct to attach it to the noun, as in Arabic.

(*s*) and (*t*) These are not applicable to Kenya.

(*u*) Since names on Kenya maps come from up to thirty languages, this would require lengthy documentation, which has not been attempted on maps or in the gazetteer. Although most names are written in Swahili orthography, it does not follow that the rules of Swahili pronunciation etc. apply. Examples of names commonly mispronounced in Kenya are "Chania" ("Chōā-nya", not "Cha-ni-a"), "Sasamua" ("Sasāā-mwa", not "Sasa-mu-a"), "Nyeri" (in which the digraph "Ny" is to be pronounced "-ni-" as in "onion", and "Nye-" as a syllable).

(*v*) The experience of the SCGN indicates fairly clearly what a national names authority requires in order to function effectively. The requirements may be summed up briefly under the heads: powers, resources, time.

Powers. The powers of a national standardizing authority must be written into the national law. The authority or the minister to whom it is responsible must have the power to order that, once a spelling has been approved, it shall be used in all official documents.

Resources. The central board of the authority should be a policy-making body and should make the final check on the recommendations of local committees or consultants to ensure that they conform with approved principles. The actual collection of names on the ground can be done by a surveyor, who need not necessarily be a linguist. He will frequently need the aid of an interpreter. The examination of names should be done by a local committee, or in some places by one or more individual consultants. It is essential that this authority should, individually or collectively, have an intimate knowledge of both the geography and language(s) of the area on which it adjudicates. Names recommended by local committees and approved by the central board must be published officially (e.g. in a government gazette) and time allowed for objections to any name.

The board must keep a watch, once a name has been finally published and approved for official use, that it is in fact used in the correct form in all official publications.

To perform all these duties and to maintain records effectively, the board must have adequate resources: it needs a full-time secretary having considerable linguistic and geographical knowledge, together with organizing ability and the personality to get action in district committees, and supported by sufficient clerical and records staff.

Time. This is the most difficult requirement to provide: the longer an incorrect name or spelling is in current use, the more firmly it becomes established, and the more difficult it becomes for the board to rectify it. It follows that effective national geographical names authorities should be set up without delay.

PROBLEMS OF DOMESTIC STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Paper presented by Canada[1]

(*a*)[2] At present, the spelling, form and application of 95 per cent of geographical names in Canada are accepted. Standardization has been proceeding for seventy years, yet field investigations disclose variations in local usage, unrecorded names of long standing, locally accepted corruptions and names no longer known or in use. The investigative methods used in field studies in Canada are by interview, often followed up or expanded by correspondence. Avoidance of leading questions in interviews is essential, as is also the development of the acumen of the interviewer in determining the competence of those he interviews. Only occasionally is significant illiteracy encountered, to the degree that the correct spelling of a name cannot be verified, but semi-illiteracy or disinterest may mislead the unwary interviewer.

Local residents are rarely conversant with the nomenclature established on topographic maps, although the owners of small pleasure craft or commercial fishermen are usually well aware of toponymic errors on navigation charts. Commercial road maps reflect the nomenclature on topographic maps and tend to advertise local names more widely than do other kinds of published maps.

In most cases, names of local or public usage should take precedence over names established in documents, even if the latter demonstrably represent the earliest historical names. It has been found that local residents resist any attempt to have a name forced upon them that is different from that in local use. This lack of success in name-changing is naturally most pronounced when an entirely different name is proposed, but occasionally even minor changes in form result in keen opposition.

Field interviews are not always satisfactory, as polls may not provide conclusive results. Some arbitrary decision must be taken in such cases and the action publicized locally. The co-operation of local newspapers, highway officials responsible for erecting signs, local historical societies or community groups can all be used to promote the selected name and eventually achieve some measure of general acceptance.

Local interviews are unlikely to contribute effectively to the selection of the most appropriate orthography for a native name. Residents are not likely to be seriously opposed to minor changes in the spelling of Indian names, except for operators of commercial establishments who make use of the name in promoting their businesses. With other names, however, historical records may indicate that a corrupted form of the original name has unwittingly gained acceptance. If the change is slight, some effort should be made to correct it, but a radical change should

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.8.

[2] Letters in parentheses correspond to those used to identify problems in the report of the Group of Experts (see annex, p. 151).

not be forced on the local residents simply for the sake of historical accuracy.

(b) The application of a name to a feature, especially to types of features with contentious limits (ranges, bays, sounds, streams, archipelagoes, plateaux, etc.), may require discussion between specialists in physiography, international law or surveyors before a suitable agreement is reached. The extent of the larger features is not usually of concern to the general public which may, however, have certain strong opinions about the application of a local name to the entirety or a portion of a stream.

The limits of a mountain range or plateau should be decided as far as possible on the basis of physiographic homogeneity. Significant topographic breaks should form the boundaries but if published usage (in explorers' journals, geological reports etc.) transgresses the natural limits, it may be desirable to extend the application of the name. A water feature such as a bay or sound is normally enclosed from headland to headland; if published usage in a pilot chart or other navigational document is long established, the application should not be altered except after careful consideration, or if it is obviously quite inappropriate.

One of the principles of nomenclature in Canada specifically states that to apply different names to different sections of a river is an undesirable practice, even when the different sections are separated by lakes. Obviously this principle cannot be implemented in all cases, but our practice is to attempt to apply the same name from headwaters to mouth. In settled areas, persons living near the headwaters of a relatively small stream may identify it by a name different from that used by persons living downstream. One name may have as much validity as the other and the only solution may be to make an arbitrary decision and attempt to convince those using the discarded name to accept the official one. Depending on the circumstances, it may be possible to apply the upstream name to a portion of the river as far down as its junction with an unnamed tributary, and to apply the downstream name to the headwaters of that tributary. In most cases, however, it is preferable that the tributary should have a name different from that of the trunk stream.

As in the previous problem, greater weight is given to local usage than to other factors, but in unsettled regions, a name established on historical maps or in old reports should be retained in preference to a newly adopted name.

(c) Local usage should apply in the selection of one of several alternate names. If such usage is not decisive, the principle involving duplication might be employed, or that concerning brevity.

(d) In the case of streams, the comments under (b) are applicable here. It is emphasized that this is a particularly difficult problem in settled areas, and it is Canadian practice that one name only be applied to the main trunk of a stream. In the case of lakes, it is preferable to name the whole by the generic term "lake" and parts of the whole by the generic terms "bay", "arm" or "inlet". If two lakes at the same level are joined by a narrow channel, each may be named by the generic term "lake". The general principle of unambiguous identification of each entity governs this problem.

(e) In Canada, this problem concerns names derived from Indian and Eskimo words, and has been a problem ever since the first Europeans began transliterating the native names they encountered into English or French.

The lack of written languages and the wide variety of dialects gave rise to innumerable spellings for the same idea or thing. These variants became established on maps and in the literature and became accepted and stabilized, especially in the more settled southern fringe of the country. Where different spellings for the same meanings are used in areas widely separated geographically, it is preferable that no attempt be made to standardize them. In many cases, the names may have only a spurious resemblance to one another and originally may have had quite different meanings, now lost in obscurity. Even in closely adjacent regions, the different orthographies used in French and English have resulted in slightly differing forms of the same names, e.g. "Timiskaming" in Ontario, "Témiscamingue" in Quebec; "Restigouche" in New Brunswick, "Ristigouche" in Quebec. Where such variants are firmly fixed, they should be accepted.

(f) This problem is not applicable to Canadian toponymy.

(g) Canadian policy is to insist that the whole of the approved name be used on maps or in documents and to discourage the use of so-called optional name elements entirely. Fortunately very few names allow this problem to arise. One type of name includes those having the prefix "Fort". For example, "Fort Simpson" is the approved name and "Simpson" is incorrect usage. In practice, there is no option. Colloquial variants occur, such as "The Hat" for "Medicine Hat", "Tuk" for "Tuktoyaktuk" or "POV" for "Povungnituk". The names of post offices serving some communities differ from the statutory name of the settlement, e.g. "Niagara-on-the-lake" for Niagara and "Valleyfield" for Salaberry-de-Valleyfield. These differences are necessary to eliminate the possibility of misdirection of mail, but only the community name would appear on official maps.

(h) The Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names recently approved an addition to the guiding principles of nomenclature as follows: "Established names which have proved acceptable and satisfactory should not be changed or altered". It is considered justifiable to change a name that is blatantly unacceptable because of the likelihood of confusion due to duplication, or because it has become objectionable due to changing *mores*. Minor alterations may be effected for the sake of grammatical purity or the discovery that a feature had been named using the wrong spelling in commemorating a person. Occasionally the Committee will advise that the old name be printed on maps in brackets in conjunction with the new one, to allow proper identification until the new name becomes accepted.

(i) The principles of nomenclature which guide the decisions of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names include one concerning personal names, reading as follows:

"Personal names should not be used unless it is in the public interest to honour a person by applying his name to a geographical feature. The application of a personal name during the lifetime of the person concerned should be made only in exceptional circumstances. Ownership of land should never in itself be grounds for the application of the owner's or donor's name to a geographical feature contained therein."

Although this is not a mandatory regulation, the intent is to discourage the practice of naming features after living

6

persons. The Committee views this principle as a protection against political pressure. Each violation of this principle establishes a precedent and makes it more difficult to reject subsequent questionable proposals. In settled areas, it may be a gracious gesture to commemorate the names of worthy pioneer families. In unsettled regions, Canadian practice has been to commemorate the names of Canadian servicemen who died in the service of their country during the Second World War. Nearly 7,000 such names have been adopted. Nevertheless, identification of the feature is the prime reason and commemoration the secondary one. Occasionally, a prominent feature is named to honour a person for outstanding public service and in such cases there may be no urgent, practical need to identify the feature; in so doing, previously unnamed features are selected. It is rare that approval is given to the naming of a feature for a person who is still in public life.

(*j*) Avoidance of duplication of names is considered a most important aspect of the standardization of names in Canada. Non-duplication of names of populated places is of course the primary concern, for this is a potential cause of confusion, especially to the postal authorities or transportation agencies. It is unavoidable with some older names which are closely similar ("Saint John", New Brunswick; "St. John's", Newfoundland; "Saint-Jean," Quebec) or identical ("Windsor" in Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and Newfoundland); their location in different provinces allows differentiation. New names of populated places, however, are carefully considered in order to prevent duplication.

Duplication of names of natural features is less strict, the general policy being to avoid duplication of the names of major features within a province, whereas for a minor feature in a settled area the limit need not be beyond the area of a small administrative unit such as a township or parish. Many examples occur of officially approved duplications. Two major rivers in Canada bear the toponym "Churchill"; they are 1,300 miles apart and are thus unlikely to be confused. "King Peak" occurs in British Columbia and adjacent Yukon Territory; they are 600 miles apart in unsettled country. There are twenty-seven officially recognized "Mud Lakes" listed in the *Gazetteer of Ontario;* another seventy-eight are listed by cross-reference to the official names, indicating sometime usage of the name. The decision is often a subjective one, depending partly on the prevalence of public usage and exceptions are approved only when it is considered that no confusion may result.

(*k*) As mentioned above (*e*), no consistent standardized orthography was available until recently for Eskimo names in Canada. Linguists have now agreed on an orthography which was developed mainly in northern Quebec and the eastern Arctic but is applicable across the whole extent of Eskimo territory. Names of Eskimo origin which come up for consideration on new maps, or as new proposals, are approved according to the new orthography. The Province of Quebec, engaged in the development of its northern district and in the preparation of the *Gazetteer of Quebec*, is transposing all Eskimo names, no matter how well established in public use, into the new orthography. In some cases it takes a discerning mind to comprehend that the former "Keglo" is shown as "Queglo", "Korok as Corok", "Kogaluk as Cogaluc". In the Northwest Territories, among other changes, "Takiyuak" has become "Takijuq", but no attempt has yet been made to review the orthography of the great majority of established Eskimo names.

The orthography of many Indian names in Quebec is also being altered, such as "Nakwagami" to "Naquagami", "Nestawkanaw" to "Nestaocano", "Papachouesati" to "Pepeshquasati", "Manuan" to "Manouane", "Ashuapmuchuan" to "Chamouchouane", "Kowatstakau" to "Cauouatstacau".

(*l*) In general, Canadian practice is to separate qualifying parts of a name, but there are exceptions where the unification of words has become accepted, e.g. "Thickwood Hills", "Blackwater Creek", "Greytrout Lake", "Firetrail Creek", "Redpine Island", "Hanginghide Creek", "Sixmile Brook". There should be no difference between the form of a name on a map and that used in a text. The only concession made to cartographers is to endorse the abbreviation "St." or "Ste." for *"Saint"* or *"Sainte"* in names of settlements or features. The generic term, of course, may be abbreviated at the discretion of the map producer.

(*m*) Subjectivity in selecting new names is unavoidable. All names, except truly descriptive names, are to a greater or lesser degree contrived.

(*n*) Under a democratic form of government, any attempt to bring name changes into acceptance by legislation will inevitably be frustrating to the standardizing body and irritating to the people concerned. Even slight changes in spelling or form of a name, no matter how well justified by grammatical rules or historical evidence, may evoke strong opposition (Cortes Island, in British Columbia, is known locally as "Cortez Island." Despite a decision of long standing, a recent complaint from local residents stated their preference for the form "Cortez".)

(*o*) For gazetteer purposes, Canadian practice is to locate geographical entities to the nearest minute. This is more than adequate for many large features and adequate for the smallest feature. There is seldom need for any greater precision for named entities, as against the need for high precision for bench-marks, geodetic stations, survey monuments etc.

(*p*) Geographic features, in general, are what they are considered to be by the local people or those who come into direct contact with them. There is no precise definition of a creek in English-speaking countries. Locally, it is usually thought of as a stream less in volume and/or length than a river. But no firm rule may be laid down as to when a stream should be called a creek and when it should be called a river. A creek in one part of the country may be larger than a river in another. A creek is a creek if people refer to it as a creek. A *"coulee"* in western Canada may be either the valley containing a permanent or seasonal stream (usually the latter), or it may refer to the watercourse itself. It is recognized that this problem requires research. It may develop that some descriptive terms defy standardization in a national glossary.

(*q*) (1) Canadian practice is to indicate in gazetteers the kind of entity identified by a name having no generic part. If no generic term is listed in the name column ("The Palisades", "The Gap", "Hen and Chickens"), the user must assume that this is the whole of the name as officially approved. The designation column defines the feature (peaks, passage, rocks).

(2) Abbreviations must be nationally standardized and agreement reached between the names agency and the

map-producing agencies to avoid ambiguity. The only problem of this nature in Canadian nomenclature is "Brook" ("Bk.") and "Branch" ("Br.") in mapping practice; "Brook" ("Br.") and "Branch" (not abbreviated) in gazetteers.

(*r*), (*s*) and (*t*) These are not applicable to Canadian toponymy.

(*u*) In Canada, no need exists for information on gender, which is of importance in French language toponymy. The terminology logically follows French grammatical rules. In the matter of pronunciation, the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names is assisting the Canadian Broadcasting Corporation in revising a handbook for announcers, showing stress and pronunciation for the more commonly used Canadian toponyms.

(*v*) The standardizing names agency for Canada was created in 1897 and, having passed through several functional reorganizations, was established in 1961 as the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names. This committee includes representatives from federal government agencies with interests in nomenclature and a representative appointed by each of the ten provinces.

In setting up a names standardization agency where no such organization presently exists, the main criteria to be considered should be authority, practicability and publicity. Authority over all geographical names coming under the jurisdiction of the country should be vested by statute in the names agency and all government departments should be required to abide by the decisions of that agency. Thus there must be some method of effective liaison between the names agency and those government bodies responsible for producing maps and charts (whether topographic, hydrographic or specialized maps), erecting highway signs, surveying, producing scientific or economic reports in which geographical names are used, planning commissions and archival institutions.

It is suggested that the advisory body should be composed of representatives of all agencies concerned with mapping, national archives and postal authorities and might well include specialists in geography and/or history from within or outside the Government. These members should be appointed in the enacting legislation by virtue of their positions as executive directors of the various government agencies and provision made to appoint the extra-government members. Care should be taken to select the latter on the basis of their professed interest or competence; it should be stressed that their appointment is a working rather than an honorary function. It would be the responsibility of the names agency to adjudicate on all matters of contentious names and formally to recommend all new names or name changes. The names agency would be guided in its decisions by a set of rules of nomenclature which would be the first duty of the names agency to formulate, and it is suggested that they should be based on a thoughtful consideration of the various regulations presently in use by countries with names bodies of long standing, taking into account special circumstances or problems of their own country.

It is to be expected that the members of the names body will have other more pressing responsibilities and cannot be expected to devote a great deal of their time to the execution of decisions and none at all to the maintenance of records. Therefore it is recommended that a working staff to service the names body be established, headed by a competent secretary, whose responsibility would be the supervision of the day-to-day processing of names, maintenance of records and, with experience, to act on behalf of the names body in deciding on routine, non-contentious names.

It is recommended that the Minister responsible for the names body should not be required personally to approve all name decisions. It seems preferable that he delegate that authority to the chairman of the names body or the secretary, reserving the right to make the final decision on any name which might create public controversy or potential embarrassment to the Government. It is also suggested that unnecessary delay may result from the inclusion in the legislation of a requirement that all name decisions become final only after publication in the Press or a State gazette.

Name decisions must be disseminated in some manner so as to publicize them as widely as possible and promote their country-wide acceptance and use. This may be done to some degree by their appearance in an official State gazette but should also be followed or accompanied by the preparation and publication of a national gazetteer, revised from time to time as the need may arise. This gazetteer should identify each named entity by name, designate the appropriate generic term, and locate it by some system of geographical co-ordinates. It may be convenient to publish current decisions at regular or irregular intervals in the interim between revisions of the national gazetteer.

DISCUSSION OF THE REPORT OF THE GROUP OF EXPERTS

Paper presented by the Federal Republic of Germany[1]

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF STANDARDIZATION
OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Recommendation I of the Group of Experts[2] *is approved.*

We agree with the view set out in paragraph 12 of the second report of the Group of Experts[3] that the standardization of geographical names for international purposes is dependent upon the international acceptance and use of

geographical names as determined by the national names authorities for various countries and language areas. International standardization of geographical names can be achieved only when the individual countries have determined the official spelling of names for their own areas.

We agree that the constitution of national names authorities for the co-ordination, standardization and determination of forms and spelling for geographical names is necessary for domestic standardization.

In the case of federations, difficulties may arise as a result of varying regulations for the determination of geographical names in the various state jurisdictions.

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.11.

[2] See annex, p. 151.

[3] See *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: E.68.1.9.), annex III.

Here, there is need for the co-ordination and standardization of rules and practices relating to geographical names in all states within the country, in cases where they have a common language.

Name standardizing bodies can also co-ordinate the geographical names for common language areas, as does the Standing Committee, on Geographical Names which is composed of experts from Austria, Germany and Switzerland.

The recommendation of the Group of Experts that names authorities publish gazetteers for the standardized names is important both for domestic and international standardization procedures. It is felt that such gazetteers should be published at varying intervals to take account of additions and changes in geographical, community and place names. Notation of character and extent of features would be desirable at all times.

The necessity for liaison between national cartographic agencies and national names authorities in the process of domestic standardization has been duly stressed by the Group of Experts. It is possible thereby to achieve the goal of domestic standardization since officially authorized names would appear on all maps and charts.

Further, we are of the opinion that, in standardizing geographical names, printed forms should be taken from newer editions of maps and cadastral plans, and that the written forms should take preference over spoken and/or local forms.

2. UNIFORM REGULATIONS FOR THE DOMESTIC STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Recommendation II, proposed by the Group of Experts, is approved.

Standardization of geographical names by national names authorities should be effected in accordance with uniform and consistently held principles applying to the language areas concerned. These principles should include spelling rules for specific and generic terms and descriptive designations applying to geographical names.

It is felt that definite general rules for the spelling of variant forms of names in the same language cannot be made. Each name will have to be approved as an individual case, taking into account how often a particular spelling is used in directories and on maps, the local form of the name, and which variant best renders the meaning of the name. This can be done only by research and knowledge of the areal and linguistic factors involved for each name of the language area.

It is felt that definite criteria for the retention of established names as against the substitution of new names cannot be set up as a general principle (problem (*h*)). Changes of well-established, well-known names would lead to confusion, as new name-forms would only slowly be accepted and promulgated. In many cases, substitution of new names will be a matter of necessity, as when two places with identical names are always confused; or when names have a pejorative meaning; or where several communities and towns are merged into a new community. (For example: the towns Barmen and Elberfeld were merged into the city presently named "Wuppertal".)

Further it is recommended, in cases where a new name has been substituted for an established name, that this be shown in official directories for a sufficient period of time to prevent possible errors or confusion. The older name can be given in brackets following the new name.

3. STANDARDIZATION OF WRITTEN FORMS; CONSIDERATION OF GENERAL SPELLING RULES; PROCEDURES FOR HISTORICALLY ESTABLISHED NAME FORMS

Recommendation III of the Group of Experts is approved.

We agree that systematic treatment should not operate to suppress significant characteristic elements of names treated. Historically established forms of geographical names in the various countries should not be changed without due reason and cause.

Complete standardization of written forms, including generic entities, may cause difficulties in cases where historically established and officially authorized names have spellings differing from present-day spelling rules. For example: "*Hafen*" (harbour), or "*Tal*" (valley, in modern spelling, but "Cuxhaven", "Frankent*h*al", where the older, historical forms have been retained.

Official, national changes in spelling rules for various language-areas have not been touched upon by the Group of Experts. It is recommended that, when such changes in official spelling rules have been authorized for the various countries, these should then be nationally and internationally recognized and applied in the rendering of geographical names. For example: in Danish, replacement of "aa" by "å"; in Swedish, replacement of "w" by "v"; in Hungarian, replacement of "cz" by "c".

We agree with the statement that the standardization of written forms for geographical names should not be based upon translation. Established names as used in minority languages and other languages differing from the primary language of the country will consequently be retained in their individual spelling usages. For minority languages or dialects having no written forms, this will involve transcription from the individual phonemic notation for the particular languages. For further discussion, reference is made to point 7 below.

4. USE OF IDENTICAL NAMES FOR VARIOUS GEOGRAPHICAL ENTITIES

Recommendation IV of the Group of Experts is approved.

Complete avoidance of duplication will not be possible, however, in all cases. A plethora of identical names, having the same generic terms, will occur simply as a result of historical development and often in adjacent areas. The names "Neudorf", "Kirchberg", "Rothorn", "Weissbach" ("Newtown", "Churchill", "Redpoint", "Whitestream") are examples of repetitive names which can be found in most areas of Germany. In such cases, suffixes may be added to existing established names to avoid confusion.

Experience shows, however, that there are cases where descriptive designations cannot be added to two similarly named entities, particularly mountains and rivers. For example, there are two important rivers in Germany named "Kinzig"; in this case it is not possible to distinguish between them by adding a further descriptive term.

It is recommended that national names authorities propose suffixes for identical names, to assist in the programme of domestic standardization. In each case the suffix for the individual name should be taken from the names of established geographical entities (mountains, rivers, well-known cities or towns) in the area where the place is located.

5. Consultation of national names authority in the process of legally fixing new names or changing existing names

Recommendation V of the Group of Experts is approved.

It is desirable that the national names authority be consulted when new names are to be assigned, or in case of changes in existing names. This would apply both to the determination of the extent of geographical entities to which names are to be given, and to the standardization of written forms.

6. Information of the general public and consultation with those affected where changes in names are intended

Recommendation VI of the Group of Experts is approved.

It is agreed that informing the general public and consultation with those most affected in the event of changes in names will increase acceptance of intended changes. This will be the case whether the standard use of a name differs from that in local usage, or whether standard names or spellings are chosen from alternatives. On this point, reference is made to section B, 2, of the report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany under agenda item 7, where it is shown that the communities affected are consulted in the event of proposed name changes.

7. Arrangements for countries having several official languages; minority languages; dialects and regional forms

Recommendation VII of the Group of Experts is approved.

A point of particular importance is taking account of geographical names which differ from those used in the principal language of a country.

A problem which is not discussed in detail in recommendation VII is that of countries having more than one official language, or areas where official names are taken from a minority language. In such cases, difficulties arise in the course of the domestic standardization of names which also affect international usage.

Official gazetteers and maps—whether intended for national or for international use—should include the various name forms in official usage. On maps, varying or double names should be entered only for particular language areas.

It is felt that, in the standardization of names, preference should be given rather to standard speech forms than to local or dialectal forms. However, in regions where dialectal forms are in common usage—for generic terms etc.—these should not be changed merely to effect complete domestic standardization. (For example where the standard High German form of "*Bühel*" (hill) has the Bavarian dialectal form of "*Bichl*"; or the standard High German form of "*Bach*" (stream) has the northern Low German form "*Beck*", "*Beke*"). The same applies to local variations, whether occurring regionally or singly, where different spellings are used for the same generic term: in German, "*-born*", "*-bronn*", "*-brunn*" for "*Brunnen*" (well, spring).

8. Determination of extent of natural features, standardization of names for larger natural features

Recommendation VIII of the Group of Experts is approved.

In the Federal Republic of Germany, the process of domestic standardization in the spelling of names of natural features has been aided by the establishment of the limits and extent of natural features. All such references are documented in a general catalogue of geographical names, which can be drawn upon for questions of specific or general relevance.

The measures suggested in the final paragraph of recommendation VIII have been applied in volume I of *Duden—Wörterbuch geographischer Namen* in the interests of domestic and international standardization.

The proposal made by the Group of Experts in their second report, under the heading "International Cooperation" to the effect that physio-geographic entities extending over several countries and language areas should be given a single standard name which would be used by all the countries concerned, would seem impracticable at the present time. Every country uses an official name which refers to the entire entity, and each of these names has a long historical tradition. Thus we have "Alpes" in French, "Alpen" in German, "Alpi" in Italian, "Alpi Pennine" in Italy, "Alpes valaisannes" in Switzerland, "Walliser Alpen" in Germany. The Bulgarian and Serbian form for "Danube" is "Dunav"; the German, "Donau"; the Hungarian, "Duna"; the Slovene, "Dunaj". The Rhine is "Rijn" in Dutch, "Rhin" in French, "Rhein" in German. However, where international publications are printed in a single language, the names of the larger natural features which extend over several countries and language areas, such as the Alps or the Carpathians, should be given in the forms in use in the language chosen.

In the case of oceans or seas bordering on a number of different countries, one of the official languages of the United Nations could be selected for the names to be used at the international level.

9. Specifications relating to administrative divisions as given in national gazetteers

Recommendation IX of the Group of Experts is approved.

In the Federal Republic of Germany, national gazetteers list the parts of collective entities and/or administrative districts in the *Gemeinde—und Ortsnamenverzeichnisse* according to the following system: *Länder*; *Regierungsbezirke*; *Landkreise* and/or *Kreisfreie Städte*; *Gemeinden*; *Wohnplätze*.

10. Optional parts of names

Recommendation X of the Group of Experts is approved.

It is felt that geographical names should be used without optional parts whenever possible, as long as such optional parts are not integral elements of a particular name.

Optional parts of names [problem (*g*)] can be determined in each case only by the official names directories.

It is felt that recommendation X should be expanded to include the rendering of names both in official directories and on official maps for those parts of names which are integral elements, and standardized for domestic and international use.

In regard to optional parts of names, the official directories in the Federal Republic of Germany state the parts of names which must be used. They are those used on the official topographic maps, which include both prefixes and suffixes; for example: "Bad Homburg v.d. Höhe" (with the prefix "Bad" and the suffix "vor der Höhe"); "Rothenburg ob der Tauber" (with the suffix "ob der Tauber"). In both cases, the prefix and/or suffix is an integral part of the name.

79

11. Distinction of generic terms used as a definite part of a name, or as a descriptive part

Recommendation XI of the Group of Experts is approved.

In Germany, geographical names with generic terms occur mostly in connexion with the addition *"Gebirge"* (mountains, mountain-range), as in "Ohmgebirge". In cases where the generic term is not an integral part of the established name—such as "Egge" and/or "Eggegebirge", "Eifel" and/or "Eifelgebirge"—preference is given to the shorter form for authorized usage.

In cases where the nature of a feature is not apparent from the proper name, it is necessary to indicate the type of feature in the official directories or gazetteers.

12. Bedeutungsfeld (area of meaning) of geographical names

We are of the opinion that recommendation XII should be deferred for future consultation and research on the part of linguistic and toponymic experts for the various countries and language areas concerned.

It is felt that the immediate problems of domestic and international standardization of geographical names should have priority over questions dealing with more far-reaching research programmes. These will require consultation among specialists in the various fields within each country and language area to achieve definite results.

In order to provide complete historical information on geographical names for any area, the personnel employed must have a thorough knowledge of linguistics and geography for the area to be investigated. Most of the official agencies for administration, cartography and geography concerned with the various areas have neither competant personnel nor time to concern themselves with more specialized names research.

13. Geographical glossaries

Recommendation XIII of the Group of Experts is approved.

National glossaries will take some time to set up, especially for languages having various grammatical forms involving gender, number and case of generic terms. It would be advantageous to co-ordinate the various national glossaries on a multilanguage level, for international use by cartographers and geographers of various countries.

14. Parallel syntactical or grammatical forms of identical geographical names

Recommendation XIV of the Group of Experts is approved.

Such forms do not occur in German geographical names. Occasional prepositional forms may be given in special cases, for example: "Auf dem Acker" (mountain range of the Harz); "im hohen Rain" (name of a field); "Hinter der Hartmühle" (a populated section of the city of Mainz).

15. Definite and indefinite article as a part of names

Recommendation XV of the Group of Experts is approved.

The national names authority should determine, for the purposes of domestic standardization, the names in which the definite article is an integral element. In Germany, the definite article is used only in rare cases as an integral element of a name for areal-, mountain-, or lake/sea-regions.

We agree that, where languages have both a definite and an indefinite name form, the national names authority should determine which of these forms be used for purposes of domestic standardization.

16. Abbreviations of elements in geographical names

Recommendation XVI of the Group of Experts is approved.

All abbreviations used should be explained by the names authorities of the various countries. It is recommended that all geographical names in official directories and on maps be given in unabbreviated form, both for domestic and international usage, as such abbreviations may be misunderstood.

17. Consistent printing form for similar geographical names

Recommendation XVII, relating to problem (1), is justified.

The German opinion is that, as far as possible, printing should be uniform for similar geographical names; as for example "Gross Heide" (Lüchow-Dannenberg) and "Grossheide" (Norden). As far as possible, standardized spelling rules for all geographical names should be applied in each country. In the Federal Republic of Germany this principle is, however, difficult of application, as each of the *Länder* is responsible for the spelling of names within its jurisdiction. To change all names to agree with standardized spelling rules would be a costly procedure.

In countries like Germany, where names have historically established forms which have been officially used for a long period of time, complete standardization will not presently be possible.

18. Location of geographic features

Recommendation XVIII of the Group of Experts is approved.

19. Information as to gender, number, form, stress and pronunciation of geographical names

Recommendation XIX of the Group of Experts is approved.

It is felt that national names authorities should include information in gazetteers on gender, number, definite and indefinite form, stress and pronunciation of geographical names. This should certainly be the case when such gazetteers are intended for international use.

It is recommended that, for stress and pronunciation, the international phonetic alphabet of the International Phonetic Association be preferred to a national phonetic alphabet. The international phonetic alphabet was recommended for use in the 1962 "Specifications" of the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale.[4]

20. National documentation of geographical names for the countries with Amharic, Arabic and Thai alphabets

Recommendation XX of the Group of Experts is approved.

---

[4] See *United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale*, vol. 2 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 63.1.20).

It is recognized that a prerequisite for national standardization is the documentation of geographical names for countries having Amharic, Arabic and Thai alphabets. International usage can be based only upon the results of domestic standardization. For further comments, reference is made to the paper presented by the Federal Republic of Germany under agenda item 11.

21. ALPHABETIC WRITING FORMS OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FOR COUNTRIES HAVING IDEOGRAPHIC WRITING SYSTEMS

Recommendation XXI of the Group of Experts is approved.

Reference is made to the paper presented by the Federal Republic of Germany under agenda item 11.

THE ROMAN ALPHABET RULE

Paper presented by the United Kingdom*

For the last twenty-five years, the work of the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (PCGN) has been firmly based on what it calls the "Roman alphabet rule", that is, the principle of accepting the official forms of foreign geographical names if they are officially written in or officially transcribed into forms of the Roman alphabet.

The first part of this rule is now generally accepted. Most Roman-alphabet countries adopt without alteration the spellings of names in other Roman-alphabet countries. Although it may not be possible in all circumstances to reproduce unfamiliar diacritics, at least the basic alphabetic shape is preserved unchanged. But the significance of the second part of the rule is much less widely appreciated and it may be useful to expand upon its importance in international standardization. It applies to those countries which, although their national languages are not written in the Roman alphabet, make use of Romanized forms of their names for one or more of the following administrative purposes:

The production of basic topographic mapping (e.g. Ireland, India, Pakistan, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia,

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.57.

Muscat and Oman, Kuwait, Trucial States, South Arabia);

The production of medium-scale mapping kept up to date by periodic revision (e.g. Israel);

As a component in bilingual mapping (e.g. Ceylon, United Arab Republic, Lebanon, Syria, Sudan, Jordan, Thailand, Laos, Cambodia, Libya, Saudi Arabia, Ethiopia, Burma).

The rule does not apply to small-scale Romanized maps produced officially for information, tourist or other non-administrative purposes.

The advantages to standardization offered by these hundreds of thousands of Romanized names throughout large areas of the world would seem self-evident, yet it is not uncommon to find atlases, small-scale maps and gazetteers where names in India are transliterated from Hindi, names in Pakistan transliterated from Urdu and Bengali, names in Israel Romanized by systems different from that used by the Survey of Israel and names in the United Arab Republic Romanized by systems different from that used by the Survey of Egypt etc.

It is true that these administrative Romanization systems do not always accurately reflect the true form of the name in the national language, and it is to be hoped that in such cases the national gazetteer will provide this information.

DISCUSSION OF THE REPORT OF THE GROUP OF EXPERTS

Paper presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics[1]

Recommendation I[2]

The USSR delegation shares the opinion of the experts as to the necessity of organizing national names authorities in every country to work on the standardization of geographical names. These authorities should have definite duties and responsibilities. They should meet regularly and work in accordance with a plan.

National names authorities should promote the activities of government bodies, ministries, departments, publishing houses and other agencies in promulgating standard names in all publications of the country.

National names authorities should elaborate rules for spelling and rendering foreign geographical names and also compile uniform dictionaries of standard geographical names (gazetteers); these are of great importance for both national and international standardization. The dictionaries should give both the rendered and the original forms

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.47.
[2] The reference is to the recommendations contained in the first report of the Group of Experts. See annex, p. 151.

of a name, the type of feature and the administrative division to which it belongs, and include some brief physiographic information on natural features. Out-of-date names should be inserted side by side with the new names which have come into use. It is preferable to publish dictionaries in large editions to allow for their extensive use.

Recommendation II

The standardization of geographical names within the country should be achieved by the national names authorities in accordance with uniform instructions. These instructions, we believe, should include general principles of names standardization and rules for rendering names from different languages (for multilingual countries). They should point out the cartographic, literary and reference sources needed to ascertain the authentic name of any geographical entity and should include information on the dissemination of languages and the rendering of geographical terms, as well as rules for the spelling of compound names.

Recommendation III

Standardization of geographical names in any country is possible only if some definite general rules exist. However, each country has its own conventional names, the spelling of which does not follow the general rules. It is advisable that a number of such names be retained in their conventional form.

Recommendation IV

Steps should be taken to prevent duplication in naming geographical entities of the same kind within any single administrative unit of a country. Repetition of names already in use should be avoided when giving new ones.

Recommendation V

The national names authorities should state their views on suggestions put forward for naming or renaming a feature before the respective legislative or executive authorities take a decision.

Recommendation VI

It is agreed that public opinion should be taken into consideration when establishing a new standard name or choosing one from a number of existing names.

Recommendation VII

Names of geographical entities within a country with a multinational population should be given in the national language of the country concerned. The report of the Soviet delegation under agenda item 7 treats the problem in detail.

The alphabet of a cognate language or the international phonetic alphabet should be used to register names from a language that has no alphabet of its own.

Countries faced with similar problems are advised to co-operate.

Recommendation VIII

The national names authorities should consult specialists (geographers, geologists etc.) and should also make use of information obtained from the local population when determining names for extensive natural features (or parts of such features).

It is desirable that the standard names of natural features be published in catalogues or gazetteers where the names of parts of a feature are cross-referenced to the name of the main feature. Names of extensive natural features, in their turn, should be supplemented by the names of their parts.

As to extensive natural features located on the territories of several countries, we consider that they should have their national name in each country, e.g. "Dunav" in Bulgaria and Yugoslavia, "Donau" in Germany and Austria, "Duna" in Hungary, "Dunaj" in the USSR and Czechoslovakia, "Dunărea" in Romania.

Recommendation IX

Dictionaries of geographical names (gazetteers) should contain the names of small places that have formed a new (larger) populated place. They should also include names of minor administrative units constituting larger ones as well as information on any changes in administrative divisions.

Recommendation X

To promote international and national standardization of geographical names, every country should determine whether different additional words in a name are integral or optional parts. Optional parts should be dropped.

Recommendation XI

Qualified specialists in every country should determine the difference between the geographical term which usually constitutes a part of a name and the geographical term which indicates a geographical feature without being a part of its name.

Recommendation XII

Specialists should bear in mind the physiographic peculiarities of an entity in determining its name. This also concerns the choice of terms indicating the entity.

Recommendation XIII

The compilation of glossaries of geographical terms is of great significance for the standardization of names. Attention should be directed to the determination and study of local geographical terms.

It would be useful to discuss the possibilities of compiling an extensive international glossary of geographical terms by the joint efforts of specialists of different countries. The collection and determination of the meaning of national geographical terms for every country should, in our opinion, precede the compilation of such a glossary. Such work is under way in the Soviet Union and some suggestions are mentioned in the report of the Soviet delegation under agenda item 7.

Recommendation XIV

The existence of parallel syntactical and grammatical structures of names hinders their standardization. Therefore, after a thorough investigation, specialists from different countries should adopt one of them as an official standard name.

Recommendation XV

The existence of two forms for a single name (with and without a definite article, e.g. "Husainiya" and "Al Husainiya") not only hinders national standardization but also creates problems for countries borrowing these names. It would be useful for the specialists in the countries where such phenomena occur, to determine once and for all the names in which the definite article is an integral part. In languages where both forms exist (i.e. with and without a definite article), one of the forms should be adopted.

Recommendation XVI

Specialists should determine standard abbreviations used in a particular country and in its languages and give the meaning of those abbreviations. Gender, number and case inflexions in abbreviations should be explained.

Recommendation XVII

It is necessary for specialists to correct distorted place names in accordance with the norms of the national languages, as well as to eliminate different spellings of names of the same type. The spelling of names in all publications should be correct and stable.

Recommendation XVIII

The location of geographical entities within the boundaries of a country should be given in terms that each country considers most suitable.

Recommendation XIX

Information on the gender, number, stress, tone and pronunciation of geographical names will aid both the national and the international standardization of names.

Recommendation XX

For purposes of national and international standardization, specialists in countries using the Arabic alphabet should represent all the diacritical marks, including vowel points, tashdid, sukūn and hamzah, when spelling names. For Amharic and Thai names, a phonetic transcription should be added.

Recommendation XXI

Specialists in countries using idiographic writing should spell names both in idiographic and in Roman characters (the national Roman alphabet in China) or in national syllabic writing (the *kana* alphabet in Japan).

The Soviet delegation is of the opinion that the Group of Experts has done much useful work. After the group's recommendations have been discussed, the work should be continued and the remarks made by the different countries taken into account. It would also be useful to work out recommendations on such problems as the spelling of compound names, the rendering of geographical terms in names and the interrelation of local and European names in non-European countries. In completing the above recommendations, it would be helpful to group them according to the main problems and to arrange them consistently, e.g.: general principles of national standardization; activities of national authorities on the standardization of names; practice of standardization.

83

AGENDA ITEM 9[1]

National standardization: (a) Field collection of names; (d) Office treatment of names; (c) Decisions relating to multilingual areas; (d) National gazetteers; (e) Administrative structure of national names authorities; (f) Automatic data processing (ADP)[2]

FIELD GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES REPORTS: SUPPLEMENTAL INSTRUCTIONS

Paper presented by the United States of America[3]

Based on the cumulative experience of the many field men who have engaged in the investigation of geographical names over a period of years, the procedure for making geographical names reports outlined here has been found to be effective.

The report should be typewritten, and should contain all the pertinent information about geographical names in the project area, as gleaned from the field investigation. A title page should be included and should contain the project number, general table of contents etc. This page should be signed by the person who compiled the report and the chief of the field party.

The report should be accompanied by maps showing the location and extent of application of each and every geographical name found to be in local usage. A quadrangle or grid layout should be marked on the sheets, and these minor divisions should be identified by separate numbers. If at all practicable, the maps should be bound with the report.

It is preferable that a uniform set covering the entire project area be used for submitting the names. In some places this presents no problem, as there may be earlier topographic quadrangles covering the area. In many cases, however, this kind of earlier map coverage may be entirely lacking or only partial. In this event, the person preparing the report should use what he deems the best map set or combination of maps. In some areas combinations of nautical charts and county highway maps are used, the former for coastal quadrangles and the latter for those inland. Sometimes, certain features have to be drawn on the maps (e.g. on county highway maps) from field photographs so that the location of the features named may be properly shown.

A list of the name sheets bound with the report should be included. Sometimes these sheets are given letter identification (A, B etc.), which is indicated in the list.

The investigator should compare the maps he uses for his investigation and for the report with aerial photographs, if they are available. It is recognized that often such photos are in use by other types of parties at the time of the investigation or preparation of the report. However, the investigator should make some arrangement with those parties for the borrowing of the photographs for the brief time he needs them.

The names on the maps to be submitted in the report should be inked in red or black ink, black for base-map names and red for new or "disputing" names ("disputing" names should be in parentheses near the names in dispute).

The main body of the report should contain sections indicated: "Undisputed base-map names", "Disputed base-map names", "Undisputed new names", and "Disputed new names". "Base-map names" are those taken from some published source, and "new names" are those picked up by the field investigation. The names in each section should be arranged alphabetically, and altogether they should include the entirety of geographical names investigated in the area.

The first list should contain all names taken from other published sources (principally federal maps), which were found to be undisputed in local usage. The local sources verifying it should follow the listing of each and every name.

The second list should include all other published names which were found to be disputed in local use. The published name should be listed first, with the disputing names thereunder, and the verifiers for each should follow each respective name. The investigator should indicate which name he recommends.

The third list should contain all previously unpublished names found in local usage, and captioned "Undisputed new names". Verifications should follow each name.

The fourth and last list should comprise new names which were found in dispute locally, and labelled "Disputed new names". The evidence supporting each name should be shown with the name in the report. This is done by a single code system which will be explained.

Only the names submitted in the report should be shown on the map sheets. As mentioned before, a name shown in black or red will indicate whether it is a base-map name or a new name respectively. Underlining and the presence of "disputing" names in parentheses will indicate whether a name is disputed. The report will show the supporting evidence for each name as it is listed under the respective headings above. The quad or sub-area number should accompany every name in the report, for purposes of identification.

If there are towns with street names in the project area, a map showing major street names should be obtained for each town, if possible. It is well to check the authenticity of these maps with town officials. These maps should

---

[1] A paper presented by the Democratic Republic of the Congo pertaining to this item is reproduced under agenda item 7 above.

[2] Copies of a report, *Automation of Undersea Feature Names*, submitted under this sub-item, are available on request from the Naval Oceanographic Office, Washington, D.C., 20390.

[3] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.53.

be bound in the report also, but street names should not be listed.

Names of local roads and bridges should be shown on the maps and listed along with the other geographical names in the report.

Names of churches, schools and cemeteries, however, should not be treated in the report or on the maps. They are ephemeral by nature and should be named on the field-inspection photographs, and will be accepted in this manner. Accordingly, the party doing the field inspection should be careful to get the correct names for these places so far as possible.

A list of local residents consulted in the field investigation of geographical names should be included in the report. The address, occupation and years of local knowledge with respect to place names should be included with the name of each person consulted. The list should be numbered (in Arabic numbers), and the number assigned each person should appear in the body of the report behind each name he verifies.

The listing of three of the Arabic numbers behind each undisputed base-map or new name in the body of the report is usually considered sufficient. In the case of disputes, more verifications should appear and the verification numbers should appear behind each "disputing" name.

If local published sources (purely local maps, official records of countries etc.) are used, the report should include a list of them, identified by Roman numerals. A single numeral should identify all the preliminary sheets sent from the Washington office, and a single one for all road signs. Like the Arabic numbers, these numerals should appear in the report behind each name they verify.

A list of other symbols used in the report should be included. This would include the use of "R" for the recommended name in cases of conflict, "Y" to indicate "years" following the number of years a name has been in local use, "W" to indicate that a name is widespread in local use, and "N" for narrow, limited usage. "D" is often used to indicate that a name is descriptive, and "F" is used if the name is of family origin. These symbols should be used in the body of the report behind the names to which they apply.

A small sketch showing the limits of the project and the quad layout should be included, and a note at the beginning of the report as to the instructions authorizing the investigation is advisable.

The parts of the report just discussed should appear roughly in the order below:

1. Title page (with table of contents);
2. Sketch or description depicting limits and quad layout of project;
3. List of name sheets and town maps;
4. Key to symbols in report;
5. List of local residents consulted;
6. List of published sources consulted;
7. Undisputed base-map names;
8. Disputed base-map names;
9. Undisputed new names;
10. Disputed new names;
11. Name sheets—maps bound in report if possible.

In the case of very short reports for small areas some of the above may be condensed. It has been found that this type of format is flexible, and can be adjusted to the many different kinds of projects which are likely to be encountered.

CODIFICATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FOR UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT USE

Paper presented by the United States of America*

I

The recent upsurge of automatic data processing has posed new needs and compounded problems already in existence. Inconsistent usage of geographic nomenclature and notations, particularly in the identification and location of specific places and areas, seriously handicap communication among government agencies. For example, examples abound in which place names may have multiple meanings, a single place may have more than one name, and different agencies may employ different names to designate the same place. Indeed, name systems structures tend to vary from agency to agency so that numerous terms may either be meaningless in some agencies, or, worse, lead to mistaken place name identity. In the face of rapid advances in the field of computer technology and the reliance on these methods it becomes more urgent than ever to eliminate these place name inconsistencies. In fact, the transfer of an ever-increasing volume of data at greater speeds requires standardization to avoid bottlenecks where geographic location is concerned.

Faced with these problems, and the need to provide data storage banks, the United States Government has embarked on a major project designed to standardize data

for use in international and external systems data interchange. The principal objective is to develop both uniform geographical names and coded notations to be used in data systems. Failure to develop such standards would undoubtedly necessitate invoking costly conversion procedures essential for data interchange between diverse systems.

II

In April 1965, the United States Government created several task groups through the Bureau of the Budget to deal with various proposals of geographic name standardization. The concern in this paper is primarily with the Country Code Task Group (CCTG) and, secondarily, with the co-ordinating work between the CCTG and the States Codes Task Group (SCTG). The first group has to do with foreign areas, the second with the United States. The two groups were created to "support the development and promulgation of standard data elements and codes in government systems, when such data elements are in common use in some or all executive agencies".

The CCTG is a multi-agency group charged with the responsibility of developing a geographical coding structure and procedural guidelines for the use of that structure in data system planning. In June 1965, the CCTG initiated deliberations on the characteristics of existing data systems for the purpose of identifying, defining and coding areas outside the states of the United States.

The SCTG has been engaged in the development of a standard set of codes for states and political entities within states, and in addition it has been concerned with outlying areas of the United States. The identification of the United States outlying areas was done in collaboration with the CCTG.

In the analysis of the attributes of various data systems now operational, the chief differences encountered were concerned with the following:

Levels of aggregation: ranging from subdivisions of counties and cities through groups of counties aggregated using multiple criteria;

Definitions of foreign areas: inconsistencies occur in the identification of areas, such as the inclusion of South West Africa in the Republic of South Africa; or Réunion (France) and Mauritius (United Kingdom) being grouped together as the Mascarene Islands.

Terminology: multiple names for entities, such as "West Germany" or "Federal Republic of Germany"; "Great Britain", "England", or "United Kingdom"; and "Aden Protectorate", "Aden" and "Protectorate of South Arabia", or "Aden Colony and Protectorate".

Notations: Panama is identified in the following ways: PN, HPN, 225, 525, 717, HPMOOM and PN.

Further complicating the problems mentioned above is the dynamic nature of the pattern of world States and boundaries. Changes in political sovereignty and internal administrative structure have occurred and do occur intermittently; such changes must be monitored continually or any system devised would soon become dated and fall into relative disuse.

To deal with the dynamic nature of the geopolitical sphere, the CCTG determined that not only standard names, definitions and notations were needed, but also mechanisms to effect the necessary changes. In other words, standardization is not simply a one-time adequately defined list of geographic entities with codes to be applied without flexibility to all needs, but a differentiated, dynamic system with built-in maintenance facilities.

The CCTG began with the consideration of the "country" level, henceforth called "basic entity"; it was concerned to define these basic entities and ultimately to relate higher and lower levels of aggregation to them. It was realized that, below the level of basic entities, proliferation could be great and the rate of change might be high, while above the basic entity level there might be many needs for many different combinations of aggregations of basic entities. It was felt that aggregations could in the future be defined and standardized by listing the basic entities of which they were comprised.

The Geographer of the Department of State accepted the responsibility for the development of a list of political entity names to cover the world geographically by sovereignties. Included in addition to the basic entity list was a listing of all the major international water bodies, and those two lists provide complete areal coverage of the world. Further, the Geographer supplied listing for geopolitical bloc aggregations, nomenclature of first-order administrative divisions of the basic political entities, and examples of first-order breakdowns for selected basic entities. Finally, the CCTG formulated suggested notation schemes to be used to identify the basic entities and any breakdowns within them.

This material, when compiled, was distributed throughout the Government for comment. Recommendations for change will be considered before a final decision is reached on the establishment of standardized data elements.

A discussion of the components of the standardization sequences sheds some light on the scope of the project.

III

Each basic entity is identified by the official name (short-form), approved Board on Geographic Names (BGN) spellings, current political status and scope notes to describe non-contiguous subdivisions of an entity.

There are six types of basic entities: independent States; dependent areas; areas of quasi-independence, non-contiguous territories, possessions without population, areas with special sovereignty associations, and areas without sovereignty; political régimes not recognized by the United States; outlying areas of the United States, including islands in dispute; and international water bodies.

IV

A tentative notation scheme was prepared for the basic entities and its use was further extended to geopolitical bloc aggregations and subdivisions of the basic entities. The CCTG proposed a two-character mnemonic code to identify the basic entity. Additional characters are used to identify the geopolitical bloc aggregation into which the basic entity falls; and to identify the internal breakdown of the entity.

Alpha characters are used in the proposed five-column identification field. The data fields are identified as follows:

Column 1, geopolitical bloc aggregation;

Columns 2 and 3, basic entity;

Columns 4 and 5, internal divisions of the basic entity.

V

In addition to coding at the basic entity level, most existing notation schemes include means of aggregating basic entities into groupings. In order to fulfil differing needs, systems base their aggregation schemes on various considerations such as geography, politics, economics, military alliances or special purposes. CCTG decided not to attempt the development of all the aggregative sets which might be required, nor to propose restricting data exchange standards to only one such set of aggregations. However, in view of the need for a standard geographic aggregation of political entities, one such aggregation was compiled.

The Geographer developed a list of areal aggregations to be used in the standard grouping of the major political or basic entities. These were based on criteria of what constitutes a continent which resulted in the establishment of seventeen geopolitical bloc aggregations. Trigraph notations were assigned to the aggregations.

Two guide-lines formulated for the use of aggregations are:

New aggregations should not be established for an acceptable federal standard that already exists;

Aggregations should not split any basic entity: in other words, a basic entity should appear in only one aggregation within any set of aggregations.

These guide-lines would facilitate translation of one aggregation into another for future exchange purposes, since two dissimilar aggregations could always be related

to each other unambiguously by listing the basic entities belonging to each.

VI

The CCTG also considered the need for standard terminology, definitions and notations for geographical and administrative divisions of basic entities. It was noted that most basic entities could be defined unambiguously in terms of their first-order administrative divisions. However, both terminology and definitions are extremely varied from entity to entity. For example, a *canton* is first order in Switzerland, second in Luxembourg, and third in France; the *bezirk* is first order in the Soviet zone of Germany and second in Austria. Additionally, the term "republic" can be part of the formal designation of an entity, as well as a first-order division of an entity. For example, the Republic of Botswana and the fifteen Union Republics of the Soviet Union.

The Geographer has compiled a list of all first-order administrative divisions of the basic entities. Where administrative divisions are absent, other geographical or political divisions have been substituted: for example, island groups or electoral districts.

VII

The dynamic nature of changes in political sovereignty and internal administrative structures makes it imperative that the system be closely monitored by an executive agent. To keep the CCTG codification schemes up to date, it is proposed that a small formal or *ad hoc* committee be established to assist the agent in implementing code changes or in discussing other operational procedures in the code structure. The activities of the agent in collaboration with an appointed committee would be directed to monitoring the development and continued use of the system, including:

Maintenance of an alphabetical file, by entity, noting chronologically when and what changes occur to alter the code notation scheme;

Codifying the internal administrative divisions of entities as user requirements arise;

Distribution of information to the users concerning changes in the basic notation scheme through the use of some type of standard format reporting.

It is hoped that the developed standards will be employed in data systems within eighteen months to two years. Agencies will be urged to convert existing systems as soon as practical. Where data systems are in the formative stage, such users will be encouraged to employ the standards now being developed.

IDENTIFICATION CODE NUMBERS FOR ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS IN THAILAND

Paper presented by Thailand*

Identification code numbers are currently in wide use in Thailand, but there is no common standardization system used throughout all government agencies. To achieve the standardization of a coding system for administrative divisions in Thailand, the Ministry of the Interior has recently established a committee consisting of the representatives from various government agencies dealing with the matter. The work of this committee was started in May 1967, and is now in progress.

The aim of a coding system standardization is primarily directed to the uniformity of numeric codes for automatic data processing of populated place names which have been listed as the country's administrative divisions; these are *changwats* (the highest order administrative level), *amphoes* and *king amphoes, tambons* and *mubans*.

Several factors contribute to the desirability of establishing numerical identification codes:

The multiplicity of names for each *muban*;

The duplicity of names for different *mubans* in the same *tambon*;

The difficulty of processing Thai character information by data processing machines and computers;

To obtain an easy method for relating each *muban* to its higher or administrative levels.

The committee is working out a feasible code system. The major objective is that each administrative level is assigned a unique number which precisely identifies one and only one entity of that level, including its relationship to higher order administrative entities. This identification system will also identify *king amphoes* as distinct from *amphoes*, and it will be applicable to the identification of municipalities.

It is hoped that the establishment of this coding system in Thailand will be expanded to cover ultimately all geographical entities throughout the country.

COLLECTION AND TREATMENT OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN SWEDEN

Paper presented by Sweden*

Geographical names on the 1:10,000 economic map sheets, which are the base maps for the other official maps produced by the Geographical Survey Office, may be divided into three categories according to the methods used for collecting and checking geographical names material during the preparation of the sheets. The three categories are: names of administrative divisions; property register names; other place names and feature names.

Names of administrative divisions. These present no problems since their form and spelling are universally accepted. Publications of the Central Bureau of Statistics are, for example, a frequently used source of information.

Property register names. Decisions concerning the spelling of these names are the responsibility of the National

Land Survey Board. No systematic check of the spelling has, however, taken place; instead, the policy is to check and, where necessary, make connexions to place names as the national coverage of the economic map is extended. The methods used are indicated below.

The Geographical Survey Office compiles lists of property names, parish by parish, from the property registers. At the same time, the spelling of these names as they appear on available map sheets and other documents such as older economic map sheets, topographic map sheets, land office maps, land registers and church records is entered on the lists. The lists are then passed on to the Swedish Place Names Archives for comment. In cases where the suggested spelling differs from that used in the property register, the material is handed over to the National Land Survey Board for a final ruling. The Survey Board, in turn, requests the local authorities concerned, together with private land-owners to comment on the proposed changes. Thereafter the Royal Place Names Commission may comment on the collected material before the National Land Survey Board gives a final ruling. The names are spelt on the economic map sheets in compliance with this ruling.

During the field work which is later carried out by the Geographical Survey Office, place names are checked to a certain degree, largely by means of interviews with local inhabitants, and in a few cases the information obtained may be such that changes in the spelling used in the property register appear to be warranted. In these cases, also, the National Land Survey Board gives a ruling after consultation with the Royal Place Names Commission.

Other place names and feature names. A method has been worked out in conjunction with the Royal Place Names Commission such that all the names which appear on our maps are checked by place names experts. The direct result of this is that map-users can be confident of the correctness of the names which appear on the sheets. The method is described below.

Copies of all documents referring to geographical names in each proposed mapping area are obtained from the Swedish Place Names Archives. These are then used by the field surveyor when he interviews members of the local population. At the same time, the names are entered in their correct positions on the field sheet and, where possible, the areas to which they refer are also defined. In addition, the surveyor goes through all the available name material, checks pronunciation and collects all the additional information that he deems to be of value. To help with these investigations, the surveyor has access to certain map sheets such as old economic map sheets, topographic map sheets, land office maps, forest maps etc. Since the surveyor interviews only those persons whom he happens to meet in the course of normal field work, the investigations can hardly be looked upon as systematic. A more strictly systematic inquiry into local place names is, however, carried out by the leader of the field party who contacts persons who are known to be well familiar with the area being surveyed, big land-owners and employers of companies engaged in the exploitation of local timber resources. In this way an independent check of the material collected by the surveyor is obtained. As a general rule, an attempt is made to obtain the views of at least two independent witnesses when place names are being checked.

The leader of the field party then enters the collected information on a master field sheet. All names are entered in their correct relative positions and a clear indication is given of what the place name refers to and, where possible, to the limits of the area for which the name is used. The type and size of the lettering used is determined from a key governing the different lettering types used on the economic map sheets. At the same time, the sources of information (Swedish Place Names Archives, local pronunciation, various map sheets) are indicated together with the different spellings used by these sources. The material is then handed over to the Swedish-Place Names Archives for expert examination of the spelling of those names which do not appear in the records in the archives, together with others, which, as a result of the information collected in the field, appear to require further study. Thereafter the Geographical Survey Office determines the spelling to be used on the map sheets.

* *
*

The Geographical Survey Office's field staff are not geographical names experts; but they are given a certain amount of tuition with a view to making the field investigations both easier and more reliable. In this connexion, it can be mentioned that instruction is given in field methods of collecting name information. Besides this tuition, experts from the Swedish Place Names Archives give lectures before the beginning of each field season on the place names in areas where field work is to be carried out.

PROBLEMS OF STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN A MULTINATIONAL STATE

Paper presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The standardization of geographical names in the USSR has distinctive features and is carried out on the basis of the principles of Soviet national policy. The Soviet Union is a multinational socialist State comprising 130 peoples, numerically large and small, each of which preserves and develops its national culture. The majority of these peoples have and develop their own languages.

National equality of rights is a law of life of the Soviet State. The peoples of all nationalities of the Soviet Union enjoy the right and have the opportunity to study in their

native languages, as well as to create and develop various organizations of administrative and economic control functioning on the basis of their native languages.

The right to education in the native language is set out in article 121 of the USSR Constitution (fundamental law). In the Soviet Union, all conditions have been established for the further development and mutual enrichment of national cultures and languages. More than fifty nationalities acquired a written language only after the October revolution. At present, books, magazines, newspapers, geographical maps and atlases are issued in more than sixty national languages in the USSR. The Russian language holds a special place among them; it serves as the main means of international communi-

cation and gives each of the Soviet peoples a possiblity to take advantage of the achievements of the science and culture of all the others. Furthermore, the importance of the Russian language lies in the fact that its alphabet has become the foundation for written languages of many other nations of the USSR. The peoples of the Armenian and Georgian Republics use their national scripts, and the Latin alphabet has long been used in the Latvian, Lithuanian and Estonian Republics.

Standardization under such conditions cannot be confined to the establishment of a stable and uniform spelling of geographical names in one of the national languages, for example, Russian. It involves the identification and establishment of the national form of each name, which must then be rendered in the official languages of all the other nationalities. This is carried out in three stages: standardization of names in the language of each nation of the Soviet Union; standardization of methods of rendering national spelling into Russian; standardization of methods of rendering, from Russian, names foreign to each particular language, for example, rendering Kabardinian names into the Chukot language, Armenian names into the Estonian language, Lithuanian names into the Uzbeck language etc.

Thus domestic standardization of geographical names in the Soviet multi-national State is carried out on the principles and in the order accepted in international standardization; it is therefore of definite interest to the present Conference.

Many State, scientific, cultural and social agencies are directly interested in the standardization of USSR geographical names. It is of special concern to administrative control, communication, transport, educational and publishing agencies and particularly to the State cartographic and geodesic service.

The Central Administration of Geodesy and Cartography is responsible, under the USSR Council of Ministers, among other things for co-ordinating the naming and renaming of geographical features.

The standardization of geographical names in the USSR as far as the relation of these to maps and other official documents is concerned is carried out on the basis of a "general instruction" (1958) and "regulations" (1961) which define the basic principles governing the spelling of geographical names and their transposition into Russian from the languages of the Union and Autonomous Republics.

Detailed regulations governing the rendering into Russian of geographical names from various languages of the Soviet Union are laid down in special instructions, such as the "instruction for rendering geographical names of the Azerbaijan SSR" (1956). Fifty-eight such instructions have been elaborated thus far. They are drawn up in close collaboration with administrative and scientific agencies of the individual Republics and, as a rule, are adopted in those Republics.

The toponymic investigations which have recently been developing on a large scale do much to promote the establishment of basic principles and regulations for rendering geographical names. The results of such investigations, such as the *Principles of toponomy* (1964) or the *Dictionary of local topographic terms* by E. and V. Murzaev (1959), are used to develop methods of field recording of names and to draw up recommendations on the naming of points in sparsely populated areas and the establishment and selection of traditional names.

Voluminous work is proceeding on the identification, collection and systematization of proper names of populated areas, railway stations, landing-stages, seas, lakes, islands, rivers and other water sources, mountain ridges and separate crests, passes, depressions and other local features. The main sources for the identification and establishment of names of populated areas which have been thoroughly studied from a topographic point of view and which are economically developed are reference books on administrative and territorial divisions as well as decrees issued by the presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR and those of the presidiums of the Union Republics, others are official reference books published by the ministries of transport, water transport and civil aviation, as well as topographic maps and sea charts, geographical dictionaries etc. Geographical names recorded in official reference books are adopted as mandatory. As far as other names are concerned, toponymic research is carried out.

The role of such research is especially important in connexion with the detailed study and development of previously little known territories. Usually such research is conducted in the course of a topographic survey. At the present time, a majority of economically developed countries have completed or are completing the topographic mapping of their territories and acquiring the most complete indexes of national geographical names. However, in most developing countries the problem of the initial mapping of their territories is awaiting solution. For those countries it is very important to establish the proper system for the identification of local geographical names from the outset of the topographic survey, a system reflecting the national features of the population settled in this or that area of a given country. Otherwise names may appear on the maps and be adopted in official use which are unknown and foreign to the local population. It will be difficult to get rid of such names later. Many geographical names of the African continent have proved this fact.

For some developing nations, especially those with multinational populations, our experience in collecting and establishing names on this basis while performing topographic surveys can be of definite interest.

Modern methods of mapping by means of aerial photography exclude the need for observations and measurements on the terrain. At the same time, the need for visiting and making a complete examination of the mapped territory is obviated. This may adversely affect the quality of a map, mainly because the names of geographical features are not adequately established. In such cases attempts to remedy the situation by assigning new names, chosen at random, will result in nothing but harm.

In the practice of topographic surveys and collection of geographical names, Soviet experts are usually guided by the basic rules set out below.

(a) National names of geographical points located on the territory of a certain Republic, region or national district, and which are not listed in official sources, are indicated on maps in the modern spelling of the language of the prevailing nationality.

(b) If in a national Republic or region of the Soviet Union there is a territory with a population speaking a language which is one of those officially accepted in the Soviet Union, then the geographical names of the territory are given according to the rules established for that language. For instance, in regions of the Turkmenian

Republic populated by Kirghiz, Tadjik or Uzbek peoples, the geographical names are set up in accordance with the rules of translation from those languages.

(c) Geographical names are collected by specially appointed persons. The names are collected not for each map sheet separately but for a particular geographical region having natural or administrative boundaries.

(d) The names are collected in the local administrative organs, collective farms and separate inhabited localities with the help of individuals from the local population who are well acquainted with their region or terrain. The location of the geographical points named is determined through examination (with the help of such persons) of aerial photographs or photographic diagrams of the given section.

(e) In sparsely inhabited regions, features which are not named by the local population may be given names in the process of field topographic work. These names must express the characteristics of the feature—size, shape, colour etc. Random names having no relation to the object are not recommended.

(f) The names collected on the terrain are grouped in a certain order in the special register for each sheet of a map.

Variant of a register

Series No.
Type of features
Form of name on previously issued map
Form of name according to local population
Form of name according to other data
Language
Writing in national graphics
Meaning of the name
Determined form of the name
Notes

The operations involved in the initial determination of names are usually carried out in the following order:

Determination of the official form of names, fixed legally or issued by government organs;

Determination of names found in previously issued maps, reports of various expeditions etc.;

Checking of names in the field and clarification of their Russian equivalents;

Collection of new names used by the local population and their Russian equivalents;

Assignment of names to features hitherto unnamed;

Checking and approval of the list of all names in local administrative organs.

It will be noted that, in industrially developed countries entirely covered by topographic maps of large or medium scales, the execution of all these processes is unlikely to take place. Usually in such cases the topographic work will be mainly one of map revision.

Properly trained research personnel are essential for the highly skilled task of the initial recording of names. The investigator must know something of the toponymic system of the territory surveyed: which languages contributed to the formation of the modern geographical nomenclature and in what order, and the part played by the languages of the modern population in this process. He has to have some knowledge of the language (or languages) of the present population, with its sound structure, grammatical composition, orthography and local geographical terminology and vocabulary. He must also be something of a psychologist: he must know how to choose his informants, to gain their confidence and to obtain all the necessary information from them. It is essential, of course, to check the information obtained from one individual against the information obtained from another. The technique of recording is also of great value. So far, a field register and a pencil have been the most widely used equipment for setting down information. It is now high time to use portable sound recording equipment. In this way, after the field work has been completed, highly skilled experts in different languages will be able to listen to the recorded geographical nomenclature and help to determine the spelling and translation of names.

There is no doubt that the method we have described of determining names in the course of topographic surveys may be improved on the basis of the experience of other countries. This is the aim of international co-operation.

STANDARDIZATION IN MULTILINGUAL AREAS

Paper presented by the United Kingdom[1]

A. The areas involved will include:

(1) Countries where two or more languages have equal official status (e.g. Canada, Belgium, Finland, Ireland, Switzerland, Yugoslavia[2]);

(2) Federations in which constituent states have their own languages (e.g. India, Pakistan, USSR);

(3) Countries where minor languages are spoken that have little or no local use officially.

As far as A (1) is concerned, the problem is comparatively simple: standardized names follow the language of

origin, e.g. names in Dutch-speaking areas of Belguim are written in Dutch and those in French-speaking areas in French. It will normally be the case that the names of the more important cities and features in such a country will exist in both languages, e.g. Basel/Bâle/Basilea, Helsinki/Helsingfors, Saint Lawrence/Saint Laurent.

The situation in A (2) presents rather more problems. It will usually be the case that the basic mapping of the territory is done in terms of a single official or administrative language and it will be convenient if standardization of names follows the same practice. Each constituent state will also probably produce maps and/or gazetteers with names given in the local language, e.g. Ukrainian in the Ukrainian SSR, Bengali in East Pakistan.

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.55.

[2] In Yugoslavia there are also two scripts having equal status.

It is desirable that such local names be given as part of the supplementary information in a national gazetteer.

Nearly every State will have at least one minor language spoken within its borders, e.g. Canada (Eskimo), Iran (Kurdish), Japan (Ainu), Morocco (Berber), Netherlands (Frisian), Norway (Lappish), United Kingdom (Welsh). Many countries in Asia and Africa will number such languages by the score, or even, in the case of India, by the hundred.

B. All the areas mentioned under A (2) and A (3) above will therefore face, to a greater or lesser extent, the question of standardizing names from minor languages. The problems involved, which may often be extremely complex and difficult of solution, may be categorized broadly as shown below.

(1) The minor language is written:

(a) In the same script as the principal language, or

(b) In the same script as the principal language but modified in respect of diacritics and/or additional letters, or

(c) In a different script.

(2) The minor language is unwritten.

There is also a third problem, which though it does not affect national standardization within a country, may be of importance from the point of view of international standardization:

(3) The minor language is spoken in two or more neighbouring countries:

(a) And written in the same system of orthography;

(b) In different systems of orthography;

(c) Is unwritten.

Where the minor language is a written one with a stable orthography the collection of names may present no particular problem. But the question of how best to deal with such names in national mapping or in a national gazetteer will generally be one of considerable difficulty. Paradoxically, there is greater difficulty when the minor language is written in the same script as the principal language (1(a) and 1(b)) than when it is not 1(c). For although acceptance of minor language names without change is ideal, first from the linguistic point of view, in that it preserves the original name undisguised, and secondly from the standardization point of view, in that it keeps the number of variant spellings of the same name to a minimum, such names may be unpronounceable or incomprehensible to those unfamiliar with the minor language concerned. For example, names in the Welsh and Gaelic-speaking areas of the United Kingdom are spelled in accordance with Welsh and Gaelic orthography on Ordnance Survey maps, although the latter language in particular presents extreme difficulties of pronunciation for the ordinary English speaker; by contrast, names in Catalonia spelled in accordance with Catalan orthography

on Spanish maps do not present quite the same degree of difficulty to Spanish speakers. In practice such a policy is applied only to lesser places and features, since the more important will already have established conventional names in the principal language.

The alternative solution to problems 1 (a) and 1 (b) is to rewrite the minor language name in terms of the orthography and phonetics of the principal language; this generally, although by no means necessarily, involves translating generic terms and other commonly occurring elements (e.g. old/new, upper/lower) from the minor language into the principal language, e.g. as in the Republics of the Soviet Union. This solution has the merit of making minor language names both pronounceable and comprehensible to the users of the principal language. But one particular disadvantage is that "transcription" of one language in terms of another using the same script seems more prone to arbitrary phonetic improvement and less easily susceptible to fixed rules than is transliteration from one script to another. There is often considerable difficulty in finding adequate single-word translations of generic terms from the minor language.

Whichever of these two solutions is adopted, it is essential that the national gazetteer contain, in the first case, details of pronunciation and an explanatory glossary of generic terms and meaningful elements (such as those produced by the Ordnance Survey for Welsh and Gaelic); and in the second, details of the full form of the name in the minor language.

Where the minor language is written in a script different from that of the principal language—case 1 (c) above—a transcription system from one to the other must be devised. The particular linguistic problems to be faced here are dealt with in another paper. From the point of view of standardization, it matters less whether the system adopted is one of strict transliteration or simple transcription than that full details of it should be given in the national gazetteer.

In the case of languages which are unwritten—(2) above—it will always be more satisfactory to collect names in a phonetic notation for analysis and subsequent consistent expression in terms of the principal language, than to record them directly in the orthography of the principal language. (For a useful illustration of what is involved in the treatment of numerous minor languages in a national gazetteer, see the appendix to *Diccionario Geográfico de Guatemala*.)

In the case of B (3), it would be desirable as far as possible where the same minor language is spoken in two or more neighbouring countries that names should be treated in the same way, but differences in culture, dialect or orthography may often be such as to render this unpracticable (e.g. Lappish names in Norway, Sweden and Finland).

EXPERIENCE IN THE TREATMENT OF NAMES IN MULTILINGUAL OR LINGUISTIC MINORITY AREAS

Paper presented by Switzerland[1]

Since Switzerland has three official languages, French, German and Italian, plus a fourth recognized principal language, Romansch, it has had a great many problems to contend with. Some of the solutions found for these

problems, and some of the experience acquired, are described below.

The territorial principle is generally recognized. Hence it is mainly a matter of settling the problems that arise along the language boundaries and in the zones of transition between two principal-language areas. If we consider the situation at the level of the smallest administrative

divisions, the communes, we find the language areas very sharply differentiated, particularly in the countryside, whereas mixing has often gone further in the towns and industrial areas.

Although the cantons are free to solve these problems as they see fit, it is found that two principles are generally applied. First, the choice of language for a place name rests entirely with the commune. Secondly, the language adopted for the name of a commune in a transitional zone is the mother tongue of the majority of the population, as recorded in the latest federal census; nevertheless, if there is a sizable linguistic minority in a commune, it is accorded special rights, which may take any of the following forms:

Under a federal decree of 31 May 1963, a minority of more than 30 per cent may request that the name of the commune should be displayed in both languages on the road signs at the entrance to the commune: for example Fribourg/Freiburg; however, such an arrangement does not necessarily correspond to official practice in naming the commune;

Quite a number of communes have chosen to retain both forms for historical reasons (e.g. "Breil"/"Brigels" and "Biel"/"Bienne"), for touristic reasons (e.g. "Schuls"/"Scuol" and "Segl"/"Sils"), or for other reasons;

The two-name system is also applied, for example, to mountains which are known by different names on different sides (e.g. "Piz Sardona"/"Surenenstock" and "Sex des Molettes"/"Wetzsteinhorn"); such compromise arrangements doubtless cause some minor inconvenience in practice, but they keep the linguistic peace;

As to names of places within a commune, names that are known only in one or other of the two languages are often kept in their original form; for example, the Italian dialect name for a *mayen* situated in the territory of an exclusively Romansch-speaking commune has been preserved because the *mayen* is inhabited for only part of the year and only by people from an Italian-speaking commune. Every effort is made, in close consultation with local users, to find a form acceptable to all.

Generally speaking, minority groups in the transitional zone enjoy more favourable treatment than similar groups speaking the principal language, i.e. German. After years of naming places on a commune-by-commune basis, it may be said that the boundaries between language areas have remained very stable.

Annex
BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE ON GLOSSARIES PUBLISHED[2]
GLOSSARIES

Schweizer Idiotikon: Wörterbuch der schweizerdeutschen Sprache, edited by Staub, Tobler, Gröger, Saladin *et al.* [A dictionary of Swiss German dialects.] Volumes A to T already published.

Glossaire des patois de la Suisse romande. [A dictionary of Swiss French dialects]. Editor: Ernest Schulé, Crans-sur-Sierre. Volumes 1—IV, A—C already published.

Vocabolario dei dialetti della Svizzera italiana. [A dictionary of Italian Swiss dialects]. Volume 1, A—.

Dicziunari rumantsch grischun. [A dictionary of Grisons Rumansch] Volumes 1—IV, A—C, already published (Rhaeto-Romanic dialects).

Paul Zinsli, *Grund und Grat,* part A, *Wörterverzeichnis,* Bern, Francke, 1945, pp. 310—341 [short glossary of German generic terms used in mountain areas].

Swiss name lists

Amtliches Gemeindeverzeichnis der Schweiz; Liste officielle des noms des communes de la Suisse [Official list of Swiss communes], Bern Eidg. Statistisches Amt, 1954. (New edition to be published soon.)

Rhätisches Namenbuch [Rhaetian name-list] vol. 1, *Materialien* [Materials], edited by Robert von Planta and Andrea Schorta, Librairie E. Droz, Paris VI; Max Niehans Verlag, Zurich—Leipzig, 1939.

---

[2] The original text of this note, submitted in French, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.78.

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION

Paper presented by France*

Among the problems of place names that must be dealt with by the National Geographic Institute (IGN) in the publication of maps, the first one to be considered will be that affecting the commune names which, as a rule, have an official written form that has been adopted for use in the documents published by the Ministry of the Interior.

These documents consist of the population census results and are published after each census in the form of large volumes comprising a list of all the communes and the number of their inhabitants. The IGN has adopted as its basic document the population census of 1946, which, since that year, has been kept carefully up to date.

An accurate check of the 1962 census results with those of 1946 (as brought up to date), which was carried out by the Michelin mapping service and IGN, working in close co-operation, brought to light a fairly large number of discrepancies: approximately 700 for the 37,962 communes which now exist. The information resulting from this check has just been submitted to the Ministry of the Interior,

and it is expected that after these discrepancies have been reconciled it will be possible to revise the latest census results, which will then serve as the basis for future work.

That does not mean, however, that there will not be any more problems with the names of communes. For example, the census results refer to "Rochefort" whereas the official local usage as well as the name used by the P.T.T. is "Rochefort-sur-Mer". There are, incidentally, twelve communes in France with the name of "Rochefort", and ten of these have been given a second element which makes it possible for them to be differentiated.

To cite another example, there is a commune in Gers which is designated as "Saint-Loube-Amades" by the municipal authorities on the basis of a Royal Ordinance of 1823, but this does not prevent the Ministry of the Interior from calling it simply "Loube". Also in Gers, we were informed by the Prefect that the spelling "Mongauzy" should be used for the name of a commune which has been recorded as "Mongausy" in the last three censuses. There are dozens of similar cases which could be cited.

The second problem concerning place names is somewhat different because here, apart from exceptional cases,

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.62.

there is no official spelling. The IGN thus bears the sole responsibility for conducting the research which must be carried out before these names are entered on the map.

The conditions which must be met by a place name which is to appear on a map are as follows:

1. It must be currently used by the inhabitants of the area—a condition which is not easy to fulfil as is apparent from the many cases in which names in the land register are unfamiliar to the local inhabitants, who use other names to designate the same places;

2. It must so far as possible be written in the proper form;

3. It must be written in such a way that a stranger to the area can make himself properly understood by the local inhabitants both in speech and in writing.

The difficulties begin with the last two conditions and are often such that no satisfactory solution can readily be found. A thorough field survey is absolutely necessary in order to determine the written forms in use in older and current documents and the form or forms used in speech. It may, in fact, be discovered that the form used in speech—on condition that informants native to the area are found—is an extremely stable toponymic element, whereas the same cannot be said of the written form, which is apt to vary according to the particular notary, land-register clerk and so on.

In the great majority of cases, the place names do not have a single written form. In quickly leafing through the sheets of old land registers (1810-1840), one can easily find such variant spellings of the same name as the following:

"Laserre", "La Serre"—"Laborde", "La Borde": same letters but different division;

"La Récégaire", "La Rességaire", "Larrességaire": basically identical pronunciation but variant spellings;

"Hount frède", "Hont frède": variant spellings causing the pronunciation to differ considerably from one name to the other.

What is the solution to the problem of selecting from among these forms, all in use at the same time, those which are the most satisfactory? Such a selection can only be made with at least some knowledge of the local dialects. If, for example, one knows that a "*serre*" has in some regions the meaning of an elongated hill, that "*rességayre*" means a pit-sawyer or that "*hont*", in the Gascon dialect, means fountain—as also does "*hount*", a form which has undergone an initial adaptation to French—then it will be possible to select which form of the place name should be used on the map.

It is thus necessary to have available all the glossaries and local linguistic studies which it is possible to find.

Since 1950, the Place Names Commission of IGN has been making up a file of local terms actually found or likely to be found in place names. By 1961, this file contained about 25,000 terms and was taken as the basis for compiling a handy glossary for the use of topographers. This operation was completed in 1963. The glossary contains about 19,000 different terms and includes several maps which, in addition to other information, show the boundaries of the former provinces and those of the main dialects or patois.

There are many dialects and patois which are still very much alive in France. It is none the less true that the concentration of population in urban areas, radio and especially television, and the schools are causing classical

French to gain more and more ground, although it may be noted in passing that the regional services of the French Office of Radio Broadcasting and Television (ORTF) sometimes devote a few minutes of their programme time to productions in the regional dialect. Because place names follow this trend only with considerable delay, it is possible to find, in the more conservative regions, names which follow the French system of spelling, those which have been more or less adapted to French and others again which are completely dialectal, all of this being closely dependent on how widely known the names are.

The dialects, just as French itself, have a long tradition of the written form behind them, which does not always concord with that of the national language. For example, the French form "-ill" corresponds in the Gascon dialect to "-lh", in Corsican to "gli" and in Catalan to "-ll". The letter combination "ch" is most often represented in French by the sound "š", but in Corsican it is pronounced "k", and in Brittany—if an apostrophe is inserted between the "c" and the "h"—it must be pronounced "X". Other examples:

In Béarn	Labaig, Labat	is pronounced	"labatš"
	Coig	,, ,,	"kòtš"
	Casteig	,, ,,	"kastètš"
	Napaïtx	,, ,,	"napatš"
In Cerdagne	Puig	,, ,,	"putš"

These words cannot be written as they are pronounced because tradition weighs too heavily against doing so; on the other hand, the ordinary reader has no idea of how they should be pronounced. He must know, for example, that in Flemish, the "ae" of "*straet*" stands for "ā" and the "oe" of "*broeck*" or of "*koek*" stands for "u", and that in Basque, "z" is pronounced "s".

To enlighten the reader a phonetic key could be inserted in the margin of the maps, but as the names reproduced above are somewhat rare, the reader might be misled into applying the key to other terms. Thus, the Basques indicate certain types of aspiration after the letters "l" and "p" by inserting the letter "h" after them, with the almost certain result that "ph" will be pronounced "f" and that, for the reader familiar with the "lh" of the Gascon dialect—a linguistic area adjacent to but very different from Basque—the "lh" will be pronounced like "-ill".

In both of the above cases, it is difficult to prevent the spelling from affecting the pronunciation and thus leading to the phonetic distortion of the names, something which the specialists bitterly regret.

An excellent solution would seem to be the inclusion of a list of the names appearing on the map, since the correct pronunciation of the more difficult place names could be given in this list by means of an appropriate phonetic notation.

Regardless of the solution adopted for aiding the map user, a basic requirement in the preliminary research on place names is to determine the exact pronunciation that is used locally. In the final analysis, this is the only means of making a choice between several written forms of the name that are in current use in an area. This pronunciation must be fully and uniformly recorded with the aid of a phonetic notation affording the highest possible degree of precision.

National standardization must for practical purposes be carried out at the regional level or, more precisely, by linguistic (or dialectal) area. This is a fact that cannot be lightly disregarded.

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION AND GAZETTEERS

Paper presented by France*

The cartographers of today are increasingly concerned to provide not only as precise a geometrical description of the land as possible but also the correct names of localities, both inhabited and uninhabited. The reason for this is that with the increasing speed of communications and the transmission of information and with the growing frequency and scope of travel, more and more people are becoming acquainted with more and more places, which must therefore be unambiguously identified.

This concern is not peculiar to the last few decades. As early as the eighteenth century, Cassini had indicated the course to be followed in this regard in France by having lists of names, generally by parishes, drawn up for each sheet of his map and then having these lists checked by officials or eminent persons of the locality. A comparison of the place names in the lists with those on the map quite frequently reveals discrepancies which were not always the fault of the map engravers. Often, the name on the original draft of the map is given in a more dialectal form— for example, in a dialect of the south of France—than the form appearing in the list by parishes, the name on the map having likely been obtained in the field, whereas the name on the list was supplied by the lord or the parish priest, whose language of conversation was French.

In the preparation of the map on the scale 1:80,000, called the ordnance survey map, the same precautions were taken. As regards place names, however, the sources drawn upon for this map were the local property maps, and most of the place names were then copied on to the indexes of each commune's atlas.

In the preparation of the new map of France of 1922, the criticisms made of the previous map were taken into account, and an effort was made to improve the quality of place names through the use of more refined methods of research by which, in most cases, it is possible to authenticate a place name before its approval for use on the map.

It is not the purpose of this paper to deal any further with the research procedures that are used. Attention will be given rather to another problem, namely, that of providing the map user with a document enabling him, as he travels about the area included within the limits of the map sheet which he holds in his hand, to determine easily and quickly the name of any particular hamlet, stream, peak or other feature. The map user may also, however, be confronted with the reverse problem of trying to find on the map some locality or feature about which he has no more precise information than the name. The ease or difficulty he will experience in tracking down the locality or feature will depend, in the absence of any precise information about its geographic co-ordinates, on how large it is and how well it is known.

Different kinds of partial solutions have been found for this problem. The gazetteer or index part of an atlas enables the map user to find items and names on the maps without difficulty by means of a reference to the number of the map concerned and to a letter and numeral combination giving the position of the feature in relation to the geographic meridans and parallels. This is one of the most common methods. Somewhat apart from the purely cartographic domain are the gazetteers of the communes

of France that are published by private or government bodies. The information provided by the better among these gazetteers includes a brief description of the location (direction and distance) of a place in relation to an important town, which is presumed to be better known than the one whose location is being sought.

The usefulness, however, of gazetteers more complete than the type of documents referred to above has long been recognized. As early as 1859, a ministerial circular of the imperial government set out the guidelines to be followed by the editors of the topographic gazetteers of the departments in the cases where such gazetteers were decided upon. These gazetteers (one per department) give an alphabetical listing of all the inhabited places in a department, sometimes including named places or geographical features which are more outstanding than others. The location of the named places is briefly indicated, only the name of the commune in which they are situated being given. These names, however, are very valuable for the research worker, linguist or historian because the compilers of the gazetteers have carefully recorded all the various names given to the places in question in past centuries as far back in time as it was possible to go. There are at the present time thirty-four of these gazetteers, to which may be added three more which were compiled along the same lines but are not part of the official series.

In more recent times, the National Institute of Statistics and Economic Research (INSEE), whose research activities extend to all areas of the country's life, has also given attention to this problem. It has, since 1951, been publishing a series of departmental gazetteers entitled –Nomenclature des hameaux, écarts et lieux-dits– (Gazetteer of hamlets, remote areas and named places). These gazetteers include only the names of inhabited places and thus exclude the names of rivers, mountains and ordinary named places. They are generally divided into two parts: an alphabetical list of all the inhabited places with a reference to the commune or higher administrative unit to which each one belongs, and a list giving for each commune the names of the inhabited places coming under its jurisdiction.

Although these gazetteers are more or less uniform in style, they do not always give the exact location of the places named. The information provided is of the type: direction in relation to and distance from the chief town.

At the National Geographic Institute of France (IGN), improvements in the typesetting procedures for map names have opened the way to a new solution to the problem of lists of place names.

Formerly, as each map sheet was made up, lists of names were compiled manually from the surveyor's lists of names consisting of notebooks in which the surveyors, after an investigation in the field, had recorded the place names to be included in the map. As the names on a map are printed in different kinds of lettering, the printer has to be supplied with different lists for the different fonts of type in order that the typesetting—which is now done mechanically with a Fotosetter machine—might be facilitated. The succession of manually prepared copies needed for the lists of names for maps on the scales 1:20,000, 1:50,000 or smaller scales was inevitably a source of errors. The use of punch-card machines for these operations is conducive to greater efficiency, speed and precision. The basic documents continue to be the

94

surveyor's list of names and the names tracing on which the field surveyor has entered the place names at the exact spot where they are to appear on the map. With the aid of these documents, a punch card is prepared for each place name by a special section of IGN. The card contains the following information:

A reference to the sheet on the scale 1:50,000 and to the double sheet on the scale 1:20,000;

The administrative location of the named item: department, arrondissement, canton, commune;

The geographic location in Lambert kilometric co-ordinates (six figures);

The name itself, including accent marks, if any;

A summary definition of the named object by means of a "detail code" (two figures);

The kind of lettering to be used;

A precise indication whether or not the name is to be retained in the derived map on the scale 1:50,000;

In the case of communes, the population to the nearest hundred.

In this way, a permanent file is built up which, through proper sorting, can be used for the preparation of a wide variety of lists: by kind of lettering, by names of rivers and so on. The sorting is done very rapidly by machine. After a batch of punch cards has been sorted, it is put in a tabulating machine, which prints the information from the cards at the rate of about two lines a second.

Alphabetical sorting is of particular interest to us because it is basic to the compilation of a gazetteer. It does, however, present certain problems, principal among which is the need to rearrange the elements of a place name. The names on the cards cannot be filed in the order in which they are normally written, specifically because the articles and certain terms (common nouns) are customarily placed after the proper noun in lists of names. For example, a punch card will bear the name "Agarus (Serre des)" instead of "Serre des Agarus" and will thus be filed under "A". Precise rules must therefore be laid down both for the guidance of the card-punching section and so as to ensure uniformity in the arrangement of the place names.

The second problem is that of alphabetical sorting by machine. Since machine sorting for all letter positions is a long and therefore costly process, the sorting has been limited to the first six letter positions. It might therefore happen, for example, that "Aigue vieille" would come before "Aigue blanque", since the blank space between the two words, which falls in each case in the sixth letter position, would be treated by the machine as a letter preceding "A". In these circumstances, the simplest solution is to make a preliminary sort and then a preliminary tabulation based on this in order to locate the errors and make the necessary adjustments. These adjustments, consisting of putting the cards which are out of place in their proper alphabetical order, can be carried out manually in a fairly short time. After that, the final tabulation is made.

The advantages of the final tabulation are that it provides the following: alphabetical arrangement, reference to the sheet and the double sheet where the name appears, general designation of the named item, Lambert co-ordinates and administrative location.

There are also some disadvantages.

In the first place, as the names are printed in capital letters without any accent or punctuation marks, the lists have to be revised manually in order that this information can be added with the aid of a special code to the right of the name.

In the second place, all the other information is coded, and while this does not present any difficulties for the sheet number and the co-ordinates, the need in all other cases to refer to a key is irksome to a reader who is pressed for time. Thus the following series of coded data is interpreted in the manner indicated:

87 = hill, hillock

30 = department of Gard

1 = Alès arrondissement

38 = Vézénobres canton

188 = Ners commune

The last four figures are those that appear in the "Geographical code" of INSEE.

Such lists serve a useful purpose because they provide information on names which previously could be found only in the land registers. In the IGN maps on the scale 1:25,000 approximately three names are shown per square kilometre, which is the density compatible with the scale.

From a toponymic point of view, however, these lists are still very inadequate. They ought also to provide the variant forms of the name which may have been discovered in the course of the field investigation and which obviously cannot be included in the map, and the pronunciation, given in brackets, in phonetic symbols (phonetic alphabet derived from that used in the Gilliéron and Edmont linguistic atlas of France). At the head of the gazetteer, there should be a short glossary giving the dialectal meaning of certain of the words used in the place names of the relevant sheet. Pronunciation and glossary, which are required by toponymists, are more appropriately included in the gazetteer than on the map, where it is difficult to insert them. Although financial difficulties are at present standing in the way of these improvements, the preparatory studies are being continued.

NATIONAL GAZETTEERS

Paper presented by New Zealand*

I

The New Zealand Geographic Board, constituted under the New Zealand Geographic Board Act 1946, is the authority responsible for geographical names within New Zealand. The Minister of Lands is responsible for the Act.

In 1956 the Government appointed the New Zealand Geographic Board as the New Zealand Antarctic Place Names Authority.

The address of the New Zealand Geographic Board is as follows: Secretary, New Zealand Geographic Board, c/o Department of Lands and Survey, P.O. Box 8003, Wellington, New Zealand.

The membership of the board is as follows:

The Surveyor-General (Chairman);

Two persons appointed as representatives of the Maori race;

One person nominated by the New Zealand Geographical Society;

One person nominated by the Federated Mountain Clubs of New Zealand;

Two persons appointed on the recommendation of the Minister of Lands.

The members of the board, other than the Surveyor-General, are appointed by the Governor-General.

II

By virtue of the New Zealand Geographic Board Act 1946, the powers and functions of the board are:

To adopt rules of orthography and nomenclature in respect of place names in New Zealand;

To examine cases of doubtful spelling of place names in New Zealand and determine the spelling to be adopted on official maps;

To investigate and determine the priority of the discovery of any geographic feature;

To collect Maori place names for recording on official maps;

To determine what alien place names appearing on official maps should be replaced by Maori or British names;

Subject to the provisions of the Act, to investigate and determine any proposed alteration in a place name;

To make inquiries and recommendations on any matter referred to it by the Minister.

The Board may assign a name to any place in New Zealand or alter certain place names.

III

Whenever the board proposes to assign or alter any name pursuant to the Act it shall cause to be published in the Gazette a notice of its intention to do so. Any person objecting to the proposed name may lodge his objection in writing with the Board, stating the grounds of the objection, at any time within three months of the date of publication of the notice.

The board considers the objection and reports to the Minister of Lands who may confirm, modify or reverse the decision of the board and his decision shall be final. If no objection is received by the board within a three months' period, then the board's decision as to the proposed name or alteration shall be final.

It is an offence for any person to publish in any book or map, any name purporting to be the name of any place, locality or natural feature, unless the name appears on a map published by the Surveyor-General or is a name approved by the board, or unless the publication states that the name has not been approved by the Geographic Board.

IV

Prior to its occupation by Europeans, New Zealand was inhabited by Maoris. Their original vocabulary was limited and they had no written language. Many of the early missionaries and settlers were scholars who used their knowledge to introduce and establish consistent spelling for the Maori language, which is written phonetically, using the Roman alphabet.

The first recorded contacts with New Zealand by Europeans were made by Abel Tasman in 1642, Captain James Cook in 1769–1770, 1772–1775 and 1776–1780 and the French explorers de Surville in 1769 and Marion du Fresne in 1772. Later in the century there were frequent visits by sealers, whalers and traders, many of whom left records and assigned place names.

In 1840, New Zealand was proclaimed a British Crown Colony and a survey department with the attendant survey records was established.

In general, the Maori names were retained by the early surveyors and explorers for many of the geographical features. Understandably, the early Europeans did not always agree in their spelling; many of the early records will show the same name for a feature but with a variety of spellings.

V

For its guidance, the board has adopted the following rules:

The publishing of a name in any work which, in the opinion of the board, is authoritative should be taken into consideration but the publishing of that name shall not necessarily establish that name;

Where names have been incorrectly spelt, if not too firmly established by local usage, the correct spelling should be restored;

Where the choice lies between two or more names sanctioned by local usage, then that which is most appropriate and euphonious should be accepted;

The possessive form should be avoided wherever possible without destroying the euphony of the name or changing its descriptive application;

The use of hyphens to connect parts of names should in most cases be avoided;

Geographical names in a foreign language should be rendered in the form adopted by that country, except where there are English equivalents already fixed by usage;

Where the name for a feature has been published in both Maori and English forms, both of which forms are in general use, the board may retain both forms, either of which may be used officially; however, the use of alternative names should as a general rule be discontinued.

In the case of new names for alpine and other features the mountaineers or explorers first climbing, traversing or discovering such features shall have the right to submit names for the approval of the board;

The duplication of names is avoided as far as possible and particularly in the same locality;

Descriptive names and Maori names appropriate to the feature are encouraged;

The names of early explorers, surveyors, botanists, geologists or others connected with the locality should be used for appropriate unnamed features;

Where personal names are used, then surnames are preferred;

No place name is allocated unless the feature can be positively identified on a map, aerial photograph or similar document.

Geographical names in New Zealand are written in the Roman alphabet and are derived from the English and other European languages and the Maori language.

VI

The board has a permanent secretary but utilizes survey staff from Lands and Survey Department for additional research.

When it is proposed to assign a new name or alter an existing name, the views of the local authority in whose district the feature lies, and other interested parties and organizations are obtained by the secretary prior to consideration by the board.

Meetings of the Board can be held at such times as the board or chairman determines. Normally one meeting a year suffices to deal with board business, while a recess committee of the board deals with urgent matters that arise in the intervening period.

VII

A name is assigned to a geographical feature to enable people either in conversation, or in writing, or in the production of maps and charts, to refer to it without ambiguity.

Most names for features in the inhabited parts of the world were allocated in the days when travel was on foot or with beasts of burden and few people went far from their place of birth or knew much of the world beyond their own neighbourhood. It is understandable, therefore, that we frequently find in a country considerable duplications of names for minor features, although such duplication decreases as the features increase in importance. In this day of increasingly rapid transport and communication, and particularly for search and rescue purposes in the event of a disaster, it is important that duplication of names in the same area be avoided; the size of the area will increase with the size and importance of the feature to be named.

VIII

The generic terms: mount, hill, stream, creek etc. used in place naming in New Zealand, all have the same meanings as are given in any good English dictionary.

IX

A gazetteer of New Zealand place names is in an advanced state of preparation by the Lands and Survey Department. When published, this gazetteer will list place names alphabetically, together with a tabulation showing latitude and longitude, grid reference, sheet numbers and name, in the map on which each name appears.

Automatic data processing has been used extensively for recording, sorting into alphabetical order and printing of the gazetteer. Abbreviations used in its production are given in the annex below.

Annex

ABBREVIATIONS FOR GAZETTEER

AIR	Airport, aerodrome
ANCH	Anchorage, roads, roadstead
BNK	Bank
BASN	Basin
BAY	Bay, bight, cove, firth, inlet
BCH	Beach
BDGE	Bridge
BORO	Borough
BIVY	Bivouac
BLDG	Building, freezing works, hall, hut
BGND	Burial ground
CANL	Canal
CANY	Canyon
CEM	Cemetery
CHAN	Channel, entrance
CITY	City
CLIF	Cliff
CRAG	Crag
CRTR	Crater
CULV	Culvert
DRGE	Dredge
DRN	Drain, outfall
DSRT	Desert
FACT	Factory
FALL	Fall, waterfall
FIOR	Fiord
FRST	Forest
FUMA	Fumarole
GLCR	Glacier
GLKS	Golf links, golf course
GLLY	Gully, gut
GORG	Gorge, chasm
GYSR	Geyser
HARB	Harbour, haven, port
HEAD	Head, headland
HOSP	Hospital
HIST	Historic site
HSTD	Homestead, sheep station, station
ISLD	Island
ISTH	Isthmus
LAGN	Lagoon
LAKE	Lake, pond, pool, tarn
LTH	Lighthouse
LOC	Kainga,[1] Landing, locality, marae,[2] river bend, river crossing
MRFM	Blowhole (coastal), marine rock formation
MINE	Coal Mine, gold mine, mine, old mine
MT	Mount
MTN	Mountain
MTNS	Mountains, range
MBNK	Mudbank
NLT	Navigation light
PA	Pa[3]
PARK	Domain, park
PASS	Pass
STRA	Passage, strait
PEAK	Peak
PEN	Peninsula
PLN	Plain
PLTN	Plantation
PLAT	Plateau
PNT	Point
PHSE	Power house
PO	Post office
PPLN	Pipeline
QURY	Quarry
RSDG	Railway siding
RSTN	Railway station
RPDS	Rapids
RC	Race course, trotting grounds
RDGE	Ridge, spur
RECL	Reclamation
RESR	Reservoir
RFLE	Rifle range
SADDLE	Col, saddle
SBNK	Sandbank
SBRB	Suburb
SCH	College, High school, school
SHL	Shoal
SND	Sound
SPR	Spring
STRA	Strait, reach (coastal)
STRM	Brook, burn, creek, reach, river, stream
SWMP	Swamp
TERR	Terrace
TBRG	Toll bridge
TUNL	Tunnel

UNIV	University
VLY	Valley
VOLC	Volcano
WHF	Wharf
WKSP	Workshops

WWKS   Waterworks

[1] Kainga =(Maori) village.
[2] Marae =(Maori) court yard.
[3] Pa =(Maori) village.

NATIONAL GAZETTEERS

Paper presented by Thailand[1]

I

In 1933, a project to compile geographical names in Thailand was initiated by the Ministry of Education. The Ministry ordered its officials in various parts of the country to contribute information on important geographical and historical features located in the area under their respective responsibilities. In 1935, the project was transferred to the Royal Institute. Four volumes of the *Thai Geographic Gazetteer* have been published—one in 1963, two in 1964, and one in 1966.

During 1963, the Royal Thai Survey Department started to compile a map gazetteer consisting of geographical names which appeared on the base maps of Thailand at the scale of 1:50,000. The listing was completed in 1966 and the project is at present in the publication phase. It is expected to be ready in 1967.

In addition to these two major projects, some other government departments and some foreign organizations working in Thailand have compiled or are compiling, directories listing geographical names of populated places.

Volume I of the *Thai Geographic Gazetteer* contains general information given in eight chapters on the following subjects: geography, including landscape, mountains and rivers; climate; vegetation; fauna; natural resources, including minerals, forestry and aquatic animals; communications; the people; traditions. Each section is compiled by an expert in his particular field.

Volumes II and III contain information on administrative divisions, other cultural features and physical features arranged in Thai alphabetical order. One-page black and white maps provide readers with supplementary visual information.

The major part of volume IV contains revised one-page maps of the seventy-one *changwats*, with one page of recent statistical information for each. An alphabetized section contains new and revised entries in addition to those found in volumes II and III. A final section contains a listing of the highways of Thailand.

These four volumes are published in the Thai language and the accompanying maps are also in Thai.

The Thai spellings of each geographical name given in this set of volumes have been carefully reviewed and revised by the special committee of the Royal Institute so that they conform with modern Thai spelling rules.

Along with each name entry, there are valuable explanatory notes consisting of the generic term, location by administrative division,[2] relative location by description, places of interest, communication facilities, history, former and other variant names, and legends.

Entries in the gazetteer are made in a specified order whenever there is duplication of names. When the same specific names occur, entries are made in the following order: administrative centres, other cultural features, hydrographic features, land-forms. Should there be a duplication of names with the same generic term, the order would be alphabetical according to the *changwat* in which that entity is located.[3]

II

The map gazetteer of Thailand is being compiled by the Royal Thai Survey Department. It lists every geographical name as shown on the base map sheets of Thailand at the scale of 1:50,000 published before July 1966. But since the 1:50,000 scale map sheets do not cover the whole kingdom, name lists have been collected for temporary use from map series of other scales, such as 1:250,000 and 1:63,360. Names from approximately 5 per cent of the whole area of the country come from sources other than the 1:50,000 scale maps. This gazetteer lists only the Romanized names, even though the maps are bilingual, having both Thai characters and Roman forms of each geographical name shown.

In the production of this gazetteer, the United States Army Map Service is rendering assistance to the Royal Thai Survey Department in alphabetizing all name lists by means of computers. These name lists are compiled by map sheet. The publication of the gazetteer will presumably be completed by December 1967.

Information given along with each geographical name in this gazetteer consists of the following items: generic term, location by military grid and geographical coordinates and sheet numbers. In addition, for names taken from maps of medium scale, the sheet numbers is given.

III

The gazetteer of geographical names on Thai nautical charts was compiled by the Hydrographic Department of the Royal Thai Navy in 1963. All names appear in both Thai and Roman characters and are based upon rules adopted by the Royal Institute. Thus uniformity in the writing of geographical names is one of the chief objectives. This publication contains all geographical names which appear on the forty charts which have been produced by the Hydrographic Department. The generic terms, positions and chart numbers are given.

IV

Statistical directories are bilingual and are compiled with the co-operation of the Ministry of the Interior, the National Statistical Office and the United States Operations

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.19.

[2] Administrative divisions of Thailand consist of *changwats* (provinces), *amphoes* and *king amphoes*, *tambons*, and *mubans* (communes or villages).

[3] The basic rules which were followed for the preparation of the **gazetteer** are annexed to this paper.

Mission to Thailand. One publication (1965) contains lists of *changwats* and *amphoes* for the whole country, the other (1967) contains lists of *amphoes* and *tambons* for the fourteen-north eastern *changwats*. Both show the numerical code for all administrative names and municipalities and, in addition, give statistical data and maps, approximately scaled at 1:1,000,000 with a map index attached.

V

The Thai Government, in co-operation with foreign organizations working in Thailand, is compiling directories of the various administrative levels throughout the country. The minimum information for each *muban* (lowest administrative level) is as follows:

Official name of the *muban*, in Thai and Roman chracters;

Selected variant names by which the *muban* is known popularly or locally;

Designation of the higher order administrative levels responsible for the *muban*;

Location of the *muban* by latitude and longitude;

Location of the *muban* by universal transverse Mercator grid system co-ordinates;

Location of the *muban* by a map sheet at 1:50,000 scale, if possible.

The file containing this minimum information which will be computer-based and controlled by computer programme procedures is expected to be completed in 1970; the file should be capable of generating a directory.

Annex
CONTENT AND ORGANIZATION OF THE THAI GEOGRAPHIC GAZETTEER

Entries in the gazetteer consist of five different types of items. Information for each is given in the order listed below.

1. A *changwat* (highest order administrative unit of the country):

(*a*) Descriptive location within the *phak* (region), and identification on the map;

(*b*) Adjoining administrative units given in clockwise direction starting with north;

(*c*) Transportation facilities from Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, i.e. railways, highways, waterways and airways;

(*d*) Distance in kilometres from Bangkok along the indicated routes;

(*e*) Landscape;

(*f*) Population based on the latest census, the number being rounded to thousands of persons, i.e. the population of 225,761 persons is indicated simply 226,000;

(*g*) Occupations;

(*h*) Origin of the names and their legends;

(*i*) Important geographical and historical places and objects;

(*j*) Names of the *amphoes* within the *changwat*.

2. An *amphoe* (unit of the *changwat*):

(*a*) Location within the *changwat*;

(*b*) Adjoining units reckoned in clockwise direction;

(*c*) Transportation facilities from *sala klang changwat* (*changwat* government office);

(*d*) Landscape;

(*e*) Population, indicated in the same way as that of the *changwat*;

(*f*) Occupations;

(*g*) Origin and legends of the names;

(*h*) Names of the *tambons* within the *amphoe*.

3. A *tambon* (unit of the *amphoe*):

(*a*) Location within the *amphoe* and the *changwat*;

(*b*) Origin and the legend of the name;

(*c*) Important geographical and historical objects (only their names are given).

4. Rivers, mountains, islands and other geographical features:

(*a*) River: information about its length, source, mouth, the *changwats* located on its banks, its tributaries and a brief history of its name;

(*b*) Canal, small stream, lake, pond, estuary, bay, narrow passage on land or water: information about its location, size and name history;

(*c*) Mountain: information about its location, height of its highest peak and important features located on the mountain;

(*d*) Islands: these are given in the same detailed description as the *changwat*, *amphoe* or *tambon*, depending upon their size and status;

(*e*) Other important features, such as a monastery, a historical place or structure, and a natural feature of interest: information about their location, general description, size and history.

5. Traditions and customs are described by region (north, northeast, central and south), in order to avoid repetition of information.

The description of the *amphoe* boundary, the *changwat* boundary or the national boundary is based on the data read from the maps of the Royal Thai Survey Department, or from information given by the Ministry of the Interior. Location by means of latitude and longitude is sometimes given.

Some well-known places which are not classified as geographical features, but have importance historically, economically and in the field of transportation, are also recorded.

The spelling of *changwat*, *amphoe* and *tambon* names is in accordance with the rules given in the Thai dictionary issued by the Royal Institute.

Pronunciation of all names is based on the rules of pronunciation given by the same dictionary. If popular pronunciation of a name differs from the official pronunciation, remarks concerning this difference are given.

GAZETTEER OF CANADA

Paper presented by Canada*

I

Between 1898 and 1927, the Geographic Board of Canada, the original national names authority created in 1897, published lists of its decisions on selected groups of contentious geographical names, but any that did not require special consideration were not included. These

* The original text of this paper, prepared by J. K. Fraser and R. Disipio, Gazetteer Unit, Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.64.

lists were published as supplements to departmental annual reports or in the *Canada Gazette* and were not generally available to the public or easily used for reference purposes. It was decided in 1950 that a gazetteer including all names would be more useful and acceptable and would be welcomed both for official use and by the general public. Owing to the magnitude of the task, it was decided that the origin and meaning of the names and other items of historical interest could not be included.

99

The concept of producing a series of regional gazetteers of approximately the same size was originally considered and south-western Ontario was selected for the first volume, appearing in 1952. Reconsideration resulted in a decision to publish the series according to province or territory, as it was evident that although some volumes would be far larger than others, the convenience of compilation in collaboration with the respective provincial offices as well as the convenience to the user was preferable to attempting any artificial uniformity in size.

Accordingly, subsequent volumes were produced for British Columbia (1953), Manitoba (1955), New Brunswick (1956), Saskatchewan (1957), Alberta (1958), Yukon and Northwest Territories (1958), Prince Edward Island (1960), Nova Scotia (1961) and Ontario (1962). The volume for Newfoundland and Labrador is expected to appear in 1967. Work has been under way for two years on the gazetteer of Quebec in close collaboration with the provincial board and it is expected to be published in 1969.

It was hoped that a ten-year revision period could be established, but shortage of personnel and delays in printing forced the first revision, that of the gazetteer of British Columbia, to be deferred until 1967. The gazetteer of Manitoba is currently being revised.

The volumes produced range in size from Ontario with over 44,000 names and 614 pages, British Columbia (2nd ed.) with 35,000 names and 739 pages to Prince Edward Island with fewer than 1,350 names and 19 pages. The discrepancy in the British Columbia gazetteer results from a different system of location of the feature, which often involves more than one line of type.

II

The set of rules for alphabetization used by the United States Board on Geographic Names was adopted in 1950, subject to changes dictated by experience. The general rules of alphabetization used for the *Gazetteer of Canada* are listed below.

(*a*) The specific term or proper name is the basis for alphabetization, with the generic term being taken into account in the listing of two or more identical proper names.

(*b*) The name of a populated place which is identical to that of a natural feature is given preference in the listing.

(*c*) Generic terms that precede specific terms are listed below, separated by a comma.

Monte Bluff	Point
Monte, Cape	Cape
Monte Creek	Post Office
Monte Creek	Creek
Monte Hills	Hills
Monte Lake	Settlement
Monte Lake	Lake
Monte, Mount	Mountain

(*d*) Neither an article nor a generic term is used in the initial alphabetization unless it is part of a personal name, part of the name of a populated place or used with a name with a French specific and an English generic.

Knoll, The	Hill
La Biche River	River
Lac la Hache	Post Office
La Forme Creek	Creek
La Garde Creek	Creek

La Plante Sunker Rock	
L.H. Creek	Creek
The Knoll	Settlement

(*e*) Rules of French alphabetization are similar, with a few exceptions concerning the use of the article.

Baie-d'Urfe	Post Office
Carillon, Rapide de	Rapids
Cheval-Blanc, Rapide de	Rapids
D'Aloigny, Ile	Island
d'en Bas, Petit chenal	Channel
d'en Haut, Chenal	Channel
Deux-Montagnes, Lac des	Lake
Grande Anse	Cove
Grande Baie, la	Bay
La Conception	Post Office
La Petite-Rivière	Station
L'Assomption	Village
Les Cèdres	Post Office
L'Islet	Town
Lorette, Rivière	River
Louis, Mont	Mountain
Mont-Royal	Station
Moulin-a-Vent, Pointe de	Point
Oka, Pointe d'	Point
Oka-sur-le-lac	Town
Orme, Ruisseau à l'	Creek
Pointe-Fortune	Village
Rivière-Rouge	Town
Ronde, Ile	Island
Rouge, Rivière	River

(*f*) A descriptive adjective preceding a French name is not used in alphabetization.

Baleine, Petite Rivière à la	River
Bleus, Les petits lacs	Lakes
Epaule, Grand lac à l'	Lake
Poisson-blanc, Petit lac	Lake

(*g*) Similar names identifying the same kind of feature are listed according to latitude.

Brown Lake	.. ..	49°15′—106°22′
Brown Lake	.. ..	50°27′—101°12′
Brown Lake	.. ..	56°10′—102°30′

(*h*) Names beginning with "Mac" or "Mc" are alphabetized consistently throughout.

(*i*) Names beginning with "Saint", "St." or "Ste" are alphabetized consistently and in that order.

In general, the rules of alphabetization are adhered to consistently so as to allow the least chance of confusion to the user of the gazetteer, bearing in mind that the normal user looks up a name by referring to the term which identifies rather than describes it. Thus the user turns to "Belle Isle, Strait of "rather than to the form "Strait of Belle Isle".

III

One of the considerations in the preparing of the gazetteer was that it should contain not only officially approved names in current use, but also former names and unofficial names of features and settlements. Thus the user may look up a feature known to him as "Mud Creek" and find that the gazetteer refers him to another name by which the creek is officially recognized. Name changes are published in the semi-annual supplements and incorporated in subsequent revisions of the gazetteers.

An asterisk after the name of a populated place indicates that the settlement no longer exists. Normally such names are rescinded and deleted from the topographic maps, but in the sparsely settled northern parts of Canada the name is usually retained, qualified by the word "Abandoned" or "Unoccupied".

IV

Although titles such as "city", "town" and "village" are reasonably consistent across Canada in designating incorporated settlements, the designations for unincorporated places vary from province to province. The term "hamlet" is used in some provinces but not in others. "Settlement" indicates a community less compact than a hamlet, while "locality" is used for cross roads, for an abandoned settlement or for a community where the population is scattered. Census data, municipal records and examination of large-scale maps and aerial photographs are used in determining the appropriate designation in the hierarchy of populated places. This descriptive terminology is listed in the "feature" column following the name of the populated place.

Cobble Hill	Post Office
Hunts Inlet	Settlement
Jackpine	Locality
Lobbville	Station
Mono Hills	Hamlet
Ottawa	City
Sifton	Village

Numerous generic terms used in Canadian toponymy are unfamiliar to the general public and require clarification in the gazetteer. This information is provided in the "feature" column in which the common descriptive term indicates the nature of features, such as "pup" (creek), "tolt" (hill), "tickle" (passage), "pingo" (hill) etc.

V

The system of land division and its terminology is not uniform across Canada but differs according to the historical development of the nation and the characteristics of the terrain. A county system is used in most of eastern Canada, with subdivision usually into townships or parishes with parts of northern Quebec and Ontario administered as districts. The prairie provinces utilize the cadastral subdivision of section, township and range. In British Columbia, administrative districts take the place of the eastern county system.

The "location" column provides generalized information so that the user may easily determine the general location of a populated place or natural feature. Each populated place is located according to the administrative districts or with reference to a larger, well-known settlement. Natural features are located with reference to other, more significant named features, many of which are shown on the key map in the gazetteer. The "location" column in the British Columbia gazetteer provides more detailed information than those of the other provinces because the quadrilateral indexing system used

does not provide the precision of geographical co-ordinates.

The "position" column lists the geographical co-ordinates (except in British Columbia). Latitude and longitude to the nearest minute are determined from the latest available large-scale maps or charts and indicate the positions of the mouths of streams and the centres of lakes, bays, peninsulas or islands.

VI

Each gazetteer includes prefatory material explaining the policy or procedures governing classification of populated places, cross references, alphabetization and the manner in which locational information has been determined. A list of abbreviations is also included. A section on the history and development of the province accompanies the British Columbia gazetteer, as well as tables listing geographic data on the main rivers, islands and lakes, and the names of incorporated municipalities. A section on climate in the first edition of this gazetteer was omitted in the second edition.

The gazetteer of Newfoundland and Labrador will include a separate section on the names of the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. While recognizing that Canada has no jurisdiction over the geographical nomenclature of these French possessions, it was considered that, owing to the proximity of the islands to Canada, the listing of these names, taken from French topographic maps and checked with authorities in Paris, would be of interest and use to users of the gazetteer.

VII

The compilation of each of the *Gazetteer of Canada* series is essentially a review of the approved geographical nomenclature of the province in question. This information is maintained in an alphabetical card file which provides the correct form of the name, the feature designation, location, position, date of approval, map or chart index and origin or meaning, if known. The information to be published is checked for accuracy to ensure that it incorporates any recent changes, discrepancies are cleared with the provincial office, and the list printed on photolist cards. After rechecking, these cards are used to prepare the proofs which are again edited by the gazetteer staff. The sale price and run are determined in consultation with the government printing office.

The collaboration of the provincial representatives on the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names is an essential part of the compilation of the respective gazetteers. While the secretariat is responsible for the basic compilation, printing arrangements, costs and general format, close liaison is maintained with the province concerning designations of features and prefatory material.

Copies of most of the *Gazetteer of Canada* may be obtained from the Queen's Printer, Ottawa, Canada. A few examples are available for examination at this conference.

NATIONAL GEOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARIES

Paper presented by Guatemala*

In 1960 and 1961, on the basis of research carried out

in the short space of a year and recorded on more than 31,000 individual cards, Guatemala published the two volumes of its geographical dictionary.

A dominant characteristic of a project of this kind is

that it must be dynamic, and not static, since an encyclopaedic register—which is what a geographical dictionary really is—reflects the environment in which we live and is thus subject to a continuous process of adjustment and change. In this it is similar to any geographical work, which must remain open to the innovations and adjustments which the progress of research and the action of the forces of nature and of man in transforming the face of the earth keep bringing in their train and which the continuous alluvium of events presents to us each year.

The geographical dictionary must contain—in alphabetical order and preferably with cross-references—all the geographical names which have been standardized as the official names in use in the country up to the date of its compilation. It must also draw on the data obtained from aerophotogrammatic maps, which, in the case of inhabited places, will include: a description of the transport routes, with figures giving the distance, preferably, to the principal town; elevation above sea level in the centre of the inhabited place or, where possible, a reference to the benchmark of the national levelling network and its location; a brief description of the place, including population data and the geographical co-ordinates; a description of the relief, of the direction and length of streams and rivers, and so on. Although co-ordinates shown to the nearest minute are adequate, the ideal arrangement is to work with maps on the scale 1 : 50,000, since there will then be only one contour interval for the altimetric readings, namely, ten metres, and the co-ordinates can be given—as in the case of Guatemala—to the nearest second, with a probable error of one second, or approximately thirty metres. At the end of each item of data, the corresponding grid reference should be written in script with a view to the future preparation of the national atlas as well as for general reference purposes.

The data used by Guatemala in the compilation of its geographical dictionary were drawn from the level of the smallest political and administrative sub-division of the country, namely, the *municipio* (municipality). A circular letter requesting such data was sent to each of the 326 *municipios* of the twenty-two departments. The information requested included the following:

(1) Area, date of establishment and name of the *municipio;*

(2) Name and classification of all inhabited places in the *municipio;*

(3) Name and area of relief features, and name, area and point of discharge of hydrographic features (these data being important for establishing the "generic terms");

(4) If possible, a sketch of the *municipio* (copy of the one included in the relevant title to lands);

(5) Name and owners of rural properties, principal crops grown and area thereof, and other data of a legal nature. Complete information was requested for inclusion in the land register which was to be introduced later. In addition, the following terms were defined:

(a) *Finca:* rural property larger in area than a *caballería* (110.5 acres) which is used mainly for the growing of crops (coffee, etc.);

(b) *Hacienda:* same as the *finca* but used mainly for the rearing and/or fattening of cattle;

(c) *Labores* and *Granjas:* rural properties smaller than a *caballería.*

This information was supplemented with that from the most recent general population census (1950) and with information from such varied sources as the National Archives, ancient maps, chronicles and so on.

In accordance with a procedure determined beforehand, all the information was then entered on a detailed list which was sent to each municipality with the request that it should be reviewed at a *public* session of the municipal council within a period of not more than one month and should then be returned with the relevant observations, which were to be included in a certified copy of the proceedings of the session in question.

The next step was the standardization of all the geographical names, after which new lists were made up. Copies of these lists were sent to the appropriate local and national authorities, including the Central Statistical Office, together with a notice stating that the names were being given the status of official names in Guatemala.

The next step was to make up individual cards, except in the case of the rural properties which, because of their individual nature, were not to be included in the geographical dictionary.

With the aid of the Dewey decimal system, a register was opened for each *municipio* and placed in a folder. This facilitated quick and easy reference, as each department (in alphabetical order) had been assigned a primary number, and each of its *municipios* a sub-number.

For reasons of economy, individual letter-size cards were used for the recording of data. A space for the insertion of a reference number to be used for statistical purposes was left on the upper left-hand side, and a space for the appropriate geographical number on the upper right-hand side. Sufficient space was left for the recording of the other material, after which each card was filed in alphabetical order in up-to-date filing cabinets. In this way, all the cards relating to the same item were automatically filed together. Constant reference to the files does not present any problem, and the system in itself is very economical.

The number of cards is, of course, constantly growing as further data are obtained from the field (classification and revision by means of aerial photographs), from population and historical records and from other sources.

A point which must be stressed is that any name corresponding to a *municipio* is likewise included in the complete set of data relating to that *municipio* in the geographical dictionary, which also contains the local terms known as "*guatemaltequismos*" and the definitions of those terms.

The standardization procedures are explained in the publication *Contribución a los nombres geográficos de Guatemala* (Contribution to the geographical names of Guatemala). This publication also provides information on the Joint Commission on Geographical Names, which, as its title indicates, is made up of the institutions which, in addition to the National Geographic Institute, are concerned with geographical names—the Department of Humanities of the San Carlos University of Guatemala, the Guatemalan Society of Geography and History, the National Archives, the National Linguistic Institute, and so on.

Since, as already noted, no geographical work can ever be final, arrangements were made for the publication of a supplement to the geographical dictionary. Because of the resolute support of Mr. Carlos Rodaz Cruz, Director

of the National Printing Office, this supplement, covering the years 1962/1964, will be published in the current year. It will consist of two volumes in the same format as the geographical dictionary itself, each consisting of more than 400 pages.

The supplement includes not only revisions of the existing items but also thousands of new standardized geographical names and additional geographical and historical data; further, the great majority of the previously published items have been expanded, and extensive cross-references have been provided. A total of more than 16,000 individual cards were prepared for this supplement.

Work on the next supplement, which will cover the years 1965/1967, is also progressing well. More than 8,700 individual cards have already been prepared and filed. This supplement, which will also include information from the general population census of 1964, is expected to be ready in draft form by the end of 1968.

In the compilation of a work of the magnitude of the one described here, there is one essential and basic point which must be repeatedly stressed, namely, that no work of man is perfect and that the geographical dictionary of a country is no exception to this rule.

These notes were written upon request, and the delegation of Guatemala will be very pleased to provide any further or more detailed information to representatives requesting it.

ADMINISTRATIVE STRUCTURE OF NATIONAL NAMES AUTHORITIES

Paper presented by Kenya[1]

Recommendation I of the Group of Experts[2] makes several points about national names authorities. It is clear that arrangements which would be appropriate in a sophisticated developed country must differ from those which would be suitable for a country at an early stage of development, lacking complete coverage of basic topographic mapping and shortage of textbooks of grammar or dictionaries in native languages. Kenya's experience in this field may be a help to countries in the latter category.

Before considering the appropriate structure of an authority, it is necessary to consider the material from which it will have to work. The basic requirement for any thorough and systematic work on geographical names is adequate map coverage. Unless this is available, there will be uncertainty as to the true position of names and the topographic features to which they refer. The density of names increases with intensity of development. While a map at 1: 250,000 may clearly display all named features in a desert area, it is suggested that the minimum scales required elsewhere are: 1: 100,000 in thinly populated and undeveloped areas, 1: 50,000 in areas of medium population density and development, 1: 25,000 in other non-urban areas. Urban area maps have to be big enough to show individual streets, scales from 1: 10,000 to 1: 2,500 or even larger are necessary.

Investigation of names in an area without adequate map coverage is of little value because, when more knowledge in the form of up-to-date detailed maps becomes available, many of the earlier decisions will be found to be in need of revision. A country, however, need not wait for the whole of its territory to be mapped before setting up a names authority, which can start work on any area which is adequately mapped.

Now that the normal method of mapping is by photogrammetry, plotted in an office far from the area being mapped, collection of place names is no longer an integral part of map-making (as it was in the days of the surveyor travelling with a plane-table) but is a separate exercise.

Where the terrain is hostile to travel by motor vehicle, or where personnel or funds are not available for a thorough field investigation, the addition of names to a newly plotted map is often effected by unsatisfactory methods, e.g. by transfer from old small-scale maps or by questioning persons who know the ground but are not topographers. Such methods result in names being applied to the wrong features, and many names being omitted, thus creating basic initial difficulties for the names authority. It may be necessary for the names authority to have to convince the national mapping authority of the importance of devoting adequate resources to the initial collection of names.

The first collection of names to be recorded on a new map is usually (and best) done by a topographer (land surveyor). He requires the services of a guide who knows the area, and probably of an interpreter to translate the local language or dialect. By inquiry from a sufficient number of the inhabitants, he should be able to place names in their correct position on the map, but he will not be able to render all spellings correctly because he will not be trained in the disciplines necessary to accomplish this. He must take his name recordings to one or more local authorities who can help him. These may be administrators, teachers or any person or body having thorough knowledge of both the geography and languages of the area, who will be able to amend and amplify the information already collected. Following this, the names are ready to appear on the first edition of the map.

Until the above stages have been completed, the national names authority cannot usefully do any work on the area.

A central national names authority cannot encompass in its membership sufficient geographical and linguistic knowledge to decide on the correctness of position and spelling of tens of thousands of names on the national maps. This task must be delegated to suitable local authorities which should appoint committees of local experts. Special powers may be needed to ensure that such committees are appointed and function effectively.

The central authority must lay down policy and general principles, prepare work programmes and co-ordinate, compare and approve the work of local committees. It should arrange for publication of approved names, deal with objections and ensure that finally adopted names are brought into official use. To perform these functions, it must have adequate powers written into the national legislation. It must also have adequate secretarial, clerical and records personnel.

Membership of the central authority will vary according to the state of national development. In Kenya, for

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by J. Loxton, Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.5.

[2] See annex, p. 151.

example, with over thirty main languages, a population of 9 million, an area of 580,000 km² and 30,000 recorded geographical names, it is thought that the permanent members of the authority should be representatives of the Survey Department, the Languages Board of the Ministry of Education, the Literature Bureau (which produces vernacular publications), the university faculties of geography and history (and of anthropology, if such faculty is established). Part-time members might be drawn from other authorities with partial interests in place names, for example, post office, railways, army and departments of lands, forests, roads etc.

ADMINISTRATIVE STRUCTURE OF NATIONAL NAMES AUTHORITIES

Paper presented by Canada*

The national names authority in Canada—the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names—was established by federal statute in 1961 and is descended from the Geographic Board of Canada, created in 1897.

The Permanent Committee is composed of persons appointed by virtue of their positions in the federal and provincial governments of Canada. As a corporate body, it is responsible to the Minister of Energy, Mines and Resources of Canada, whose ministry provides the positions and accommodation for the secretariat as well as funds required for the publication of the *Gazetteer of Canada*. The federal representatives on the committee include:

Chairman: the Assistant Deputy Minister, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources;

Vice-Chairman: the Director, Geographical Branch;

Member: the Director, Surveys and Mapping Branch.

The committee also includes:

The Dominion Archivist;

The Director of Operational Services and Survey, Department of National Defence;

The Superintendent, Bureau for Translations, Department of Secretary of State;

and a representative for the Yukon and Northwest Territories.

Each province is represented by a member appointed by the appropriate provincial Minister. The provinces of Quebec, Alberta and Newfoundland have established provincial names boards and their secretaries act as the representatives on the Permanent Committee. Most of the members deal directly or indirectly with name problems, mainly in map nomenclature, and thus have a close and continuous interest in the standardization of geographical names. The Dominion Archivist and the Superintendent, Bureau for Translations, act mainly in advisory capacities on matters pertaining to their specializations.

The Permanent Committee meets in plenary session once a year, when general matters of policy are discussed and reports presented on the progress of names standardization. In case of matters requiring immediate decision, provision is made to call a meeting of Ottawa members of the committee.

The secretariat of the Permanent Committee was, until this year, administered by the Geographical Branch as the Toponymy Division. It is intended to move it under the directorate of the Surveys and Mapping Branch in September 1967, with the same functions and responsibilities as before. The executive secretary of the committee is the

chief of the Toponymy Division, which is divided into four sections: research, gazetteers, English nomenclature and French nomenclature. The secretariat is responsible for the verification and investigation of the nomenclature on all new or revised topographic maps and hydrographic charts produced by the federal mapping agencies, regional studies aimed at clarifying the local nomenclature of areas in serious need of standardization, answering inquiries on Canadian names, maintenance of name records, distribution of name decisions and preparation and publication of the *Gazetteer of Canada*. The bilingual nature of Canadian toponymy demands that the secretariat include personnel who are fluent in French and English.

Under the federal system of government in Canada, it is recognized that each province has authority over geographical names in the territory falling under its jurisdiction. New names or name changes are approved by the Permanent Committee only after firm recommendations are received from the respective provinces. Names in the Yukon and Northwest Territories are approved by the Minister of Energy, Mines and Resources following endorsement by the territorial representative. Agreement is sought between the provinces and the National Parks Branch concerning names of features in national parks, almost all of which lie within provincial boundaries. Similar arrangements exist concerning names in Indian reserves which, like the parks, come under federal administration.

Name decisions are processed by the secretariat and circulated to mapping agencies, postal authorities and others concerned with the publication of material requiring up-to-date information on geographical names. New names, name changes, altered applications and rescissions are published according to province or territory in semi-annual supplements to the *Gazetteer of Canada*.

Close liaison is maintained with the Post Office Department and with railway companies, all of which seek the advice of the Permanent Committee on matters pertaining to geographical names, in particular the opening of new post offices or railway stations. The advice of specialists in Amerindian languages is readily available through the National Museum or the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.

It is considered preferable that the position of executive secretary be filled by a graduate in geography with specialization or interest in historical geography. It is an added advantage for him to be fluently bilingual in English and French and also to have additional training in linguistics. He is allowed considerable authority in conducting liaison with provincial authorities and in approving names on behalf of the committee. Matters which might create public controversy or which should have ministerial approval are brought to the attention of the chairman at the discretion of the executive secretary.

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION AND WRITING SYSTEMS
Paper presented by Cyprus*

The Special Committee of Cyprus Geographic Names submits the following:

The traditional orthography should form the basis of standardization of Cypriot geographical names;

For purposes of the International Map of the World, names in the language of the minority should not be taken into consideration;

The basic principle should be strict transliteration in the Roman alphabet guided by the internationally accepted rules of transliteration of the Permanent Committee of Geographical Names of the Royal Geographical Society and the United States Board of Geographical Names.

GUIDE-LINES FOR PREPARING AND SUBMITTING PROPOSALS REGARDING DOMESTIC GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES
Paper presented by the United States of America[1]

INTRODUCTION

Public Law 242, 80th Congress, approved on 25 July 1947, provided for a central authority to standardize geographical names for the purpose of eliminating duplication in standardizing such names among the federal departments, and for other purposes.

This central authority is the Secretary of the Interior acting conjointly with the Board on Geographic Names. The board is inter-departmental and, subject to the approval of the Secretary of the Interior, is authorized to formulate principles, policies and procedures to be followed with reference to both domestic and foreign geographic names; and to determine the choice, spelling and application of those names for official use.

The United States Board on Geographic Names and its predecessor agencies have long been responsible under executive orders and subsequent legislation for establishing the geographical names to be used on maps and other publications of the Federal Government. In carrying out this function the board depends, to a great extent, upon information furnished by government agencies which, in performing their normal functions, have occasion to investigate the local usage of nomenclature as well as documentary references thereto.

The Board on Geographic Names and the Secretary of the Interior have approved proposals of the Domestic Names Committee applicable to the United States, its territories and possessions. These proposals are aimed at expediting work on domestic names problems, developing standard procedures for all agencies to follow in their investigations of geographical names, and in reporting upon those problems requiring decisions or other actions by the board. One of the proposals concerned the designation of certain basic map and chart series as authoritative reference sources for geographical names in preparing new maps and other government documents for publication.

The statement which follows has been prepared primarily to assist government agencies in determining the kinds of name problems that should be referred to the board for appropriate action, but the procedures outlined will be useful to all persons concerned with problems of domestic geographical names. The statement is intended to facilitate investigation of the local usage of geographical names, as well as the documentary research thereon that is required in preparing new government maps and other publications. Emphasis has been placed upon standard

reference media and editorial procedures which are desirable to ensure that the geographical names published on the various government maps and other documents are in agreement regarding the respective features named, and in their spellings.

Thorough investigation of local usage and examination of references may reveal some controversy or confusion in name application or spelling. Complete information on such cases is required so the board can decide the usage that should be employed in government publications. Standard procedures for reporting names problems have been emphasized to ensure completeness of information and to facilitate consideration by the board. It is incumbent upon the agencies which produce and maintain the series of government maps and charts that have been selected as basic reference authorities on geographical names promptly to report any questions arising in regard to the validity of such names, in order that decisions can be expedited and necessary corrections made.

Communications regarding geographical name problems in the United States, its territories and possessions should be addressed to the following representative of the United States Board on Geographic Names: Executive Secretary for Domestic Geographic Names, United States Geological Survey, Washington, D.C., 20242.

I. PRINCIPLES RELATING TO GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN THE UNITED STATES, ITS TERRITORIES AND POSSESSIONS

The board has followed long-established principles in considering name cases submitted to it for decision. Agencies concerned with names should be guided by these principles, although their application to specific cases must be determined by the board. A summary statement of these principles follows.[2]

1. Names in dominant local use generally are retained.

2. Euphonious and suitable names of Indian or foreign origin are retained.

3. Names suggested by peculiarities of topographic features—such as their form, vegetation, or animal life—are generally acceptable, but duplication of names within one state and especially within smaller areas should be avoided. Names such as "Elk", "Bald", "Beaver", "Cottonwood", "Mill", "Moose", "Muddy" and "Round" are numerous and commonly repetitive within limited areas.

---

4. Names proposed to commemorate living persons are not approved.

5. Long and clumsily constructed names are to be avoided. Such names usually will not be adopted by the public. Well-established multiple-word names should be used. Parts of these names may be combined in accordance with the United States Government Printing Office style manual.

6. Names with a derogatory implication are not accepted.

7. The multiplication of names for different parts of the same feature, such as a river or mountain range, is undesirable. One name is preferable for the main stem of a stream or throughout the length of a single mountain range. In the case of a river, the name usually follows its longest branch.

8. The naming of forks, prongs, branches etc., as "east fork" or "north prong" of a river, should be avoided. In most cases, independent names should be given to branches of a river.

9. Spelling and pronunciation sanctioned by local usage are acceptable in general.

10. Names changed or corrupted from their original form and established by local usage are usually not restored.

11. The possessive form is avoided provided that the euphony of the name is not thereby destroyed or its descriptive application changed.

12. The use of hyphens in connecting parts of names should be discouraged.

13. The letters "CH" (courthouse) appended to the names of county seats are omitted, if possible. The works "city" or "town" as parts of names should be avoided.

14. An existing name should not be replaced unless it is a duplicate or is inappropriate.

15. Acts of state legislatures, municipal councils and other local governing bodies regarding geographical names are usually accepted unless application of the names would conflict with naming principles followed by the board.

The earlier decisions of the United States Geographic Board usually indicated only the spelling of a name on which a decision was rendered, followed by identification of the place or feature to which the name applied. More recent published decisions of the board include decisions on the following, if available: spelling; feature named; location; pronunciation and hyphenation (when not self-evident); rejected names and forms of names; history and derivation of the name.

II. Criteria for determining names to be submitted to the board for decision

The board does not render a decision on each name that is used on government maps or in government publications, nor is such a decision necessary. As guides in determining whether a name should be submitted to the board for decision, or whether it may be used without such action, certain classes of names are defined below. The names in group A must be submitted for decision; those in group B may be used without being submitted for decision; and for those names in group C submission is invited but not required. It is recognized that names may not appear to fall logically into any of these classes; any names that do not clearly fall into classes under group B are to be submitted for decision.

The board is not bound to accept any names that appear to fall into the classes grouped as usable without decision, but reserves the right to consider any name at any future time if it is found to be causing confusion, or if it proves to be objectionable under principles adopted by the board.

Group A. Names to be submitted to the board for decision prior to publication

1. All names for previously unnamed features;

2. New names for features that previously carried some other names;

3. Any names in current use that have a derogatory implication;

4. Old names that are given essentially new applications;

5. Conflicting or different names for the same feature, as between published and local use;

6. Names that apparently should be spelled or applied at variance with an existing decision or official standard name;

7. Names whose unapproved previous usages, in government, state, or private publications, do not agree, either as among such published usages, or as between published usage and local custom;

8. Names of "places" (cities, towns, villages, and settlements) which are duplicated within the same state;

9. Names whose governmental spelling, as represented by a formal decision, or by "provisional adoption", or by the name of a post office, is at variance with dominant local usage or with a usage that is prescribed by law or by charter;

10. Names on which there are formal decisions, if the existing decision has not been generally followed after adequate trial;

11. Names on which there are formal decisions, if the existing decision is objectionable to the state board concerned;

12. Names used incidentally in congressional legislation or used in any enactment by a state or territorial legislature that do not fall in any of the classes defined under group B;

13. Names of cities, towns and villages that are different from the post office or railroad station therein.

Group B. Names that may be used without being submitted to the board

Geographical names that fall in the following classes may be used without being submitted to the board for decision, provided they do not also fall in any classes in Group A.

1. Names for which there are existing affirmative decisions;

2. Names indicated as the approved form in published lists of names "provisionally adopted";

3. Names that have been specifically adopted by a naming enactment of Congress;

4. Names that have been formally approved by a state geographic board, in conformity with the rules of the United States Board on Geographic Names, in so far as they apply to features wholly within the jurisdiction of the state board;

5. Official names of post offices, in so far as they apply only to the names of the post offices;

6. Names of civil divisions, as adopted by the Bureau of the Census, in so far as they apply only to the civil divisions themselves and not to other features, and in so far as they are not in conflict with names that are otherwise in general use;

7. Names that are in use on the latest issue of a United States Government map, and that, after reasonable search, appear not to conflict with other published usages, nor with local usage, and that conform to the principles adopted by the board;

8. Names not strictly geographical that are applied to other than natural features such as park headquarters, fish hatcheries, ranches, mines etc.;

9. Names in generally accepted use for such features as dams, railroads, highways, bridges, lighthouses and other structures which have been officially applied by the organization, legal authority or civil unit which controls the feature in so far as the name applies to the structures and not to neighbouring or resulting features;

10. Names not at variance with any of the principles adopted by the Board and that are in undisputed local use;

11. Names that are in good standing, but that do not agree with names that clearly were spelled or applied in error;

12. Names of minor features that are of navigational importance only, which are in well-established local use, and which are unlikely to be used on maps other than charts, or in the *Coast Pilots* or *Light Lists*;

Group C. Names whose submission to the board is invited but not required

1. Names in undisputed local use, which conform to the general practice of the board in the consideration of old names, but which may not conform to all the rules which the board would apply for new names;

2. Names of natural features, as distinct from "places" (see A, 8) which are likely to cause confusion through duplication;

3. Names on which there are existing decisions made in conformity with a general rule which the board has modified;

4. Names on which there are existing decisions, but concerning which important new evidence has been brought forth which was not available or not considered when the original decisions were rendered;

5. Names on which there are existing decisions, or names in undisputed use, that are not spelled in accordance with their derivation, or that are objectionable because they are awkward, misleading or difficult to spell or pronounce, provided they are not so well established that it would be impractical to try to change them.

III. BASE AND REFERENCE MAPS

Several series of maps are recognized as authoritative for geographical names. Considerations involved in the selection of these series of maps are: the series of maps or charts should provide complete coverage for the United States; field investigators should be available for obtaining and verifying names; the maps should be revised at frequent intervals, incorporating changes in new editions as quickly as possible; and the maps should be of sufficiently large scale to show the names of minor features. As no single map series for the United States fulfils all these requirements at present, a selection of a minimum number of map series has been made to provide the authoritative name information.

Base series maps

The following map series are to be considered as basic references in editing geographical nomenclature for use on government maps and will be referred to as base series maps:

Quadrangle maps of the National Topographic Map Series (including United States 1:250,000 series), United States Geological Survey;

Nautical charts of coastal areas, United States Coast and Geodetic Survey; charts of the Great Lakes, United States Lake Survey;

Administrative maps of National forests, United States Forest Service;

Sectional aeronautical charts, United States Coast and Geodetic Survey.

Each of the separate map series meets some of the requirements described above, and the combined group can be as effective as a single comprehensive series. The agencies responsible for preparing these maps have established a communications system whereby errors or changes are referred to the proper agency for correction in the next revision or in the next reprinting of the maps. These agencies also have trained field personnel available for field research when necessary.

In all their mapping operations, agencies responsible for base series maps should provide their personnel with all the name information shown on previously published base series maps. Established usable names can be verified at the time additional names are obtained and processed. Discrepancies in the application, spelling or usage of names must be investigated and recorded on the standard form, "Domestic geographic name report."[3] If the discrepancy involves a map prepared by another agency, the report is referred to that agency for comment and appropriate action. The processed forms are then submitted by the originating agency to the Domestic Names Committee of the Board on Geographic Names for action. In case of serious controversy or discrepancy, each agency involved should submit a complete report to the committee for board decision.

Other agencies and map-users should refer to available base series maps for verifications of names. Discrepancies should be reported on the standard form to the responsible base series agency for action and, if necessary, submission to the Board on Geographic Names.

Reference series maps

The following maps are to be considered collateral or secondary references in compiling or editing geographical names and will be referred to as reference series maps:

United States land plats, Bureau of Land Management;

Soil survey maps, Department of Agriculture;

International Maps of the World, 1:1,000,000-scale, United States Geological Survey;

United States Geological Survey state base maps;

Public roads county maps, Bureau of Public Roads;

---

[3] See annex II below.

Geological maps, United States Geological Survey;
Official state maps.

These reference maps contain much valuable name information and should not be overlooked or disregarded in compiling geographical name data.

Agencies responsible for reference series maps should use base series maps to verify all the names that appear on reference maps. Controversies, with supporting evidence, should be reported on the standard form and transmitted to the proper base series agency for preliminary action, as described under the heading, "Base series maps". The reports are then returned to the originating agency for review and submission to the Domestic Names Committee for final action.

By adhering to the procedures recommended above, discrepancies in names on maps of different agencies will be prevented or eliminated.

IV. GATHERING NAME INFORMATION

A. Importance of names

The authenticity of spelling and the application of names are the primary responsibility of the investigator, using and evaluating all available sources of information such as maps, signs, published material, local residents and officials, keeping constantly in mind the types of cultural and natural features generally named, and the necessity for a complete investigation and report when there is serious disagreement in usage. It is the duty of the office compiler to be as careful as the man in the field.

Map names have a meaning for everyone, but local names have a significance for people in home communities that a stranger can seldom fully appreciate. Names may be simply descriptions, such as "Table Mountain, "Crater Lake" and "Picture Gorge". They may be a record of animal life or of good hunting, past or present, such as "Deer Creek", "Bear Mountain" and "Sheep Canyon". Names may even be humorous or whimsical, intentionally or otherwise—e.g. "Ticklenaked", "Tightwad" and "Monkeys Eyebrow". "Enola", "Lebam" and "Tesnus" are original place names that are simply common words spelled backwards.

Most of all, names are a record of history, big and little, important and trivial. They perpetuate the memories of the early settlers and pioneers and of odd, curious or notable happenings that otherwise would be forgotten. "Battle Mountain" and "Massacre Rock" tell the story of the Indian wars. Mostly, the story in a name is a smaller incident, as in names like "Lost Boy Butte", "Bloody Hands Gap", and "Grave Creek". To local people, the important names may be those of persons prominent in the history of the locality whose memory is respected and whose relatives and descendants take pride in the association. A mistake in spelling or omission of a personal place name on an official map may be considered by local people to be a slight to the memory of the person.

Name errors and conflicts in usage may have various forms. The name itself may be completely wrong. The name may be essentially correct but the spelling wrong, or the name may be correct and correctly spelled but the application may be wrong or uncertain. Application means the identity, extent and map location of the feature to which the name applies. Without definite information on the application, a name is meaningless or misleading for map use. In most cases, the application is very evident, but, particularly with natural features, the limits of the name application can present a perplexing problem. No name should be finally accepted until the possibility of error in the name, the spelling and the application has been eliminated.

Accuracy and completeness of name coverage can be ensured only by respect for the true meaning of names, and realization of the importance of names to every map-user.

B. Responsibility for map names

The field investigator has the original responsibility for the names. He gathers the basic name data in the field, ascertains local name usage and records the name information in a systematic and orderly form for editing. The editors select the names to be published according to the space available, check them against other references for accuracy and completeness, and specify the size and arrangement of lettering for maximum legibility. Where there is disagreement about name spelling or application, or when new names are proposed, the responsible project or field engineer will document and submit the names with the relevant information for transmittal to the Board on Geographic Names for decision or other appropriate action.

C. Map features usually named

All names of natural features are considered to be within the area of responsibility of the Board on Geographic Names. Names of man-made features are generally the responsibility of the agency having administrative control of the feature. There will, however, be place names or other names which should be considered by the board. Names of features which are not primarily geographical would normally not be the concern of the board.

D. Proposed new names

When there is need to suggest names for unnamed land or water features, the suggested name should be appropriate to the feature named. Names descriptive of peculiarities of the feature such as shape, vegetation or animal life, or derived from a person or event connected with the history of the area, are common types of names that are selected. Special care should be taken in choosing the type name for the feature. Descriptive names tend to be repetitive and may prove unsatisfactory unless the form or character of the feature is unique. Names of historic significance are preferable and local traditions might suggest names for a particular feature. Research in available records and interrogation of nearby residents are the greatest aids to the investigator in trying to establish a suitable name for an unnamed feature.

Generic terms should be appropriate to the region. In an area where all streams are called "runs" the new name should use this label. In an area where streams are dry most of the year, the stream course probably should be named "gulch", "canyon" or "wash" rather than "creek".

Proposed new names must be submitted to the Board on Geographic Names for approval before publication. The form, "Proposal of name for an unnamed domestic feature" is set out in annex I below.

E. Evaluation of sources

Information on names is obtained from many different sources, varying widely in reliability and completeness.

The map-maker must keep in mind the three requirements: authenticity, spelling and application, and the necessity of presenting a complete report when there is serious disagreement in spelling or usage.

1. *Published maps.* These are the easiest name source to use. Base series maps or information from them furnished to the map-maker will constitute an authority in gathering names, and any disagreement in the application or spelling of a name on the different base series maps should be investigated and the necessary information prepared for transmittal to the Board on Geographic Names and to the agency whose map is in error. Revision and reprinting will bring about agreement in the names of features appearing on two or more of the base series maps.

2. *Signs.* Road signs, building signs and other public displays are also important sources to use. If they have been erected by a responsible government agency they should be reliable. Only in very rare cases should a map name differ from a prominent public sign; nothing could be more confusing to the map-user. Such cases should be thoroughly investigated including, if possible, a discussion with the agency responsible for the sign.

3. *Books, bulletins, reports, local histories.* In remote, sparsely populated areas, published material may be almost the only source of name information, and for any area it is a valuable supplement to other sources. Guide-books and official directories are among the most reliable because they are carefully checked and published as reference works.

In addition to reference publications obtainable from the local public library, responsible local citizens are an indispensable source of name information. In a small community an interested person may act unofficially as the town historian. Such persons may have private reference libraries, and be able to furnish information from personal knowledge.

Most reference publications cover only a limited area, but the following standard works may be helpful: *United States Census of Population,* volume 1; *Directory of Post Offices, Official Guide of the Railways of the United States, Webster's Geographical Dictionary* and *United States Writers' Project State Guides.* Geographical names in geological reports, mineral surveys and similar scientific studies frequently contain maps that are very useful sources of name information. Other types of material with local application are city and county directories, local histories of families, towns, or communities.

4. *Local residents and officials.* Persons living in the area being mapped are the most frequently consulted source of name information. They are also the most difficult source to use and to judge. The reliability of the information obtained in this way depends on the individual, his length of residence in the area and his experience. Some individuals are inherently unable to admit that they do not know the answer to a question. The information supplied by such persons may be perfectly reliable in the areas with which they are familiar but worthless for other areas. The best guide in these cases is the reputation and the experience and occupation of the individual.

Undoubtedly the best sources of information are public officials, particularly local postmasters, county assessors, game and fire wardens, Coast Guard employees, sheriffs and county engineers. These are people of standing in the community, they are apt to be careful in their statements, and their work requires them to know the names and locations of a great many natural features.

F. Field procedures

1. *Suggestions on questioning local residents.* The amount and reliability of the information obtainable from local residents may depend on the method of questioning. One way of confirming a name is by using it in conversation with a person who is familiar with the area. His reaction is likely to be a clue to the correctness of the usage. When questions are asked, they should not be phrased so that the answer is suggested.

The identity of the feature in question is one possible source of error in obtaining name information. Visual or descriptive reference must be positive to avoid the possibility of confusion.

Misspelling of names obtained through conversation is a common error occurring in areas where local dialects prevail. It should not be assumed that the spelling is determined by the sound of the name. Phonetic spelling easily leads to mistakes. Errors from this source can be avoided by asking that the name be spelled or, if necessary, by checking legal documents.

2. *Undisputed names in local usage.* Many of the names in common use are so well known that the spelling and application are not questioned. This class of names presents no particular problem; it is simply a matter of adequate documentation and recording the name properly. Adequate documentation involves sufficient identification by local residents. Some agencies require three such verifications; however, in thinly populated areas this requirement may be difficult to fulfil. It should be noted that names in this category may not appear on any previous publication, but are not to be confused with proposed new names.

3. *Names of minor features.* Names requiring some extra attention to ensure completeness of name coverage are those applying to small features, especially in remote areas. A conflict or discrepancy in this type of name is not likely because it is generally known to only a few people, but there may be a question of what the name is or whether the feature has a name at all.

4. *Commercial names.* Cultural features of a commercial nature, such as logging rail-roads, or large factory buildings, are identified if necessary by a type label, but usually not by the company name. The criterion is the private or public character of the organization controlling the feature. Many colleges and universities, for example, are private organizations of a public character; factories usually are not.

5. *Generic terms.* Features are referred to by different generic terms in different areas. Care should be exercised in using labels peculiar to any region. Any use other than one normally associated with the term should be explained. "Prairie" can be a swamp or a grassland; a "slough" can be an inlet or a marsh; a "bay" can be a wooded area or a swamp.

6. *Abbreviations.* The Government Printing Office *Style Manual* is the standard authority for abbreviations in all government publications. Where names carry abbreviations which differ from standard practice, the investigator must ascertain whether the difference is due to official designation or to local variation.

G. Investigating controversial names and name changes

Names in these classes present the most difficult problems for the field investigator. When there is conflicting

usage, the responsibility for establishing the correct form rests with the Board on Geographic Names. The duty of the investigator is to decide from the evidence which instances of disagreement should be considered controversial, and hence require the development of information and a recommendation to be submitted to the Board on Geographic Names.

In evaluating name information, judgement must be used in discriminating between genuine controversy and minor discrepancies. The fact that a few people may be mistaken about a name is not sufficient grounds, in itself, to consider a name controversial. The conflicting usage may be due to ignorance or carelessness. However, general disagreement in spelling or application should always be investigated thoroughly and the results submitted to the Board on Geographic Names.

In a case where the Board on Geographic Names has made a decision, the question is not reopened except for compelling reasons.

V. Procedure for reporting domestic names proposals

After the proponent of a geographical names proposal has established the need for such action according to the foregoing principles and criteria, he should make an adequate presentation of the case, including the results of his research, to the Board on Geographic Names.

The data and exhibits considered necessary by the Board for processing and standardization proceedings are discussed on following pages.

The Board on Geographic Names has approved two standard forms for presentation of essential information on names proposals. The form, "Domestic Geographic Name Report,"[3] is used where a controversy is involved, a name change proposed or a change in application involved, or for any name discrepancy. The form, "Proposal of Name for an Unnamed Domestic Feature",[4] is used when it is desired to secure approval of a name for an unnamed feature. Each domestic name proposal presented for consideration by the board should include the appropriate form, giving the information called for in as complete detail as possible.

In addition to the information called for on the form, mapping agencies should furnish the board with supplemental data as shown below.

A. Supplemental data from mapping agencies

Information stating whether the feature covered by the name proposal is in a federal or state reservation or management area (as a national or state forest or national or state park) and, if so, giving the views of the administering agency of that area as to the name proposal; federal mapping agencies should secure these views in writing and furnish copies with the name proposal;

The results of interviews with appropriate officials of local governments which may have an interest in the name proposal;

Opinions and conclusions of advisory boards or state boards of geographic names are sought by the United States Board on Geographic Names and should be included where practical as part of the name presentation;

---

[3] See annex II below.
[4] See annex I below.

Statements or other exhibits resulting from interviews or discussions with individuals or organizations as to local usage or other research data;

A statement on the history of map usage; this will include a review of current basic name series maps and such supplemental series as are applicable, with a report on usage as shown by such maps;

Any other pertinent information useful to the board in rendering a decision on the name proposal.

B. Supplemental data from non-mapping agencies

With name proposals, non-mapping agencies should furnish the information indicated above to the extent that it can be obtained.

C. Directions for completing forms

A further discussion follows of each topic or item of information called for on the forms, indicating in detail the information needed by the board. Where space provided by the form is insufficient to accommodate the essential information, continuation sheets or a separate text, properly referenced, should be used.

Forms for domestic name proposals can be secured from the Executive Secretary for Domestic Geographic Names, United States Geological Survey, Washington, D.C., 20242.

Discussion of form used in naming an unnamed domestic feature[4]

Proposed name, state, country: The proposed name should appear here in exactly the form proposed for map usage. If the feature falls in more than one state, all states should be listed and, in a like manner, all county names should appear.

Pronunciation: if this entry is applicable, the pronunciation and spelling should be confirmed if possible by an identified local source.

Latitude, longitude etc.: The geographical location of the feature is essential if the feature can be identified by a centre point location. The location of the centre point should be given by latitude and longitude carried to minute or second value depending on the nature of the feature. If a large feature such as a mountain cannot be located practically by a central geographic point or by township and section listing, other well-known geographical features may be used for boundary definition. The public land survey location is desirable, but should be attempted only in surveyed townships. If the proponent does not have facilities for determining the latitude and longitude of the feature, reference to the delineation of the feature on a basic name series map attachment will be considered as adequate.

Description and extent of feature: This statement is to contain, as a minimum, all information necessary to define the particular object being described, to the definite exclusion of any other objects with which it could be confused. This section will be concerned with its appearance, the size of the feature, and any other distinguishing data that will contribute to its description. The appended map location will supplement this descriptive data.

Distance and direction from prominent features or towns: The feature or town must be of sufficient proximity to

make the tie-in significant. The distance may need specification as to airline, travel by stream or other means, unless otherwise clear to the reviewer.

Basis of knowledge that feature is unnamed: This statement will require confirmation of omission from a basic name series map and confirmation by an adequate authority regarding local usage. The existence of wide local usage should not be ignored because the feature is not named on current basic name series maps.

Reason for choice of name: A name may have been selected for reasons other than its descriptive value, a nearby feature, or for a person. Examples might be of some historical connexion such as "Battle Run" or "Camp Springs". The reason for the selection of the suggested name should be presented in sufficient detail to make the reason acceptable.

If the name is descriptive, state why it is appropriate: This entry is provided to elaborate on the descriptive association of the name with the feature. Examples might be "Slate Creek", "Windy Gorge", "Flat Run", "Blue Valley". In each case the significance of these specific terms should be established.

If named for another feature: State for that other feature:

1. Name, latitude, longitude, section, township, range, and meridian;

2. Any known variants in spelling or other names; this entry gives an opportunity to explain any variation between "other feature" name as shown above for the specific feature as compared to that suggested for the feature name; otherwise the name form under item 1 above will be identical to that suggested for naming;

3. Number of years known by present name; this will generally be answered by acceptable map usage, strengthened if possible by personal statements of persons in the area, or other forms of research;

4. Relation of the two features; this may be from proximity, historical association with the same event, prevalent characteristic shared by the features such as geological structure, colour, etc.

If the name commemorates a person, state:

1. Full name of the person (do not propose name of a living person);

2. Date of person's death; this should be authenticated by records or common knowledge;

3. Last residence; this should be the town or county in which the person last resided; if this is different from a place of accidental death, both places should be reported;

4. Association of the person with the feature to be named; the reason for a commemorative name selection should be related under this heading; the degree and nature of the association of the individual with the feature should be shown;

5. Brief biography; this material about the person should provide brief information containing vital statistics, background, employment, principal interests, contributions in the field of life work, activities in community, enduring monuments of work, and other facts that would add to the justification for commemorative naming.

Attached identification aids: Such aids might be:

1. Marked map; this map should be of sufficient size to show the surrounding features, particularly those used for reference location purposes; it should be of sufficiently large scale to show the whole feature and the specific pattern of its delineation; in the name of a stream, the map should show the proper application of the name clearly and completely; if not adequately covered in the above text material, the map can be utilized to show the intended limits of a feature; a map presentation can clarify a written description and should be included wherever possible;

2. Marked photographs; where available, extra materials such as photographs and sketches are helpful in giving the reviewer a more vivid understanding of the feature; sketches are often used to supplement relative map position.

Discussion of form used for a domestic geographic name report[3].

Proposed name: Indicate name, state and county.

Reason for proposal: Check appropriate box or boxes on the form.

Location of feature: Indicate latitude, longitude, section, township, range and meridian. Comments on name form, location data and brief description of feature are similar to those listed previously for the previous form.

Is name in local use? Approximate number of years: A name is considered to be in local use when local residents refer to the feature freely, without prompting and without obvious confusion as to application. The reference to the feature is widespread among the residents and without class or group restriction.

Maps using recommended name: This entry will list the base series maps and those of available reference series using the recommended name. Any additional data on the history of map usage should be contained in the transmittal.

Variant spelling or other names for the feature and map use review of variant names: Names at variance with the recommended name, together with map usage, should be reported in these two entries.

Available information as to origin, spelling etc.: This section should contain the background information necessary for the Board on Geographic Names to arrive at a proper decision on the name problem. It is the responsibility of the proponent to supply all the facts at his disposal bearing on his recommendation with a clear statement of his case and with an objective review of the adverse position resulting from his experience and research.

The importance of map usage throughout the map history of the area is emphasized, but in a controversial case the investigation of local usage must be given full attention. A statement showing concurrence from at least one local resident in a position implying knowledge and respect in such matters is essential and similar reports from others, including results of text research, observation of signs etc. should be included in detail.

FORM FOR PROPOSAL OF NAME FOR AN UNNAMED DOMESTIC FEATURE

FORM 9-1344
(MAY 1960)

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES WASHINGTON 25, D. C. **PROPOSAL OF NAME** **FOR AN UNNAMED DOMESTIC FEATURE**	Proposed name
	State County
	Pronunciation, if not obvious *(use Webster's Dictionary symbols)*

Location of Feature

Latitude _____ ° _____ ' _____ " N.

Longitude _____ ° _____ ' _____ " W.

Section(s) _____ , T. _____ , R. _____ , _____ Meridian

Description and extent of feature:

Distance and direction from prominent features or towns:

Basis of knowledge that the feature is unnamed:

Reason for Choice of Name:

☐ descriptive   ☐ other *(state reason):*

☐ for a nearby feature

☐ for a person

If the name is descriptive, state why it is appropriate:

If named for another feature, state for that other feature:

1. Name _____ Lat. _____ ° _____ ' _____ " N. -- Long. _____ ° _____ ' _____ " W.

   Section(s) _____ , T. _____ , R. _____ , _____ Meridian

2. Any known variant spellings or other names:

3. Number of years known by present name:
4. Relation of the two features:

If the name commemorates a person, state:

1. Full name of the person: _____
   (do not propose name of a living person)

2. Date of the person's death: _____

3. Last residence: _____

4. Association, if any, of the person with the feature to be named:

5. Brief biography:

List any Attached Identification Aids	Marked map: Marked photographs: Other:

SUBMITTED BY:

Individual or private organization

Name _____   Date _____
Address _____
        _____

Government agency *(State or Federal)* ☐
                                              Check appropriate box
Field officer of a mapping agency ☐

Agency _____   Date _____
Name and title _____
Address _____
        _____

10228

FORM FOR DOMESTIC GEOGRAPHIC NAME REPORT

Form 9-1343 (Apr. 1967)

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES WASHINGTON, D.C. 20242 DOMESTIC GEOGRAPHIC NAME REPORT	Controversial name	Recommended name
	Name change	State
	Changed application	County
	Other	

Lat._____°_____'_____" N,   Long._____°_____'_____" W,   Mouth   End   Center   (Circle one)

Lat._____°_____'_____" N,   Long._____°_____'_____" W,   Heading   End   (Circle one)

Description of feature: where appropriate, give shape, length, width, direction of flow or trend, direction and distance of extremities from points with established names, and section, township, range, meridian where useful, also elevation if known.

Published Maps Using Recommended Name (Map name, date, agency, & scale)	Variant Name or Application	Map or Source Using Variant (Map name, date, agency, & scale)

Available information as to origin, spelling, and meaning of the recommended name and/or statement concerning nature of difference in usage or application:

AUTHORITY FOR RECOMMENDED NAME	MAILING ADDRESS	OCCUPATION

Submitted by:

Name _____   Title _____   Date _____

Agency _____   Address _____

Person who prepared this copy if other than above: _____   Date _____

Name _____   Title _____

This form should be used to provide supporting information on domestic geographical name problems. A full statement covering the field investigation of each name is necessary so that adequate evidence may be submitted in proper form to the Board on Geographic Names for decision. Names should be reported if they fall in one of the following categories:

Names that have more than one local spelling;

Names where local spelling differs from that shown on previously published maps or reports;

Conflicting name usage due to change in property ownership;

Conflicting published names or application; New or proposed name for features previously unnamed (use BGN form 9-1344).

Established names in local use, even if previously unpublished, are not considered new names. If spelling, application and extent of use are undisputed, a name may be accepted for publication without submitting it to the Board on Geographic Names for approval.

This form is furnished in triplicate. Geological Survey offices should submit first two copies through appropriate channels to Geographic Names Section, Topographic Division. Other government agencies submit in accordance with established agency procedures.

Private individuals or non-Federal agencies, submit original only to Executive Secretary for Domestic Geographic Names, United States Geological Survey, Room 1040 GS Building, Washington, D.C. 20242.

Annex III
EXCERPTS FROM EXECUTIVE ORDERS

The purpose, jurisdiction, and duties of the Board on Geographic Names and its predecessor agencies have been defined by Executive Orders and legislation. Executive Order No. 27-A of September 4, 1890, signed by Benjamin Harrison, stated:

" ... it is desirable that uniform usage in regard to geographic nomenclature and orthography obtain throughout the Executive Departments of the Government, and particularly upon maps and charts issued by the various departments and bureaus, ... "

and that the jurisdiction of the Board includes:

" ... all unsettled questions concerning geographic names which arise in the departments, ... "

and the duties of the departments relative to the Board are that:

"Department officers are instructed to afford such assistance as may be proper to carry on the work of this board."

Executive Order No. 399 of January 23, 1906, specified that the responsibility of the Board included:

" ...all cases of disputed nomenclature, ..."

and

" ... the duty of determining, changing, and fixing place names within the United States and insular possessions, ... "

and the approval before publication of

" ... all names hereafter suggested for any place by any officer or employee of the Government ... "

It is also stated that:

" ... the decisions of the board are to be accepted by the departments of Government as the standard authority."

Executive Order No. 6247 of August 10, 1933, stated:

"The spelling of geographic names [in Executive Orders and proclamations] shall conform to the most recent decisions of the United States Geographic Board ... "

Executive Order No. 6680 of April 17, 1934, abolished the independent U.S. Geographic Board and transferred its functions to the Department of the Interior.

Public Law 242, passed by the 80th Congress on July 25, 1947, established the present Board on Geographic Names.

EXTRACTS FROM THE REPERTORY OF TECHNICAL RESOLUTIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL HYDROGRAPHIC BUREAU (IHB)

Paper presented by the International Hydrographic Bureau*

The subject of standardizing geographical names on an international basis is of great interest to the International Hydrographic Bureau, which has been dealing with some of the problems involved for some years in accordance with its basic mission of encouraging and promoting the standardization of nautical charts and related publications.

With the thought that the work accomplished to date by IHB in this respect could be of some assistance to the delegates as background information (particularly for nations which are not yet member States of IHB), the approved resolutions bearing on the subject, extracted from the *Repertory of Technical Resolutions, 1919–1965,* of IHB, are reproduced below.

A14. *Uniform policy for handling geographic names*

1. With the purpose of obtaining approximate uniformity in the geographic names appearing on the nautical documents of maritime countries, it is recommended that each national hydrographic office:

(*a*) On its charts and other nautical documents of its own coasts, show names that are in exact agreement with the forms prescribed by the most authoritative source.

Each country will thus provide complete and authoritative name coverage in its own official script, whether Roman or non-Roman, for the use of all other national hydrographic offices that issue charts on various scales, and other nautical documents, for the same area.

(*b*) On its charts and other nautical documents of foreign coasts where the Roman alphabet is officially used by the sovereign country, show names that are in exact agreement with the most authoritative usage of the country having some sovereignty.

It is anticipated that these names may eventually be obtained directly from new and revised editions of the nautical charts and other documents of the country having sovereignty.

(*c*) On its charts and other nautical documents of foreign coasts where the script of the sovereign country is other than the Roman alphabet, show names that are obtained by applying its own authorized transcription system to the names appearing on the most authoritative sources of the country having sovereignty.

Note. Among countries where the Roman alphabet is official, international uniformity in transcription systems would be advantageous to the several national Governments. It is accordingly recommended that national hydrographic offices place before their Governments the desirability of obtaining uniformity and urge

the formulation and adoption of an effective agreement (see also A16).

(*d*) On its charts and other nautical documents of all foreign coasts, use for the generic part of complex geographic names the word (in its Roman alphabet form) used by the country having sovereignty. Example: "Falsterborev."

By following this practice, the geographic generic term will not be translated but will appear (in its Roman-alphabet form) on the charts of all nations.

(*e*) On all its charts and other nautical documents, apply its conventional national usage to names of countries, major territorial divisions and boundary features, and to the oceans and international sub-divisions thereof.

II. It is resolved that when the names referred to in para. I(*b*) are not adopted, they shall at any rate be inscribed between brackets after the place name used.

A15. *Type to be used for geographic names*

It is resolved that geographic names shall, as far as possible, be distinguished in Sailing Directions by the type and size of the print. The country which issues the original directions will thus itself indicate what should and what should not be translated.

A16. *Transliteration in Roman characters of geographic names*

With a view to facilitating as far as possible the transcription of geographic names, it is recommended that those countries which do not use Roman characters insert, in the alphabetical indexes of their Sailing Directions, a transliteration in Roman characters of those geographic names which refer to their own coasts.

The transliteration should be made in accordance with the official system of the country concerned.

A17. *Alphabetical indexes of geographic names*

I. It is recommended that those countries which do not include alphabetical indexes of geographic names in their Sailing Directions publish an alphabetical list of geographic names which concern their own coasts.
These names should be written according to the official orthography and should be accompanied by the corresponding geographic positions and the numbers of the charts on which they appear.

II. It is recommended that those countries which use a non-Roman alphabet add in brackets a transliteration of the name in Roman characters.
The transliteration should be made in accordance with the official system of the country concerned.

AGENDA ITEM 10

Geographical terms[1]: (a) generic terms; (b) categories; (c) glossaries[2]; (d) symbolization

AN INTERNATIONAL GLOSSARY OF LOCAL GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

Paper presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics[3]

Local, or popular geographical terms are at present being extensively studied by the linguist and the geographer. This is no accident. Geographical terms carry wide information of both a linguistic and a geographical nature that cannot be ignored by the cartographer who systematizes geographical proper names. The popular term often reveals the meaning of a geographical name.

The natural environment and the economic orientation of a country determine its geographical terminology. The Slavs, for example, have a detailed "swamp" terminology; the Turkic-Mongolian peoples have a host of terms to classify pastures or elements of micro-relief that are of importance to nomadic tribes which have to find their way on plains; desert dwellers, who normally suffer from shortage of fresh water, have a detailed terminology for water sources. According to R. Capot-Rey, they have some twenty words to designate different kinds of wells.

Nations with a well-developed irrigated agriculture have a detailed irrigation terminology, e.g. in the ancient agricultural oases of Central Asia, even in places where a Turkic-speaking population prevails, the terms connected with irrigated farming are mainly inherited from the Iranian languages.

The changing of natural conditions, landscapes and economic systems may affect the meaning of a geographical term to such an extent that one and the same term may acquire opposite meanings in two neighbouring districts; for example, it may mean either a swamp or an upland place in a marshy area, so that one and the same term indicates both a positive and a negative form of relief. The meaning of a geographical term may undergo change even in the same language; and the knowledge of its narrow local meaning will enable us to understand better the original meaning of a geographical name as a whole, the folk term being often a component of it.

It is common knowledge that the words "forest" and "mountain" are synonyms in the Slavic languages, while the words "*taiga*" and "woodless mountains" are synonyms in the Turkic languages. The mountain names "Schwarzwald", "Türinger Wald", "Bayrischer Wald" in Germany contain the term "*Wald*", the meaning of which does not correspond to the nature of the feature. The point is that

these lexical synonyms have been brought into existence by geographical conditions and natural features.

Many geographical names were originally generic terms. Their behaviour in various languages differs. In some Indo-European languages the connexion between the name and the term is much weaker than in the Finno-Ugrian, Mongolian and Tungus-Manchurian languages, where the overwhelming majority of toponyms include generic terms. In a number of cases, local terms themselves have turned into proper names. The part played by geographical terminology in determining various categories of names—hydronyms, oronyms, names of populated places—differs from one area to another. In Byelorussia, for example, local generic terms enter into only 10 per cent of the hydronyms and 60 per cent of the names of towns, villages, farmsteads etc. Might the reason for the discrepancy lie in the remoteness of some and the nearness of others? In the course of time, the geographical term may be dropped (e.g. Москва instead of Москва-река, or Вахш, Дарьёи Вахш); where река and Дарьёи mean "river"; Архангельск instead of Архангелогородок, where городок means "town". Elliptical names of this kind occur more often than we realize. Or again, a term may lose its own meaning and become a toponymic suffix.

Many but not all toponymic suffixes are modified generic terms whose meaning has been forgotten but may sometimes be rediscovered through etymological investigation. We may say with a considerable degree of certainty that the frequent repetition of a toponymic suffix in the names of identical features speaks of its having originally been a word in current use. Moreover, in modern geographical terminology there are forms intermediate between generic terms and suffixes. The local population in Kirghizia is not aware that "*kol*" in hydronyms (e.g. "Karakol", "Ulakol" etc.) is a generic term meaning "river" which has become a toponymic suffix. But in Central Asia, where people speak Mongolian, the local term "gol" is widely used for "river". This illustrates the existence of intermediate links between generic term and suffix.

Local geographical terms fall into two categories: generic terms designating landscapes, great relief features and hydrographic features, such as plains, forests, rivers, lakes, swamps, mountains, ranges, highlands, and specific geographic terms which are narrower in meaning, designating types of landscapes but not their zonal structure. To the latter category may be referred the Slavic "*bor*" (a pine forest on a sandy soil), or "*golets*" (a bald mountain peak beyond the forest boundary); the Turkic "*sirt*" (a flat highland); the Mongolian "*gobi*" (a desert terrain);

---

[1] For comments by France on this item, see above, agenda item 9.

[2] Copies of a paper by M.F. Burrill and E. Bonsack, Jr. on the use and preparation of specialized glossaries, submitted under this sub-item, are available on request from the Division of Geography, Army Map Service, Department of Defence, Washington, D. C., United States of America.

[3] The original text of this paper, prepared by E.M. Murzaev, Geographical Institute, USSR Academy of Sciences, appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.50.

the Iranian "*dasht*" (an open, or desert plain); the Arabic " '*ain* " (a spring; the original meaning was "eye") etc.

Among specific geographical terms a special group consists of those confined to certain areas and not used anywhere else. The collection, systematization and comparative investigation of these terms is of the greatest importance to the toponymist. As a rule, comparative linguistic analysis makes it possible to disclose kindred forms and archetypes showing the ancient linguistic ties between the contemporary populations which have retained these terms, and their remote ancestors.

The fascinating task of tracing the primary meaning of the simplest geographical term requires a thorough investigation of the mass of toponymic material. Might we equate the Hindi term "*ganga*", the Indochinese "*kong*" the southern Chinese "*kiang*", the Korean "*kang*", all of which mean "river", with the "*kan*" of southern Siberia which originally meant the same?

In some cases the areas of geographical terms are surprisingly large and do not coincide with contemporary linguistic boundaries. Although they appear to be semantically clear and phonetically close, such apparent affinity of terms should not be taken for granted. We are gradually accumulating more data that indisputably prove the affinity of language areas and demonstrate the striking vitality of terms and the historical and geographical relationships of ancient times throughout the vast territories of Eurasia. Examples are numerous: the Chinese "*shan*" (mountain) used throughout the area extending from south-eastern China and Japan as far as Kirghizia and Karakhstan; the term "*gora*" (mountain) and its variants "*gar*", "*gara*", used in the areas extending from Siberia throughout eastern Europe and the Persian-speaking countries as far as the Arab countries and the Sahara, as well as the above-mentioned hydronymic term "*ganga*" or "*kang*",

Thus local geographical terms are in themselves of the greatest interest for scientific investigation. It is therefore imperative that they should be collected and systematized. An exchange of information on the progress of this research work in different countries would be most welcome. At present we can mention a number of works which are either entirely devoted to the analysis of geographical terminology or are glossaries of such terms, among them: *A Glossary of Geographical and Topographical Terms*, by Alexander Knox (London, 1904); *Les termes de géographie*, by Lucien Hochsteyn (Paris, 1906). To my knowledge, these were the first great works aimed at showing the original meaning of geographical terms and the qualifying terms which most frequently enter geographical names. The latest is *A Glossary of Geographical Terms* (New York, 1962), compiled by a group of specialists under the supervision of L. Dudley Stamp. This glossary contains local, popular, as well as scientific terms. Among regional works we may cite the splendid *Glossaire des principaux termes géographiques et hydrogéologiques sahariens* (Algeria, 1963), compiled under the supervision of R. Capot-Rey. The Slavic geographical nomenclature is well defined too. In 1921, K. Moszynski's "Notes on Slavic topographical and physiographical terminology based on Byelorussian-Polish material", was published in Poland. A well-known work on Serbo-Croatian terminology is *Die geographische Terminologie des Serbokroatischen*

(Berlin, 1967), by J. Schütz. Polish terms have been collected by P. Nitsche in his *Geographische Terminologie des Polnischen* (Cologne, 1964). Specialists in Cracow have determined the Carpathian terminology (T. Golebiowska, 1964; S. Hrabes, 1950; L. Stieber, 1934). The list might be continued.

In recent years, the Soviet Union, too, has issued a number of works on geographical terminology. Among them are works on Kazakhstan by G. K. Konkashpaev (1951) and A. S. Titova (1960); F. K. Komarov's works on Yakutia (1964) and on Siberia and the Far East (1967); the work on western Siberia by A. P. Dulzon and his students (the Tomsk Pedagogical Institute); the work on eastern Siberia by M. N. Melkheev (1958) and T. A. Marusenko's work on Ukrainian terminology (1967). In 1959 there appeared *A Glossary of Local Geographic Terms* by E. M. Murzaev and V. G. Murzaeva in which the authors attempted to show clearly the wealth and variety of geographical terms in the Soviet Union. A number of works are ready for publication. We should like to mention the study on Iran geographical terminology by V. I. Savina, and on Slavic geographical terminology by N. I. Tolstoy. A. K. Matveev and his students (Urals University) have collected the local geographical terms of the northern European part of the Soviet Union and the Urals, most of which belong to the Finno-Ugrian languages. Glossaries of geographical terms, and words that enter geographical names most frequently, of the Komi ASSR (by A. V. Beliaeva), of the Gorno-Altai autonomous region (by Ju. I. Bochenkova), of the Buryat ASSR (by G. G. Kuzmina), of the Nenets and the Yamalo-Nenets national districts (by A. P. Aleksa), of the Khanty-Mansy national district (by Rosova L. I.), of the Khakass ASSR (by M. B. Volostnova and E. N. Busheva), of the Tuvinian ASSR (by M. B. Volostnova and S. A. Tyurin) and of the Chukot and the Koryak national districts (by F. K. Komarov) are almost ready for publication.

An extensive file of geographical terms throughout the territory of the Soviet Union is collected by the Department of Geographical Names under the Chief Administration of Geodesy and Cartography of the USSR.

The time has come to join the efforts of the scientists studying geographical terms and to compile a comprehensive world glossary of such terms. It would be desirable if the permanent committee of experts on geographical names of the United Nations began preparing such a glossary. An editorial board might be elected at the present Conference. The duties of such a board would be, first and foremost, to work out a programme, to distribute work among the countries which are participants in the Conference and to set a size of page limit with the area of a territory and the number of languages spoken in the territory taken into account.

Such a glossary might be issued in the official languages of the United Nations.

The collection of all necessary material would probably take two or three years, and another two years would probably be needed to compile all the material in one or two volumes, to render it into other languages and to publish it; so that the work might be completed within five years.

TECHNICAL TERMS

Paper presented by France*

agglomération (populated place). An inhabited place; a town and its environs.

alphabet (alphabet). In a general sense, any system of written symbols used for writing a language. More particularly, the term is reserved for systems in which phonetic symbols are used to represent sounds and, even more particularly, for alphabetical writing proper as distinct from syllabic writing.

appellatif, synonym of *terme générique* (generic term).

désignation (designation). A common noun indicating the nature of the object that has been given a geographical name.

détail dû à l'homme (cultural feature). Object on the surface of the earth modified or made by man.

détail hydrographique (hydrographic feature). Any object in the form of running or standing water or of ice or snow that has been given a particular name, which may be a proper name or a generic term or both at the same time.

détail topographique (natural feature). Object on the surface of the earth that is more or less outstanding and has been given a particular name, which may be a proper name or a generic term or both at the same time.

dialecte (dialect). Particular form assumed by a language in a given area. A dialect is distinguished by an aggregate of individual characteristics which, taken together, give the impression of a way of speaking that is different from the speech of neighbouring areas despite the relationship which unites them.

dictionnaire (dictionary). Exhaustive alphabetical compilation of the words used in a language giving their various meanings.

dictionnaire géographique (geographical dictionary). A collection of geographical names that is more complete than a gazetteer because it provides geographical, economic, demographic and other information.

écriture (writing). Representation of thought and the spoken word by visible signs. A distinction may be made between ideographic writing, syllabic writing and alphabetical writing. In a special sense, phonetic writing is the name given to a system of transcription devised by phoneticians for the purpose of representing pronunciation as accurately as possible independently of the alphabets actually in use.

glossaire (glossary). A collection of words usually confined to a specialized subject or to a given dialect or patois.

graphie (spelling). Mode of representing the spoken word in writing or an element in such representation. The usual or historical spelling is influenced by a tendency to conserve the older spelling even when it no longer corresponds to the pronunciation or by a desire to preserve some connexion with the origin of the word (etymological spelling).

homonyme (homonym). Said of words pronounced the same but having different meanings.

hydronyme. Place name referring to a hydrographic feature.

idéogramme (ideogram). Symbol representing an idea which is used in ideographic writing.

idiome (idiom). General term used in reference to a language regarded as belonging to a particular community.

index alphabétique (name index). An alphabetical list of the names mentioned in a work, indicating the page or the article where they appear.

langue minoritaire (minority language). In a country where more than one language is spoken, that language which has only a limited sphere of influence.

langue nationale (national language). Language spoken throughout all or most of a country.

langue officielle (official language). Any language recognized at the national level and required by the government to be used in legislative, judicial and other official or similar documents. Some countries admit two or more languages as official languages.

langue principale (principal language). In a country where more than one language is used, the language which has the broadest sphere of influence.

langue véhiculaire (vehicular language). Language used in commercial and other relations by people who cannot communicate with one another when each uses his own idiom. Examples: English in India, French in Africa.

langue vernaculaire (vernacular language). Language peculiar to a country. Synonym: native language.

lettre modifiée (modified letter). Letter of the ordinary alphabet embodying an additional symbol which modifies its phonetic value.

lexique (lexicon). Collection of the linguistic symbols of a given language.

lieudit (named place). In general, a place which has been given a particular name. This term is most often reserved for uninhabited places.

mention cartographique (map information). Information on a map relating to something in the area represented or to a characteristic of that area. Serving merely to assist the map user, it is not used by the inhabitants of the area to identify any particular place.

nomenclature (gazetteer). A list of geographical names identifying the nature and location of the things named. Gazetteers are arranged in alphabetical order.

nom géographique (geographical name). A proper name, consisting of one or more words, used to designate an individual geographical object.

nom traditionnel (traditional name). Name which has become established by use over a long period of time, most often in a spontaneous manner.

normalisation (standardization). The process whereby the authorized (national or international) agency fixes the form of geographical names on behalf of the users thereof.

objet géographique (geographical object). Something of greater or lesser importance on the face of the earth which has been given a particular name, viz., a geographical name.

119

onomastique (onomastics). Derived from the Greek "*onoma*" (name), this term designates either the system of proper names of a language or a given area or the study of that system. Anthroponymy and toponymy are branches of onomastics.

oronyme. Place name referring to a more or less outstanding relief feature.

parler (speech). The aggregate of the means of expression used by a group within a language area. Local speech: the speech of a particular district.

patois. Ordinarily used to designate the varieties of local speech used by a population group belonging to a civilization less advanced than that represented by the language employed by the surrounding population.

phonème (phoneme). Minimum unit resulting from the analysis of articulate speech and defined in relation, on the one hand, to the position of the organs of speech and, on the other, to the resulting auditory impression.

phonétique (phonetics). Study of the constituent phonemes of articulate speech.

points-voyelles (vowel points). In certain Semitic writing systems, diacritical marks added to the alphabetical symbols to represent the vowels.

présentation typographique (printing form). The manner in which the letters of a place name are selected and put together (upper-case or lower-case letters and so on) in printing.

signe diacritique (diacritical mark). Any conventional mark added to an ordinary letter which modifies its customary phonetic value.

synonyme (synonym). One of two or more words having similar meanings.

système d'écriture (writing system). Any method of writing governed by precise rules.

système d'écriture syllabique (syllabic writing system). A writing system using symbols corresponding to syllables, for example, *kana* in Japanese.

terme générique (generic term). Term proper to a class, category or species and not to an individual or a particular object. A geographical generic term forming part of a place name denotes the nature of the object represented by that name. Synonym: *appellatif*.

terme spécifique (specific term). Word constituting a geographical name and, by its uniqueness, enabling the designated object to be identified. Synonym: proper name.

tilde. Word borrowed from Spanish designating a horizontal mark that is placed above a character and gives it a particular pronunciation.

toponyme (toponym). Etymological meaning: place name. A very general term. Name given to a portion of the earth by the inhabitants of an area, either spontaneously or intentionally.

toponymie (toponomy). Onomastics or study of the place names of a given area or in a given language.

transcription (transcription). Procedure for the graphic adaptation to a given language of a word from another language on the basis of its pronunciation. Transcription may be effected with the aid of a traditional alphabet or of a special system of notation often referred to as a phonetic notation.

translittération (transliteration). Transcription consisting merely of the letter-for-letter transfer of a foreign alphabet with the aid of the equivalents of the written symbols, without regard to how the sounds are really pronounced.

Umlaut. German word often used to denote the change in timbre of a vowel under the influence of a neighbouring phoneme.

vocabulaire (vocabulary). The stock of words of a language or of words peculiar to a group of persons.

CODE OF ABBREVIATED DESIGNATIONS OF THE PRINCIPAL NATURAL FEATURES CURRENTLY APPEARING ON THE OFFICIAL MAPS OF LEBANON

Paper presented by Lebanon*

Abbreviation	Designation (in Arabic)	French	English	Abbreviation	Designation (in Arabic)	French	English
A	Aïn	source	spring	Kh^b	Kharab	ruines	ruins
B	Bïr	puits	well	Kh	Khirbé(t)	ruine	ruin
B^é, B^{ct}	Birké, Birket	mare, étang, bassin	basin	M^{aa}	Mazraa	ferme	farm
B^j	Borj	tour	tower	N	Nabaa	source importante	main spring
B^t	Beit	maison	house	N^r	Nahr	rivière	river
D	Dahr	croupe dos, dessus	mound	O^{di}	Ouadi	vallée	valley
				Q^r	Qasr	citadelle	castle
D^r	Deïr	couvent	monastery	Q^{ba}	Qoubba	dôme	dome
Jal	Jabal	montagne	mountain	R	Ras	cap	cape
J	Joubb	puits profond non cimenté	well	Rej	Rejm	tas de pierres	cairn
				S^q	Soûq	marché	market
				Tah.	Tahoûn (et)	moulin	mill
				T.^{l}	Tall	colline	hill

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.76.

ICAO STANDARDIZATION PRACTICES

Paper presented by the International Civil Aviation Organization*

The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO)

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.43.

is vitally interested in the work of the present Conference, primarily because of its aeronautical charting programme. It is interested in the designation of locations where

various facilities or services for international air navigation are to be made available, and in the use of a shortened form of names of geographical features to facilitate communications and automatic data processing. The ICAO regulatory material relevant to this matter is given in the annex below. The general rule is that, in charts and publications prepared by States for use in international aircraft operations, names of places and geographical features are to be spelled in the form officially used by the country concerned and transliterated where necessary into the Roman alphabet. In ICAO's own publications, this transliteration is based on the usage of the working language in which ICAO communicates with the individual State concerned.

As far as ICAO is concerned, the particular system or method to be recommended by the Conference in respect of geographical names is not of prime importance as long as uniformity is achieved. However, there is one matter on which it is desired that some special action be taken by the Conference in the interests of simplified map construction and interpretation, and that is the development of standard abbreviations for natural and cultural features, such as cape, mountain, cliff, river, sand dune, dam, pipeline etc. for use on charts. Here again, ICAO's primary interest in standardization is the ultimate product and it appears unnecessary for us to take part in the work or formulation. If, however, some special committee or other organ is set up to perform this particular task, then this organization is prepared to assist by providing at least a list of terms which are of particular importance in the aeronautical field.

Annex
EXTRACTS FROM ICAO DOCUMENTS RELATING TO UNIFORMITY IN THE USE OF PLACE NAMES AND IN THE FORMULATION OF ABBREVIATIONS

A. *International Standards and Recommended Practices for Aeronautical Charts—Annex 4 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation*

· · ·

"2.7. Spelling of geographical names.

"2.7.1. Roman script shall be used for all writing.

"2.7.2. The names of places and geographical features in countries which officially use varieties of the Roman alphabet shall be accepted in their official spelling, including the accents and diacritical marks used in the respective alphabets.

"2.7.3. Where geographical terms such as "cape", "point", "gulf" "river", are abbreviated on any particular chart, that word shall be spelled out in full in the language used by the publishing agency, in respect of the most important example of each type. Punctuation marks shall not be used in abbreviations within the body of a chart.

"2.7.4. *Recommendation.* In areas where Romanized names have not been officially produced or adopted, and outside the territory of contracting States, names should be transliterated from the non-Roman alphabet form by the system generally used by the producing agency."

International Standards and Recommended Practices for Aeronautical Information Services—Annex 15 to the Convention on International Civil Aviation.

· · ·

"3.4.2. Place names shall be spelled in conformity with local usage, transliterated, when necessary, in the Latin alphabet."

Procedures for Air Navigation Services—ICAO Abbreviations and Codes (Doc. 8400) (para. 2, Foreword)

"The principles applied in the formulation of ICAO abbreviations are:

(*a*) That allocation of more than one signification to a single abbreviation should be avoided except where it can be reasonably determined that no instances of misinterpretation would arise;

(*b*) That allocation of more than one abbreviation to the same signification should be avoided even though a different use is prescribed;

(*c*) That abbreviations should make use of the root word or words and should be derived from words common to the three working languages except that, where it is impracticable to apply this principle to best advantage, the abbreviation should follow the English text;

(*d*) That the use of a singular or plural form for the signification of an abbreviation should be selected on the basis of the more common use;

(*e*) That an abbreviation may represent grammatical variants of the basic signification where such application can be made without risk of confusion and the desired grammatical form can be determined from the context of the message.

"With respect to the latter principle, several variants are given for a number of abbreviations where it might not be obvious that the variant is appropriate or acceptable."

AGENDA ITEM 11

Writing systems[1] (a) Transfer of names from one writing system to another: (i) into Roman;[2] (ii) into other writing systems; (b) Writing of names from unwritten languages

TRANSPOSITION OF NAMES FROM THE THAI WRITING SYSTEM TO THE ROMAN SYSTEM

Paper presented by Thailand[3]

The standardization and Romanization of geographical names in Thailand is the responsibility of the Royal Institute, which has a special committee which determines the proper Thai spelling and its Romanization in accordance with the official transcription rules.

The transcription of Thai geographical names into Roman characters is intended to enable foreigners to pronounce the names as closely as possible to the Thai sound. The rules of transcription have been promulgated in the *Royal Gazette*, volume 56, part 2, section 85, BE2482 (1939 AD).[1]

Thai official transcription rules are intended to provide standardized Roman spellings for Thai geographical names. To facilitate lettering of Roman characters on the maps and to avoid confusion with the map symbols, the mark representing Thai tones have been omitted. This seems to be in accordance with a recommendation of the report of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names;[4] however, the exact pronunciation cannot be indicated by the application of the rules, for the following reasons:

Spoken Thai is tonal, and tonal marks are not used;

Thai characters for vowels, both long and short, are transcribed with the same Roman character;

Certain sounds of the Thai language are not found in the Roman alphabet and substitutions have to be made.

Various government agencies, primarily the Royal Thai Survey Department and the National Statistical Office, apply these rules for the Romanization of Thai names. But the application of the official rules has not always achieved standardized spellings. Furthermore, non-government publications such as newspapers and books contain spellings derived independently of the official system.

Some of the reasons for the great number of Romanized variants of Thai names are:

The official rules have not had sufficient publicity and use throughout all agencies of the Government and are unknown or ignored in public media;

Application of the official transcription rules is difficult because they are very brief and do not cover all necessary points, such as word separations capitalization and hyphenation; thus application by different personnel and agencies has often produced different results;

Some government agencies derive Romanization by self-determination without consulting the official transcription rules.

At the present time, many agencies, both governmental and non-governmental, are making great efforts to standardize Thai spellings and their Romanization. The names of the second-order administrative divisions, namely, the seventy-one *changwats*, 550 *amphoes* and *king amphoes*, are among the first groups which have been reviewed by the Royal Institute, and the names standards adopted by the committee have been approved by the Royal Thai Government. These will be published for official use.

Apart from the official transcription rules, we should draw attention to a paper entitled "Romanization guide for Thai script: according to the official system of the Royal Institute", prepared by the Stanford Research Institute, which is working on a project entitled "Village information system—Thailand", under a co-operative arrangement between the Governments of Thailand and the United States of America. It is an adaptation of the tables and an elaboration of the rules given in the Royal Institute's publication, "Notification of Thai characters into Roman" (Bangkok, October 1954), and in the Royal Thai Survey Department's report to the Secretary-General on international co-operation in the standardization of geographical names. This paper is very helpful to those who are learning the system, and can read Thai script.

Annex

STANDARD METHOD OF TRANSLITERATION OF THAI GEOGRAPHIC NAMES INTO ROMAN

1. Transliteration of Thai into Roman constituting a transcription of pronunciation will be used according to the notification of the Royal Institute as proclaimed in the *Royal Gazette* vol. 56, section 85, but for cartographic purposes consonant markings could be omitted and combined vowels separated.

2. After omission of markings and separation of vowels mentioned above, corresponding Roman and Thai characters will be as shown in the appendices.

3. Geographical names will be transliterated into Roman individually according to their pronunciation, except those which would be meaningless, or have a different meaning, unless combined, for example:

"Chorakhe" (crocodile) must not be divided into "Cho Ra Khe", which is meaningless;

---

[1] For specifications on the spelling, transliteration and transcription of names on IMW sheets, see *United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale*, vol. 2 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 63.I.20). (For comments by Cyprus on this item, see above, agenda item 9.)

[2] Copies of the *Romanization Guide, 1967*, submitted under this sub-item by the United States of America, are available on request from the United States Board on Geographic Names, Washington, D.C.

[3] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.20.

[4] See annex, p. 151.

"Samphao" (junk) must not be divided into "Sam Phao", which is meaningless;

"Khangkhao" (bat) must not be divided into "Khang Khao", which has a different meaning.

4. Names which are combinations of words and the last consonants of words pronounced should be transliterated as single words to retain their original pronunciations and forms, for example: "Ratchakhram" is transcribed from the Thai words which, without the above notation, would be "rat khram"; "Aranyaprathet" is transcribed instead of "Aran Prathet".

5. Names comprising many syllables, of which the last and the first character of the first and second syllable respectively are vowels should be separated by a hyphen, for example, "Saing" is written "Sa-ing".

6. Foreign names in Thai territory, such as the Malayan words for island ("pulo") or point ("tanyong"), should be changed into Thai. The Ministry of the Interior will issue a notice to this effect, but exceptions will be made for well-known names by also writing these names in parentheses. Common nouns of foreign names outside Thai territory will be translated into Thai prior to the writing of those names in Thai, but Romanization will follow English usage.

7. The words "changwat", "amphoe" and "tambon" may be omitted.

8. Proper nouns in other languages which appear in the list of communities of the Ministry of the Interior shall be accepted without translation into Thai, because they are proper names.

9. All kinds of water courses, either artificial or natural, shall be called "khlong".

10. The following rules shall be observed in the transliteration of geographical names:

Thai names pertaining to geographical features such as mountain ("Khao"), island ("Ko"), river ("Mae Nam") shall be transliterated into Roman without translation into English; for example, "Khao Bo Thong" (Bo Thong Mountain), "Ko Yung" (Yung Island);

Thai names which are clearly identified, such as road ("Thanon"), monastery ("Wat"), shall be transliterated without translation into English; for example, "Thanon Maha Rat" (Maha Rat Road), "Wat Maha That" (Maha That Monastery);

Only proper nouns of Thai names not pertaining to geographical features and not self-explanatory shall be transliterated into Roman, but the common nouns shall be translated into English; for example, "Hua Lamphong Station". Exception shall be made for names of governmental organizations, which will be translated into English directly, such as, "Customs House", "Post Office", "Hydrographic Department" etc.

Names of private organizations or geographical names shall be adopted without any modification, e.g. "East Asiatic Co. Ltd.", "Hin Loftus" etc.

Appendix i
VOWELS

(Italian vowels except that "ae" has the sound of "ea" in English "bear", "oe" has the sound of "eu" in French "peuple")

Thai	Roman
อะ อ อา	a
อำ	am
อิ อี	i
อึ อื ุ ู	u
เอะ เอ เอ	e
แอะ แอ	ae
โอะ อ(—) โอ เอาะ ออ	o
เออะ เอ เออ—เอ	oe
เอียะ เอีย	ia
เอือะ เอือ อัวะ อัว	ua
ไอ ใอ อัย ไอย อาย	ai
เอา อาว	ao
ุย	ui
เอย ออย	oi
เอย	oei
เอือย อวย	uai
อิว	iu
เอ็ว เอว	eo
แอว	aeo
เอียว	ieo
ฤ (เสียง ริ) ฤๅ	ru
ฤ (เสียง ริ)	ri
ฤ (เสียง เรอ)	ree
ฦ ฦๅ	lu

Appendix II
CONSONANTS

(English consonants except that initial "k", "p" and "t" are unaspirated as in French. Final "k", "p" and "t" are unexplosive and unaspirated.

"kh" = "k" aspirated.
"ph" = "p" aspirated (not English "ph").
"th" = "t" aspirated (not English "th").
"ch" = hardened form of "ch", as the "cz" in "Czech" and always as in "church"
"ng", as in "singer" (never as in "linger").

Thai	Initial Consonants	Final Consonants
ก	k	k
ข ฃ ค ฅ ฆ	kh	k
ง	ng	ng
จ ฉ ช ฌ	ch	t
ญ	y	n
ฎ ฏ ฑ (บางคำ)	d	t
ฏ ฐ	t	t
ฑ ฒ ถ ท ธ	th	t
ณ น	n	n
บ	b	p
ป	p	p
ผ พ ภ	ph	p
ฝ ฟ	f	p
ม	m	m
ย	y	—
ร	r	n
ล ฬ	l	n
ว	w	—
ซ ศ ษ ส	s	t
ห ฮ	h	—

PROPOSAL ON THE TRANSLITERATION AND TRANSCRIPTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Paper presented by the Federal Republic of Germany[1]

It is recommended that geographical names in non-Roman alphabets or characters in all cases be transliterated into the Roman alphabet. This is felt to be in the best interest of international usage and scientific research. For the purpose of international understanding, it will be necessary for all countries to agree to the use of a single standard transliteration system for converting non-Roman alphabets or characters into the Roman alphabets. Further, it should be a transliteration system that is used not only for geographical names but also in all other fields. For this reason, the Ständiger Ausschuss für geographische Namen (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names) has adopted the transliteration system developed by the

International Organization for Standardization (ISO), which is now used in the fields of library science and technical research. (cf. *Duden—Wörterbuch geographischer Namen*, preface, pp. XXII–XXXI, for the applied transliteration-transcription systems.)

The delegation of the Federal Republic of Germany feels that the development of different transliteration systems should, if possible, be avoided for nationally or areally localized writing systems and for separate fields of science and technology. In both cases, the purposes of a standard international transliteration system readily understandable by and usable for all countries and research fields would be hampered by the creation of differing, localized transliteration systems.

It is therefore proposed that the Conference should recommend the adoption of a single standard international transliteration system for the rendering of non-Roman alphabets and/or characters into the Roman alphabet based on the ISO transliteration system.

It will also be necessary to develop transcription systems for the various language areas. Such transcription systems would be intended for internal use within the various language areas. For the Federal Republic of Germany,

the Duden editorial staff[2] has been working together with philologists (Arabic, Slavic etc.) on transcription keys for various writing systems. So far, transcription keys have been set up for Arabic, Bulgarian, Greek (ancient and modern), Persian and Russian. Keys for other writing systems are presently being developed.

In the case of countries having an ideographic writing system (such as Chinese or Japanese), the use of the official conversion system into the Roman alphabet proposed by those countries is recommended: in Japan, for example, the Romanization system based upon the Kunreisiki method.

In areas where historically established name forms differ from those used under the officially adopted conversion system, the duplication of names will have to be accepted. The historically older form would appear first; for example, in German: "Hwangho", with the Chinese transcription "Huanghe" "Peking", with the Chinese transcription "Beijing".

---

[2] Duden is the officially approved spelling system for the German language used in all schools. In cases where proper spelling forms are in doubt, information is provided by the Duden editorial staff.

METHODS OF TRANSLITERATION

Paper presented by Hungary*

The need to transpose names from other writing systems to one's own according to an approximate translation exists in Hungary and in other countries.

In our opinion, the only feasible method of international standardization would be to use the symbols of the international phonetic alphabet for letter-for-letter substitution of letters. In this manner, the phonetic form may be retained.

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.14.

Another solution may be the transliteration from one language to another. Either one of these practices may be a starting point towards international standardization, although experience may indicate the need for another international alphabet. This practice, of course, does not involve transcription. It may help since identical symbols may be used for different reigning systems. There would be a basic number of symbols corresponding to all of the letters of a specific writing system. Thus the problem of transliteration might be solved if only the selected symbols are used.

ROMAN-LETTER SPELLING OF TOPONYMS FROM OTHER WRITING SYSTEMS

Paper submitted by the United States of America*

The number of toponyms from areas where non-Roman writing systems are used runs into the millions and tens of millions. In fact, for a names authority such as the Board on Geographic Names in the United States, such toponyms represent a major and vital problem. The board must have workable and consistent procedures for deriving Roman-alphabet spellings of names in the Cyrillic Slavic area, Greece, the Arabic-Persian area and much of Asia.

Toponyms from non-Roman alphabets are written in either alphabetic or non-alphabetic writing systems. For each non-alphabetic writing system a transcription system must be worked out, that is, a one-to-one substitution of Roman letter symbols for distinctive sounds or ranges of sounds, or phonemes. For non-Roman alphabets, although transcription systems can be elaborated, the preference is for transliteration systems, that is, one-to-one substitution of Roman-letter symbols for non-Roman letters (graphemes). Thus in transcription we are dealing with sound units, in transliteration with written symbols.

---

* The original text of this paper, prepared by J. G. Mutziger, Office of Geography, Department of the Interior, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.27.

In deciding whether to transcribe or to transliterate toponyms written in a given non-Roman alphabet, the board evaluates each alphabet from the point of view of its efficiency as a writing system for the language concerned.

If the alphabet offers, on the whole, a good analysis of the sounds of the language or languages concerned, as is the case with the various Cyrillic alphabets and the Greek, Arabic, Persian and Amharic alphabets, a transliteration system is worked out. If, on the other hand, a given alphabet is poor in representing the sounds of the language concerned, in that it does not distinguish distinctive sounds, as is true of the Tibetan alphabet and the Mongolian alphabet in use prior to the present Cyrillic Mongolian alphabet, or is marked by the inclusion of symbols for phonetic details no longer present in the language, as with the Tibetan alphabet, a transcription rather than a transliteration system is used.

From the standpoint of the United States Board on Geographic Names, there are general principles to be followed in elaborating a transcription or transliteration system or in evaluating one for adoption.

One and only one Roman-letter symbol or combination of symbols should be used for a given sound or letter in a transcription or transliteration system and not more than one sound or letter should be represented by a given Roman-letter symbol. For transcription systems, this requires an accurate linguistic analysis of the sounds and ranges of distinctive sounds (phonemes), tones, accent patterns and other significant phenomena of a language before a transcription system can be drawn up. For transliteration systems, there is required an arrangement of the letters of the alphabet concerned over against Roman-letter symbols in a manner such that the Roman letters would be those that the user of the transliterated name would naturally associate with those sounds. For the use of English-speaking countries, at least, only after the Roman-letter stock of reasonably appropriate letters is exhausted should one resort to the use of diacritical marks or modified letters.

In general, transcription should not be combined with transliteration. Only confusion would result from the mixture of graphic and phonemic substitutive symbolization, since transcription is the process of substituting (in the Roman-alphabet areas) Roman-letter symbols for the sounds of a given language, whereas transliteration is not concerned in the strictest sense with sounds, but with Roman-letter equivalents of non-Roman letters. Combination of transcription with transliteration and *vice versa* leads to the temptation of levelling out sound distinctions which do not exist in the language of the transcriber. A notable example would be, in a transliteration system for Arabic, transliterating the Arabic velarized (usually called emphatic) consonant *"ḥā'"* in the same way as the nonvelarized consonant *"ha'"*, *"ṣād"* as *"sīn"*, *"ṭā'"* as *"tā'"*, *"ḍād"* as *"dāl"* and *"ẓā'"* as *"zāy"*. Nor should the long-short vowel distinctions of languages such as Arabic, Amharic or Mongolian be neglected in a transcription or transliteration system because they do not occur in the transliterator's language.

Automatic or nondistinctive sound features such as the fixed initial syllable accents in Mongolian should be disregarded in transcription systems. They need not be marked in the transcriptions themselves because their occurrence can be defined for the users of toponyms in general explanations of pronunciation. Likewise, graphic symbols of non-Roman alphabets can be disregarded in transliteration where they are automatically replaceable in transliteration, as initial *"hamzah"* in Arabic, or the "smooth breathing" in Greek. Morphophonemic symbols (symbols which represent now one, now another sound, depending on the phonetic environment), can be resolved

into Roman-letter symbols for the sounds they represent. Thus the *"lām"* of the Arabic definite article can be assimilated to the rules of Arabic, or the "e" in Russian Cyrillic can be transliterated as "ye" and not "e" initially, after vowels, and after the so-called hard and soft consonants.

For transcription and transliteration systems to be used in writing the place names of an area in Roman letters, groups of toponyms should be dealt with area by area. The sound system for the main or nationally official language or dialect of an area should be the basis of transcription and divergent dialects should be disregarded. Otherwise the management of a toponymic programme is likely to become very complex, since a number of sound systems must be analysed instead of only one; moreover, the problem of dialect boundaries, which is often exceedingly difficult, must be resolved. An example is the situation in regard to Chinese names: a satisfactory treatment is possible in terms of the pronunciation of Mandarin Chinese, which is understood throughout most of China, whereas a policy of differentiating between Mandarin, Wu, Hakka and Cantonese, to say nothing of subdialects, would at present at least be almost impossible. Similarly, the transliteration of a non-Roman alphabet by different systems according to the pronunciation of local dialects presupposes the accurate knowledge of local pronunciation which is not strictly speaking, the concern of transliteration.

Since United States Board on Geographic Names transcription and transliteration systems are designed to strike a balance between scientific accuracy and intelligibility for the general public of the United States, diacritical marks and modified letters are kept to a minimum. Some linguistic features totally foreign to European languages, such as the tones of the Sino-Tibetan-Burmese languages, must be sacrificed when they are completely incomprehensible to the user in the United States, or when their presence or even their nature cannot be determined with any accuracy at the present state of our knowledge.

Many problems in the Roman-letter spelling of toponyms from non-Roman writing systems still remain unresolved. The number of areas for which sufficient geographical and linguistic source materials are as unavailable is still larger than one would desire. Such matters as the scarcity of Arabic and Persian toponyms in Arabic script complete with vowel points, and the great variation in the geographic and toponymic data for many areas throughout the world present perplexing problems. However, progress is being made and better results are continually being achieved through the application of toponymic principles to the problem of spelling the place names of the world in Roman letters.

SOME GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF TRANSLITERATION AND TRANSCRIPTION

Paper presented by the United States of America[1]

Every country that uses geographical names on maps or charts or in books or documents of any sort is faced with two general categories of such names: names in its own language and names in languages other than its own.

A country can use without further ado names within its own boundaries or names within other countries using the same language. This is especially true if names are avail-

able in easily accessible gazetteers, lists or other publications that provide positive determination of the identity and writing form of the names themselves. A faithful copying of the names from such definitive sources will in each and every case reproduce the body of names without change of any sort.

A country is confronted with other problems when it renders names from languages other than its own, whether such names are written in a variation of the alphabet or writing system of its own language or in an entirely different alphabet or writing system.

As long as names foreign to a country are written in a variation of the writing system of its own language, total agreement between the donor country's written forms and the written forms used by the receiver country will be achieved by the receiver country if all diacritical marks and modified letters or characters of the donor language are faithfully reproduced.

For example, English language names need merely be copied by Czech and Polish users, whereas Czech and Polish names can be kept in their original form by English-language users only if such un-English Czech symbols as "č", "á", "ř" and "ů" and such un-English Polish symbols as "ą", "ł", "ś" and "ź" are faithfully copied. On the other hand, Czech and Polish users must in their turn reproduce such French symbols as "à", "â" and "ç" if their revisions of French names are to maintain identity with the original written forms.

As a further example, Iranian users of Arabic names need merely copy them as they are, since no letters occur in the writing of Arabic that do not occur in Persian. Arabic users of Persian names, however, would have to copy carefully the diacritical marks of the specifically Persian letters "pe", "che", "zhe" and "gāf" if they wished to maintain the integrity of the original Persian written forms..

When a country has to use names from a writing system other than its own,[2] it is faced with the necessity of using either a transliteration system, that is, a one-to-one substitution of graphic sysmbols, or a transcription system, that is, a one-to-one substitution of symbols representing the sounds of the donor language.

In practice, the use of transliteration is indicated when the receiver language is written by means of an alphabet and the alphabet of the donor language represents a good phonemic notation for that language.

The use of transcription is indicated when the donor language's alphabet is not one in which letters correspond to the language's phonemes or when the receiver language is not written alphabetically; for example, Chinese.

In transliteration, the existence of graphic distinctions which the receiver alphabet does not have necessitates the use of diacritical marks so that there may be a one-to-one correspondence between donor and receiver graphs. For instance, since Persian has four letters representing the "z" sound, diacritical marks must be devised to differentiate the four (cf. the z-graphs "z̄", "z", "ẓ" and "ż" in the BGN/PCGN[3] system for Persian).

In transcription, the existence in the donor language of individual sounds or classes of sounds that the receiver language does not have necessitates the use of diacritical marks to account for all the sounds of the donor language. (cf. in the BGN (Modified Wade-Giles system for Chinese) the distinction between "chu" and "chü", "ch'u" and "ch'ü", "lu", and "lü" and "yu" and "yü").

As far as possible, in both transliteration and transcription, diacritical marks should be used in such a way that classes of sounds or contrasts such as that between short and long vowels will be systematically distinguished (cf. in the BGN/PCGN Arabic system the contrast by means of the cedilla of the nonvelarized consonants "d", "h", "s", "t" and "z" and the corresponding velarized consonants "ḍ", "ḥ", "ṣ", "ṭ" and "ẓ" and also the contrast by means of the macron of the short vowels "a", "i" and "u" and the corresponding long vowels "ā", "ī" and "ū").

Theoretical considerations such as those brought forward above cannot always determine the nature of a transliteration or transcription system, especially when systems already in use have almost universal currency within a country or throughout a writing system area. Nonetheless, they are of great value in the evaluation or improvement of existing systems and should always be kept in mind when new systems are worked out.

---

[2] See discussion of writing systems in *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. 1 (United Nations publication, Sales No.: E.68.1.9), p. 22.

[3] Board of Geographic Names/Permanent Committee on Geographic Names.

ROMANIZATION OF CHINESE CHARACTERS FOR PLACE NAMES

Paper presented by the United States of America*

The China Topographic Service and the United States Army Map Service have combined their efforts to produce a manuscript entitled "Modified readings of Chinese characters for place names Romanization based on the modified Wade-Giles system", which will be published soon. It represents an important step forward in research on Chinese geographical names in that it largely eliminates the need for English-speaking persons to consult Chinese lexical works, many of which are not readily available and most of which do not give an accurate description of the pronunciation of their entries.

English-speaking nations have relied almost exclusively on the Wade-Giles system for the transcription of Chinese, and sources utilizing this system have generally used the Romanization appearing in the Giles dictionary. The Giles dictionary was based essentially on Mandarin

pronunciation. The *Kuo-yin Ch'ang-yung Tz'u-hui* (*Manual of Chinese national Romanization of frequently used characters*, Shanghai, 1932), which uses basically the same pronunciation but with some modifications, has been designated by all Chinese Governments since its publication as the official standard for the pronunciation of Chinese.

Using this official and national standard pronunciation, we are able to assign Roman-letter equivalents to Chinese characters that accurately reflect the segmental phonemes that appear in the pronunciation of these characters, for which the Wade-Giles system is adequate. Thus, while the Romanization used in the Giles dictionary is inadequate for national standardization, its sound-to-symbol system is adequate.

It is this current sound-to-symbol relationship that is important in *Modified readings of Chinese characters for place names Romanization based on the modified Wade-Giles system*. Implicit in its publication is the assumption

---

* The original text of this paper, prepared by G. F. Beasley, Office of Geography, Department of the Interior, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.29.

that place names are to be pronounced and thus Roman-ized in accordance with the national standard rather than in accordance with their local or dialectal pronunciation. The changes involved are illustrated below.

Character	Gloss	Romanization	
		Giles	CTS–AMS
港	harbour	chiang	kang
堤	dike	ti	t'i
綠	green	lü	lu
浮	float	fu	fou
熱	hot	jo	je
溪	rivulet	ch'i	hsi

The publication is divided into three sections. The first section is a syllabary in alphabetical order. All characters having the same Romanization are placed under the appropriate syllable. The second section is a character list with Romanizations according to the Wade-Giles system. The characters are arranged according to the 214 radicals and additional stroke count. The third section is a lexicon giving glosses for the variant readings of characters contained in section one. An example is shown below.

Character	Romanization	Gloss
乾	ch'ien	"a surname" or, when in combination with "-k'un", male and/or female
	kan	"dry"
兒	erh	"son"
	ni	"a surname"

This section is essential in determining what pronunciation and thus what Romanization is accurate for a character in any given name. This assumes, of course, that the characters in the name in question are morphemically distinctive. Included among the glosses are statements as to whether or not a character is used in Chinese phoneticizations of non-Chinese names. This in many instances resolves problems that cannot be resolved through a semantic and grammatical analysis of the substantive portion of the name.

The publication is not without deficiencies, a fact which is understandable in the light of the enormous corpus of names that must be considered to produce a comprehensive listing. Some of these deficiencies may be eliminated before final publication. Although the omission of obsolete readings and characters that do not occur in geographical names is an advantage, some characters that do occur in geographical names and were not found in the Giles dictionary or Chinese dictionaries such as "*Kuo-yü-tz'u-tien*", "*Tz'u-hai*", "*Tz'u-yüan*" are still absent from the list. Also missing are many short forms and simplified characters (*chien-t'i-tzu*) in use on all mainland Chinese maps. Where included, these characters are entered not according to the characters or radicals from which they are derived, but according to the initial stroke in the character. For instance, the character for "door" (Romanized "*men*") is itself a radical numbered 164 of the 214 radicals. There are eight strokes in this character (radical). The simplified variant has but three strokes and is listed not as a radical, but as a character under the radical which is identical with its first stroke, radical 3. All simplified characters formed with the simplified radical 164 are also listed under radical 3. Thus two systems of arranging characters are used and character variants such as "*men*" are listed in separate sections of the character list.

Since the publication is a joint Chinese-United States effort, it is regrettable that the glosses in section II are provided only in Chinese, at times in a quite abbreviated and cryptic manner. However, since a knowledge of research methods used in Chinese lexical works is a prerequisite for using the "Modified readings of Chinese characters...," the translation of these glosses is possible for the non-Chinese user.

In summary, the new joint Chinese-United States publication will be an invaluable reference work for research on Chinese geographical names. The publication will make available in one volume the great majority of characters found in geographical names. It will provide the user with Romanizations of these characters according to the standard national pronunciation and according to the various morphemic identities represented by the characters. These facts alone make the work greatly anticipated by researchers in Chinese geographical names and cause its shortcomings to seem small indeed.

COLLECTION AND TREATMENT OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN LIBYA

Paper presented by Libya*

In 1954, the Governments of Libya and the United States agreed to co-operate in mapping a large part of Libya. The programme involved maps at 1:50,000 scale for the coastal region and at 1:250,000 scale for the area north of 29°N. The maps, covering approximately 170,000 square miles, were published as AMS [Army Map Service] series P 761 and P 502 respectively.

Field operations began in 1956, after aerial photography was flown and the logistics to support topographic units in the area were arranged. An interesting and productive method for collecting and classifying geographical names in the field was introduced in these operations. We believe it contributed significantly to toponymic processes

and promises an extended use in the mapping of other areas.

Several difficulties have plagued the collection, verification and transliteration of geographical names in Arab areas, among them the scarcity of sources from which place and feature names can be extracted and the physical cultural and political obstacles to obtaining correct names at the site. Names sources are usually deficient in quantity for large-scale mapping and in authenticity for any purpose; communication between the foreign cartographer and the native informant usually falls short of complete understanding; the toponymist who tries to retrace names which have been transcribed from the original language into another usually loses something in the process.

The method used in the Libyan project was designed to

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.32.

dispel or avoid most of these difficulties. The sparse data were augmented with many place names gathered at first hand. Names were authenticated by combining their written and spoken versions. This method is relatively easy to operate, but depends on painstaking preliminary arrangements, strict adherence to the rules and strong logistic support. Without the full co-ordination of traditional skills and modern facilities, the method would dissolve into another idealistic ambition. It could not achieve the necessary degree of accuracy without skills. It could not satisfy the desired time limit without these facilities.

The method began for the Libya project with annotated aerial photographs as an adjunct to the normal field classification survey materials. Place names and descriptive terms were transcribed from existing maps and other sources to the photographs. The names were written in Arabic; the terms in English. This procedure ensured that the survey parties could verify at least all known names.

The method involved the co-ordination of three items: photographs to which the available names were applied; cards on which collected names and generic terms were written and keyed to features in the photographs; tapes which captured the sounds of the names spoken by inhabitants of the area. The field parties were instructed in the purpose and operation of the tape recorder. They were trained to use photographs and reference cards. This orientation coincided with the period of preparation for other aspects of field classification.

The field parties arrived in Libya with the material, equipment, directions and logistic support to collect place names as well as to pursue their other functions. Each party included a locally recruited interpreter who assisted the American members in communicating with the area's inhabitants. This complement and the established procedure promised the home-based toponymist enough data to identify the map features and provided him with the tools to refine that identification to a precise expression.

Typically, a member of the party, aided by the interpreter, questioned a local official about a place name.

The official's response was written in Arabic on the card in pencil and, simultaneously, was recorded on the tape. The card was marked with a number which keyed it to the specific feature on the specific photograph. The feature was marked with the corresponding number. All these records were sent to the home office and processed by the area specialist.

The area specialist first considered the validity of the written Arabic. He reviewed the cards, examining the script for accuracy of rendition, correcting it from his knowledge of the language and completing it by adding the vowel points. In this operation, he listened to the taped record to verify the written name, making allowances for deflected variations, and to resolve ambiguities in the script. The tapes proved to be an invaluable reference where illegibility or misinterpretation in the written record permitted no convincing conclusion. When the area specialist was satisfied that the text was correct, he completed the card in ink. He wrote instructions for the cards' use and prepared a master glossary of generic terms for the entire project and special glossaries which were tailored to each map. These materials, together with the source maps and customary guides for names treatment, were sent to the map compiler.

We have assessed the results of the method used in the Libya project in four categories and in comparison with other methods. We find that more names of a higher degree of validity were obtained; that the area specialist's capability for verifying names was improved and his capacity for processing them extended; that the orthography of names reached a higher degree of consistency and that the total operation was simplified and accelerated.

Our experience encourages the extended use of the name card and tape recorder method. Its application to areas without written languages, especially, promises greater benefits than other procedures. We suggest that the portable tape recorder become standard equipment for the names' collector in the field. For reasons of economy, we suggest that the method be used in conjunction with the regular field classification survey. Naturally, the success of the method will vary with conditions in the specific area. It can be adapted to almost any conceivable situation.

PRINCIPLES OF THE TRANSLITERATION OF ARABIC IN ROMAN CHARACTERS

Paper presented by France[1]

The principles set out below concern the transliteration, in Roman characters of place names written in Arabic characters; they are not concerned with the direct transcription of such place names on the basis of their oral form. Account is, however, taken, in the system which has been adopted, of the phonetic value which is inherent in the Arabic characters.

The Arabic characters have been classified under five main headings:

Consonants;
Semi-consonants;
Vowels;
Other Arabic characters;
Auxiliary orthographic signs.

Under the first two headings, the Arabic characters are arranged in the traditional order. Under the third heading, the "vowel accents" (or vowel points) have been included,[2] and it has appeared necessary, in order that the actual pronunciation of the place names might be rendered more faithfully, to diversify somewhat the relationship between the Arabic and Roman characters. Various special features of pronunciation and spelling have been included under the fourth and fifth headings.

The sixth, and final, heading covers the notation of the Arabic definite article.

The notation in Roman characters in the fourth column corresponds to the Arabic characters in the first column.

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by the National Geographic Institute, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.36.

[2] These are usually omitted in written Arabic, and there are too few of them to represent all the variations of the spoken language. It is desirable, however, for the Arabic spelling of the place names to include the vowel accents.

In the third column, the phonetic value of the Arabic characters is defined as precisely as possible and is represented by a symbol taken from the alphabet of the International Phonetic Association.[3] The fifth column contains numerous examples of current usage[4] illustrating the principles in question.[5] The final column, for remarks, provides additional information on particular points.

---

[3] The use of these symbols is an essential element in toponymic research. It has the further advantage of facilitating, on the international level, an understanding of the accepted relationships between writing and pronunciation.

[4] As a rule, three examples in each instance, showing the character in the initial, median and final positions.

[5] The examples are usually limited to a single pronunciation.

1. CONSONANTS

Arabic character	Name	Phoneme represented[6]	Notation	Examples		Remarks
ـب بـ بـ	bâ	b occlusive bilabiale sonore	b	بَاب كبِير كَلب	bâb kbîr kelb	
ـت تـ تـ	tâ	t occlusive dentale sourde	t	تَاجِر زِيتُون بِيت	tâjer zîtoûn bît	
ـث ثـ ثـ	thâ	θ spirante dentale sourde	th	ثنِين كثِير حَرث	thnîne kthîr harth	
ـج جـ جـ	jîm djîm	ʒ spirante palato-alvéolaire (chuintante) sonore	j dj	جِديَان مَرجَة حَاج حَجَر	jediâne merja hâjj hadjar	
ـح حـ حـ	hâ	ħ spirante pharyn-gale sourde	h	همَار سَاحِل مَلح	hmâr sâhel melha	
ـخ خـ خـ	khâ	x spirante vélaire sourde	kh	خمِيس نخِل شِيخ	khmîs nkhel cheïkh	
ـد دـ د	dâl	d occlusive dentale sonore	d	دَشرَة دَردَار جدِيد	dechra derdâr jdîd	
ـذ ذـ ذ	dhâl	ð spirante dentale sonore	dh	ذِيب حَاذِق	dhîb hâdheq	
ر رـ ر	râ	r vibrante	r	رَاجِل صَخرَة دَار	râjel çekhra dâr	
ز زـ ز	zîne	z sifflante sonore	z	زِبدَة عَزَّاب لُوز	zebda 'azzâb loûz	
ـس سـ سـ	sîne	s sifflante sourde	s ss	سَلَّابَة بَسبَاس رَاس مُوسى قَسِم	seqqâya besbâs râs moûssa kâssem	Intervocalique.
ـش شـ شـ	chîne	ʃ spirante palato-alvéolaire (chuintante) sourde	ch	شَمس مَنشتَى بَبُّوش	chems mechta bebboûch	
ـص صـ صـ	çâd	ʂ sifflante sourde pharyngalisée (emphatique)	ç	صَفرَاء رصَاص	çefra rçâç	

---

[6] Each phoneme is represented by a separate symbol in the International Phonetic Alphabet. This alphabet should be used by the specialists responsible for investigating the place names and recording their pronunciation.

Arabic character	Name	Phoneme represented[6]	Notation	Examples		Remarks
ض ض ض ض	ḍâd	ḍ occlusive dentale sonore pharyngalisée (emphatique)	ḍ	ضيف حصرة أرض	ḍif khoḍra arḍ	
ط ط ط ط	ṭâ	ṭ occlusive dentale sourde pharyngalisée (emphatique)	ṭ	طير قنطرة حبط	ṭîr guenṭra hîṭ	
ظ ظ ظ ظ	ḍâ	ð spirante dentale sonore pharyngalisée (emphatique)	ḍ	ظهر مظل محظوظ	ḍhar mḍell meḥḍoûḍ	Notation identique à celle de l'occlusive dentale sonore emphatique.
	ẓâ	ʒ sifflante sonore emphatique	ẓ			
ع ع ع	'aín	ʕ spirante pharyngale sonore	'	عبد نعجة جامع	'abd na'ja jâma'	
غ غ غ	ghaïn	ɣ spirante vélaire sonore	gh	غابة مغرفة دباغ	ghâba mgherfa debbâgh	
ف ف ف	fâ	f spirante labiodentale sourde	f	فارس صفصاف صوف	fâres çefçâf çoûf	
ف ف ف	qâf	q occlusive uvulaire sourde	q	فديم مقطع فوف	qdim meqta' foû	
ف ق ف ق ق ك ج ج ج	gâf	g occlusive vélaire sonore	g	قارة اقدال برواق	gâra agdâl berouâg	
			gu	قمرة بغر	guemra bguer	Devant e et i
ك ك ك اك	kef	k occlusive vélaire sourde	k	كبش شبكة مبروك	kebch chebka mabroûk	
ل ل ل	lâm	l latérale	l	ليل طلحة	lîl ṭalḥa	
م م م در ج ج	mîm	m nasale bi-labiale	m	مدينة ناموس فومّ	mdîna nâmoûs foûmm	
ن ن ن	noûn	n nasale dentale	n	نار زنقة غبن	nâr zenqa 'aïn	
			ne	جنان عشرين لبن فكرون	jnâne 'achrîne lbene fekrône	En finale, pour éviter la prononciation d'une voyelle nasale: an, en, in, on. Exceptions : ben, bîn.
ه ه ه ه	hâ	h spirante glottale sourde	h	هدية بهيمة وجه	hdîya bhîma oûjeh	

2. Semi-consonants

Arabic character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples		Remarks
و ـو ـو	ouâou	w bi-labiale	ou	طويـل	ṭouîl	
				وَاحَـد	ouâḥad	
				وَالِد	ouâlid	
			ou	عَـود	'aoud	Diphtongue.
				حَـومَـة	ḥaouma	
يـ ـيـ ـي	yâ	j palatale	y	يَاميـنَـة	yâmîna	A l'initiale.
				يَـدّ	yedd	Egalement yidd.
			y	عَيّـون	'ayoûn	Intervocalique.
				زَاوِيَـة	zâouya	
			i	بيـوت	bioût	Mouillure des consonnes.
				كُـديَـة	koudia	
			ï	عَيـن	'aïn	Diphtongue.
				عَيـد	'aïd	

3. Vowels

Arabic character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples		Remarks
´	fatḥa	a antérieure étirée ouverte	a	مَعـزَة	ma'za	
				كُرمـوس	karmoûs	
		centrale d'aperture moyenne	e	جَـبَل	jbel	
ِ	kesra	i antérieure étirée fermée	i	مَالِك	mâlik	
				جِيّـار	jiyyâr	
		centrale d'aperture moyenne	e	بِيـن	men	
				مِرحَـان	ferḥâne	
ُ	ḍamma	u postérieure arrondie fermée	ou	وِتيّـار	zouyyâr	
				كُتّـاش	kounnâch	
		o postérieure arrondie demi-fermée	o	بُرج	borj	
				حُفـرَة	hofra	
ا	alif		non noté			L'alif est essentiellement un support ou une lettre de prolongation.
						Voir ci-dessous les notations particulières des groupes dans lesquels il entre en composition.
أ		a antérieure étirée ouverte	a	أحـمَـد	aḥmed	
إ				أحمَـر	aḥmar	
أُ		i antérieure étirée fermée	i	إمَـام	imâm	
أ				إدريـس	idrîs	
		u postérieure arrondie fermée	ou	أمّ	oumm	
ـى	alif maqçoûra (alif bref)	a antérieure étirée ouverte	a	مَرسَى	mersa	En finale.
				مَـلقَى	melqa	
آ ـآ ـآ	fatḥa alif	a voyelle longue	â	خَـطّـاز	khebbâz	
ـى ـيـ ـي	kesra yâ	i voyelle longue	î	طريـف	ṭrîc	
				بيـر	bîr	

3. Vowels (*continued*)

| Arabic Character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples	Remarks
وُ 'وُ مُو	ḍamma ouâou	u voyelle longue	où	عَرْقُوب 'argoûb	
		o voyelle longue	ô	دُوم doûm / تُور tôr	
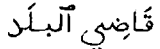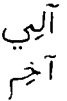
4. Other Arabic characters

Arabic Character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples	Remarks
ء ـئ	hamza	non prononcé	non noté	مَاء mâ	Ce signe est supporté ordinairement par un alif (le cas échéant par un yâ qui perd alors ses points diacritiques); il a la valeur d'un simple hiatus.
لا لا لا لا ﻻ	lâm alif				Ce n'est qu'une façon d'écrire la lettre "lâm" suivie de la lettre "alif". Se reporter à chacune de ces deux lettres.
ة ـة ـتَ	tâ mar-boûṭa	a antérieure étirée ouverte	a	شَمْشَارَة cherchâra / ضَايَة dâya / كُدِيَة الرْمَل koudiet er rmel	En finale de substantifs ou d'adjectifs. Etat construit.
		et	et		
ّ ً	tanouî-ne	an	ane		En finale, et réservé à l'arabe classique.
		in	ine		
		un	oun		
پ ـڤ		p occlusive bi-labiale sourde	p		Ces deux caractères ne correspondent pas à des sons arabes, mais peuvent servir à noter des mots étrangers.
		v spirante labio-dentale sonore	v		

5. Auxiliary orthographic signs

Arabic Character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples	Remarks
ْ ذ ح	jezm ou soukoûn	Indique la fin d'une syllabe; la lettre arabe qui le supporte doit se rattacher à la consonne précédente en une seule émission de voix, et par l'intermédiaire de la voyelle brève qui accompagne toujours cette dernière.	non noté		

132

Arabic Character	Name	Phoneme represented	Notation	Examples		Remarks
ــّـ	chedda ou tachdîd	Indique que la lettre arabe qui le supporte doit être prononcée redoublée	Redoublement de la lettre ou du digramme représentatif.	حَمّـام قُبّـة بِيّـار	hammâm qoubba biyyâr	
		Si la lettre arabe surmontée du chedda est un "yâ" ou un "ouâou" (semi-consonnes), et si elle est précédée de l'accent voyelle correspondant: kesra ou damma, il peut y avoir seulement indication d'une voyelle longue.	îy ouou	عَرْبِيّـة كُرْزِيّـة	'arbîya kourzîya	
ــٱـ	oueçla	Indique que l'alif qui le supporte ne doit pas être prononcé.	non noté	قَاضِي آلْبَلَد	qâdi el bled	Se place toujours sur un alif initial dit "alif d'union".
ــٓـ	madda	Indique que l'alif qui le supporte doit être prononcé comme un a long.		آلِي آخِر	âli âkher	Le madda tient lieu d'alif de prolongation. Egalement âkhir.

6. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

The Arabic definite article ال is invariable; it is attached, in the written language, to the word which follows it. In Roman characters, it should be represented by "el", which is written separately from the word with which it is linked in the Arabic text.

Examples: البير el bîr, الفار el fâr.

In the pronunciation of the article, however, the consonant "l" is assimilated with the following consonants:[7]

Dentals: ت ث د ذ ض ظ ط
Sibilants: ز س ص
Palatal fricatives:[8] ج ش
Liquids: ر ل ن

when these stand at the beginning of the word which the article precedes. This consonant is then pronounced as if it was written twice.

It is customary to note this assimilation in the transliteration in Roman characters.[9]

Examples: الدّرويش، وبِشّ ed derouîch الرّملة er remla الشّمس ech chems.

On the other hand, the changes in pronunciation are not noted in cases where the article precedes a word beginning with a vowel or with two consonants.

Examples: المدرسة الكبيرة

Pronounced: le-mdersa le-kbîra, but must be written: el mdersa el kbîra.

---

[7] The corresponding Arabic letters are referred to as "sun" letters.
[8] Sometimes "moon" letter.

[9] Assimilation may be indicated in written Arabic by the presence of a shedda over the initial letter.

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN CYRILLIC SCRIPT

Paper presented by the International Committee on Onomastic Sciences (ICOS)[1]

Although not a Slavist, I should like to refer to the discussions which took place in the Cyrillic Sub-Committee of ICOS and to the resolution adopted by the Congress of Munich (1958) [see annexes I and II].

I consider it extremely unfortunate that at the present time a wide variety of spellings for the letters of the Cyrillic alphabet is customary in the Western countries. To take an example, the phoneme "ʃ" is spelt variously as "ch", "sch", "sj", and "sh", the spelling "sh" being recommended by the Permanent Commission on Geographical

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by H. J. van Wijer Secretary-General of ICOS, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.82.

Names (PCGN) [London] and the Board of Geographical Names (BGN) [Washington].

I believe that I am not mistaken when I say that the Slavonic linguists use a single symbol with a diacritical accent, namely "š", for this phoneme and that the same symbol and accent mark are used in Croatia for the transliteration of Serb names.

I further note that the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) [Geneva], which has representatives in some fifty countries, proposes the same system for the transliteration of Cyrillic names.

Also, in its report to the Conference, the delegation of the Federal Republic of Germany, speaking on behalf of the official German body—the *Ständiger Ausschuss für geographische Namen*—said that it had adopted the ISO system of transliteration, and it recommended the adoption of that system by the Conference.

The ICOS Sub-Committee (see annex I for its membership) has, moreover, taken a similar position (see the resolution in annex II).

We are faced here with a difficult and perhaps delicate problem, which must, however, as I see it, be dealt with objectively by the Conference—and perhaps kept in reserve until further information becomes available. The Conference will certainly provide an opportunity for direct contact with the representatives of ISO so that the different points of view can be compared and a satisfactory international solution can ultimately be arrived at.

The stand taken at the Conference by the representatives of the Soviet Union and other Slav countries in a question which primarily comes within their jurisdiction does, of course, have an important bearing on the solution of the problem. If the Conference should be unable to arrive at a solution, a regional conference of the Slav countries should, I believe, be organized by the United Nations in the near future. I should like, in this connexion, to draw attention to the conferences regularly held by the International Board on Slavic Onomastics, whose competence in this matter is, it seems to me, beyond question.[2]

The regular contact maintained by the secretariat of ICOS with the representatives of ICOS in the Slav countries might, if the Conference wished, be used to facilitate further contacts.

---

[2] The third session of this organization was held from 14 to 17 September 1960 at Liblice in Bohemia under the chairmanship of Professor Witold Taszycki, of the University of Kraków, who is a member of ICOS.

SOME PROBLEMS INVOLVED IN RENDERING GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FROM ONE WRITING SYSTEM INTO ANOTHER

Paper presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics[1]

In recent years the problem of rendering geographical names from one language into another has become of greater interest to many countries. The convening of the present Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names is a proof of this.

The Soviet Union, too, at the present time, is giving much attention to this problem. There are several reasons for this. The Soviet Union is doing a great deal of mapping its vast territories with their multinational population.

There have appeared of late a great number of maps and atlases covering areas all over the world and varying as to theme and content. A number of cartographic works in foreign languages have been issued in the Soviet Union. Finally, new problems have arisen in connexion with rendering geographical names in the national scripts of Asian and some African countries into Russian.

Soviet cartography is faced with two immediate problems: to transpose foreign names into the Cyrillic alphabet, which has been adopted by most of the languages of the USSR territories; and to transpose foreign names into languages whose script differs from the Cyrillic, such as

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by L. I. Rosova and V. I. Savina, Central Research Institute of Geodesy, Aerial Survey and Cartography, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L. 48.

Georgian, Armenian, and the languages of the Soviet Baltic Republics.

In this report we shall touch upon the problems of rendering foreign names into the Russian alphabet and partly into the Roman alphabet. In order to resolve new problems which may arise in the process of such work, it is necessary to have definite rules based on the phonetic peculiarities of the language concerned, its orthography and morphology. The most satisfactory method of rendering foreign names into Russian is that of practical transcription, when only Russian letters are used and the rules of Russian orthography are observed.

We should like to say a few words on some general problems which arise when names are rendered into Russian from any system of writing. As a rule, we transcribe names from the official language of the country concerned. Should we also consider the other important languages that the people of the country speak, such as the Dravidian languages or Bengali in India? Our specialists answer this question in the affirmative.

Again, should words be transcribed by rendering only the phoneme in question or by sometimes rendering its variants, depending upon the position of the phoneme in the word? For example, in Persian names the letter ق represents a fricative uvular consonant and is generally pronounced ғ/, but before vowels it carries the value of "k", that is, it becomes explosive. We consider that the rendering of phonemes is preferable because of their semantic value.

And finally, is it practical in transcribing to preserve, to some extent, the "graphical image" of a name, sometimes ignoring its pronunciation? Shall we write Рейлинген or Райлинген (Reilingen); Албешти or Албешть (Albeşti)? We believe that the "graphical image" should be taken into consideration.

Another quite complicated problem is that of dialects. Should some dialectal differences that are peculiar to the toponymy of certain regions of the country concerned be reflected when rendering names into other languages? Should we ignore them if they are not fixed in national spelling? For example, the Arabic character ج usually represents the sound dʒ (as in "jury"), but in the United Arab Republic and some regions of the Sudan it carries the value of "g" (as in "get"). We think it practical to reflect such phenomena although the national spelling does not distinguish between them.

The problem whether compound place names should be written separately or in one arises in all languages. Should we follow the spelling of the original or work out a set of rules of our own? If we follow the original, we are often unable to render similar word structures consistently. This happens because one and the same compound name may be written in different ways in the national scripts. For example, German names including the words "klein", "gross", "neu", "alt", "ober", "nieder" and others are written both separately and in one. Again, the name "Bearpaw" can also be written "Bear Paw".

It seems to us necessary to have strict rules for rendering similar names irrespective of their spelling in the original, because morphologically similar structures should be transposed in identical fashion.

The problem of transposing generic terms is just as complicated. Should they be transcribed or translated? As we know, in some languages generic terms precede proper names (e.g. "Lac de Grandlieu"; رأس الملح (Ras el

Milh) in Arabic); in other languages they come after proper names, e.g. "Baba burnu", "Ak Dağ", in Turkish; and in still others both positions are possible, e.g. رودِ شور (Rud-i-Shur), سفید کوه (Safid Kuh) in Persian, महानन्द नदी (Mahananda Nadi), झील डेबर (Jhil Debar) in Hindi. In addition, proper names and the generic terms related to them may be written both separately and in one. All this considerably complicates the solution of the problem whether generic terms should be translated or transcribed.

We consider it possible to resolve the problem in the manner described below.

If the generic term is an integral element of a name (and we always consider it integral when the specific part is expressed by an adjective or a numeral), it should be transcribed, for example, "Schwarz Bach" – p. Шварц-Бах, महानदी (Hindi) p. Маханади, سبز کوه (Urdu) – г. Кохе-Сабз, Üçada (Turkish) – о-ва Учада, Μεγάλο Βουνό (Greek) Г. Мегало-Вуно.

If the specific element is expressed by a noun, a combination of two nouns or a combination of a noun and an adjective, the geographical term ceases to be an integral part and becomes a generic term. In such cases it should be translated, e.g. Кӯҳи Бобоиоб (Tadjik) – г. Бобоиоб; Victoria Desert – пуст. Виктория; स्वर्णरेखा नदी (Hindi) – p. Сварнарекха; कैमूर की पहाड़ियाँ (Hindi) – горы Каймур, باردخ کی پروڈ (Urdu) – пруд Бардха; "Baie de St. Brieuc" (French) – бухта Сен-Брие; "Baba burnu" (Turkish), – м. Баба.

The rendering of noun flexions in genitive constructions consisting of a combination of generic and specific parts. is especially difficult. There are several ways of resolving this problem:

The term is translated and the nominative of the proper name is used (e.g. "Burtnieku ezers" (Latvian) – оз. Буртниеки;

The term is translated and the genitive form of the proper name is retained (e.g. "Dagdas ezers" (Latvian) – оз. Дагдас;

The whole construction is transcribed and a Russian generic term is added (e.g. "Puzes ezers" (Latvian) – оз. Пузес-Эзерс.

Unfortunately opinions on the problem differ. In our practice all three methods are used.

All these general problems are very complicated, there are different points of view of how to deal with them and it seems to us that an exchange of opinions would be useful.

Further, we should like to touch upon some special problems which have to be resolved in rendering names into Russian from certain systems of writing. First, there is the alphabetical writing system in its two varieties: (a) all sounds, both vowels and consonants, are represented (Greek, Roman, Cyrillic, Georgian, Armenian alphabets and the Korean alphabet, kunmun) and (b) only consonants are represented (Arabic, Hebrew alphabets). Secondly, there is the syllabic script system (Burmese, Thai, Laotian, Khmer, Devanagari and other kinds of Indian script; the Japanese official alphabet, kana). Thirdly, there is the idiographic script (Chinese and Japanese).

Some of these systems have long been used in cartography (the Roman and Cyrillic alphabets and to some extent the Arabic alphabet and idiographic script); others have been used occasionally (the Devanagari and various kinds of writing used in Indochina); and still others have not yet been used at all (the systems of writing based on the

135

Indian syllabic script and used in India side by side with the Devanagari, as well as the Amharic script).

The authentic forms of foreign names can be established only with the help of national maps. That is why the absence of national cartography in a number of countries, and especially the absence of national alphabets in some African languages, hinder the work.

The method of rendering the geographical names of Africa, with its wealth of complicated languages, through English, French or Italian transcription is inadequate. That is why the efforts of linguists in some countries of West Africa in creating national alphabets should be appreciated.

The rendering of names from any system of writing poses a series of problems. These exist even when the language into which terms are rendered and the language of the original have the same alphabet. For instance, to render Byelorussian and Ukrainian toponyms into Russian we find it convenient to use a special method, that of morpheme replacement, which is justified by the close affinity of these languages: Byelorussian and Ukrainian suffixes and flexions are replaced by the corresponding Russian ones (e.g. Барысаў (Byelorussian) – Борисов; Глухів (Ukrainian) – Глухов) and the replacement of the corresponding sounds in the roots takes place.

This method is partly used in rendering other Slavic toponyms, e.g. Polish and Czech adjectives ending in "–i", "–a" and "–ý", –á respectively sometimes appear in Russian in the form of Russian adjectives: Wyżyna Małopolska – Малопольская возвышенность; Bródnowski Kanał – Брудновский канал; Muránsky Kras – Муранский карст and so on.

There also exist certain difficulties in rendering geographical names even from languages with alphabets based on the Cyrillic. These difficulties are mainly connected with the absence of special letters in the Russian alphabet for designating certain sounds that exist in other languages. It especially concerns such languages as the Caucasian, which have a complex system of sounds rendered only approximately into Russian. In addition, the matter is complicated by the fact that in the alphabets of the languages of the western and eastern Caucasus there are several ways of designating approximately similar sounds, e.g. the explosive guttural sibilant affricate is usually indicated by цI in all the Caucasian languages but by кI in Adygej. There are cases when one and the same letter represents different sounds in the same language, e.g. the letters з and ж may represent either the fricative sounds "z", as in "freeze", and ʒ, as in "pleasure", or the affricates "dz", as in "goods", and "dʒ", as in "just". Double consonants in different Nakh-Daghestan languages may designate both non-aspirate sounds and two consonant sounds of the same value.

All this makes it necessary to work out special rules for practical transcription even from languages using the Cyrillic.

When rendering names from variants of Roman writing, it should be borne in mind that the Roman alphabet adapted to different languages has a limited number of letters. That is why various diacritical marks have been added to some letters in order to indicate the specific sounds of the language concerned. In addition, the self same letters may be assigned different sound values, or a combination of letters is used for a single sound. In connexion with this, it should be noted that a thorough knowledge of any language, its phonetics and orthography, is required when rendering names.

The rendering of names from languages with traditional spelling, such as English or French, is particularly difficult. In this case special phonetic dictionaries which give the pronunciation of proper names are of great help; for example, *Everyman's English Pronouncing Dictionary* by Danial Jones for the United Kingdom; *A Pronouncing Dictionary of American English* by John Samuel Kenyon and Thomas Albert Knott for the United States; *Dictionnaire phonétique de la langue française* by Barbeau-Rodhe for France.

In rendering names from maps in Arabic script the main difficulties are caused by the absence of marks for short vowels as well as the *tashdid, sukun* and *hamza*. Therefore it would be most useful if the specialists of the countries which issue maps in Arabic script included indexes of the names transcribed into Roman lettering. This would considerably facilitate the rendering of these names into other systems of writing. As an example, we may cite the ten-volume "Dictionary of place names of Iran" issued in Teheran in 1949-1952 (١٣٢١-١٣٢٨ ،تهرا. ١٠-١ جلد . ایران فرهنگ جغرافیائ). It contains the Roman transcription of almost all the names it includes.

The differences between the phonetic systems of the Arabic language and the languages whose writing systems are based on the Arabic alphabet have resulted in the introduction of additional letters into the alphabets of some languages, e.g. گ، ژ، چ ، پ in Persian, and the addition to some Arabic letters of diacritical marks, e.g. ٹ، ڈ، ڑ، ڼ، ٿ، ژ (ž) in Pushtu, ط، ٻ، ڀ in Urdu etc. Moreover, one and the same sound in these languages may be represented by different characters, e.g. ز، ذ ، ض، ظ for the sound "z" in Persian. All this should be taken into consideration when rendering names from the Arabic script.

For many years, the geographical names of India on our maps have been transposed from English. However, since Hindi in the Devanagari writing has been declared the State language of India and the first cartographic materials in Hindi have appeared, e.g. the national atlas of India, issued in 1957 (भारत राष्ट्रीय प्रत्मव. प्रारम्भिक पत्रकरण भारत सरकार शिक्षा और वैज्ञानिक अनुसंधान पत्रालय शिव प्रसाद वर्षी कलिकात देहरादून), it has become possible to begin rendering Indian place names direct from Hindi. At the same time, the other important and widely spoken languages of the country, such as Bengali, Gujarati, Marathi, Tamili etc. cannot be disregarded. Therefore, in addition to the existing rules of rendering names from Hindi, new rules are being prepared by our specialists which will make it possible to transcribe correctly the names of states whose populations do not speak Hindi. However, no consistent rules can be worked out until cartographic materials in local languages are available.

As we all know, the Indian syllabic system gave rise to other systems of writing widely used in South-East Asia, such as the Burmese, Thai, Laotian etc. As the majority of the languages employing these systems of writing are cognate, it is necessary, when preparing rules for rendering terms from them, to treat equally such problems as the inflexion of consonants, the choice between transcription or translation for rendering geographical terms, the writing of compound names etc.

In rendering names from Chinese idiographic writing the fact that one and the same character may be read in

136

several different ways presents quite a problem. Such cases occur even in the Pekinese pronunciation on which our transcription is based.

When rendering Japanese place names in idiography from Japanese maps and atlases, one has to resort to special reference materials where these names are transposed into Japanese syllabic writing, *kana*, or into Roman script. This is necessary because the pronunciation of characters in Japanese geographical names often differs from their present generally accepted pronunciation.

Special rules are to be observed when rendering Armenian, Georgian and Greek names from materials in the national languages and Korean names from the national writing, *kunmun*. These are the main elements in the problem of rendering foreign names into Russian.

There is also the problem of transposing names from languages that have no alphabets of their own. In our opinion, they should be fixed in writing by means of the alphabet of the language most nearly akin and transcribed according to the existing rules.

As we mentioned earlier, at present we have to issue maps and atlases not only in Russian but also in languages with Roman and other systems of writing. This, in its turn, makes it urgent to create methods to deal with new problems. In working out such methods, we believe that whatever valuable information has been accumulated by all countries should be utilized.

When making maps in Roman script we consider that place names of countries using the Roman alphabet should be written as they are written in their own countries, including diacritical marks.

When rendering names from non-Roman writings into Roman script, we think it advisable to transliterate them in Latin characters in accordance with the system of transliteration in use in the country concerned.

Thus, the place names of the Soviet Union should be rendered in accordance with the system of transliteration of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR; the place names of Bulgaria in the system of transliteration of the Bulgarian Academy of Sciences; the place names of China in the official Roman writing of the country etc. The Roman writing used in international editions, e.g. the RGS II[2] system for the place names of India, Iran, the Arab countries etc. might be used as well. Much remains to be done in respect to the rendering of names into other systems of writing, such as Arabic; what is important is to work out a special system of transposition.

Now that economic, scientific and cultural relations among various countries have been considerably expanded, the rendering of names from one system of writing into another has become of still greater importance. In order that this work may be more productive, it is necessary, in our opinion, first, that an exchange of information among various countries on rendering geographical names should take place, which would help to resolve the problems of both national and international standardization; secondly, that the national orthography in a number of countries should be standardized, particularly the orthography of proper names; thirdly, that cartography should be developed on the basis of the main local languages with their own national alphabets.

---

[2] Royal Geographical Society.

PRINCIPLES OF TRANSCRIPTION OF AFRICAN PLACE NAMES

Paper presented by France[1]

INTRODUCTION

A system for the transcription of the African place names of the French-speaking States south of the Sahara was developed by the National Geographic Institute in 1963. This system was designed to meet the following two needs:

Standardization of place names through the use of a system of spelling unencumbered with useless letters and marks;

Reconstruction by a French-speaking reader of an acceptable pronunciation of these place names making possible their proper identification.

The realization of these aims demands, first, the adoption of guiding principles and, secondly, the choice of a set of detailed rules.

The guiding principles are, in brief, as follows:

Use of the Roman alphabet as the basic alphabet;

Pronunciation of all letters apart from a few exceptions for practical reasons as explained below;

One-to-one correspondence between the phoneme and its written form.

With regard to the set of detailed rules, an effort was made to avoid diacritical marks through the use of digraphs. While some of the digraphs retain the phonetic

value which they have in French, others, on the contrary, are conventionally represented[2] by sounds peculiar to the African languages concerned.

In both cases, the digraphs may be underlined if further differentiation is desired. In order to avoid an excessive number of conventional digraphs, the transcription system has been designed more along phonological than phonetic lines. Although the phonetic element is still given considerable weight, the accepted procedure has been to disregard many of the nuances if these do not have any appreciable effect on the meaning of the words.

This system can, of course, be adjusted to take any local peculiarity into account. The paramount consideration, however, is that the collection of the place names in the field and the recording of their pronunciation should be effected by means of a phonetic alphabet and should be firmly based on serious linguistic research into the languages concerned.

* **

The recording of place names in unwritten languages on to cards is a very difficult task. In the African languages in particular, there are many consonants and vowels which, being alien to the European languages, cannot be properly represented by any letter of the Roman alphabet.

---

[1] The original text of this paper, prepared by the National Geographic Institute, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.52.

[2] This does not mean "arbitrarily" represented because logical, historical or practical reasons necessarily influence the choice of the most satisfactory equivalents.

French, like all the European languages, is governed by complicated rules of spelling which are foreign to a phonetic transcription. To apply these rules indiscriminately to unwritten languages would lead to improper spelling and to extensive mispronunciation. This is readily apparent from an analysis of the names of certain towns and villages in "Black" Africa, the pronunciation of many of them having little in common with the proper pronunciation. Despite this, these names have become well known, and they must be retained if the local administration wants them to be.

The same, however, is not true of the very large number of names designating named places, small rivers and so on. For these names, an accurate transcription is imperative if the map is to serve its purpose effectively.

In the system proposed by the National Geographic Institute to the African States which have concluded technical assistance agreements with France, the rules of French spelling have been adapted and standardized, and groups of letters have been introduced to represent sounds that do not exist in French. An effort has been made, however, to ensure that for a reader of French the sounds in the names thus transcribed will be as close as possible to the actual sounds being imitated.

The different systems of phonetic notation differ as regards some of the symbols used, but the principles on which they are based are identical. Thus:

Each consonant and each vowel must be represented by a single symbol, which, in its turn, has a single and specific value so that the phoneme to which it relates cannot be represented by any other symbol;

The value of the symbol remains unchanged regardless of its position in the word;

The written form of the word does not contain anything which is not intended to be pronounced; it may not therefore, contain any marks for gender or number that could be confused with phonemes.

French, however, like most other European languages, is characterized by a traditional orthography that departs from these principles. Thus, it may be noted that:

The same sound may be written in different ways—for example: "f" and "ph", and "o", "au" and "eau";

The value of a symbol is affected by the symbols which precede and follow it and by its place in the word;

The written form of French includes plural marks, which are not intended to be pronounced, and a mute "e" at the end of many words which in ordinary pronunciation end in a consonant.

In any system of transcription based on French, these causes of ambiguity must therefore be avoided. While such a system of transcription will never be a fully satisfactory medium for the representation of sounds, it will for practical purposes come near enough to doing so.

The problem was taken up as early as 1951 by Mr. Houis, Chief of the Language Section of the French Institute for "Black" Africa (IFAN). The different systems which have been experimented with since then differ from the IFAN system only in points of detail. In the system proposed here, the experience acquired between 1954 and 1962 in a wide variety of language sectors has been taken into account.

The transcriptions thus obtained represent an approximation which is much less satisfactory than the phonetic notations which they will never be able to replace. Some phonemes cannot be properly represented, and some words, as pronounced by the map user, will not be readily recognizable. Maximum advantage will, however, have been taken of the notation possibilities of the Roman alphabet—with the phonetic values which it has in French—without the need for resorting to phonetic symbols, which, while suitable for specialized studies, do not readily lend themselves for use with ordinary typewriters, type-setting machines and the like and are, moreover, incomprehensible to the map user. Except in areas where the languages used present unusual difficulties, place names transcribed according to the present system will be acceptable.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

1. These transcription principles apply to place names in languages without any well-established written form of their own.

2. The letters used are those of the Roman alphabet.

3. The notations used are simple because they are primarily intended for a very broad map-using public.

4. The rules adopted do not in general run counter to the rules governing the relationship between the written and the spoken form of French.

5. As a rule, every letter is pronounced. In order, however, to keep the number of diacritical marks to a minimum, it has appeared necessary to retain certain commonly used digraphs such as: "an", "ou", "gu", "ss" and so on.

6. A letter or a digraph represents only one phoneme.

7. In the case of phonemes which do not exist in French, a digraph such as "hr" or "fh" is used as a means of approximating the actual sound as closely as possible. If this cannot be done, the notation for the most closely related phoneme is used.

8. So far as possible, an effort is made to transcribe in a different form those sounds which, in the language considered, have a distinct phonological value, that is, the power to differentiate words.

138

1. Consonants

Phoneme to be transcribed[3]	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
b ḃ *b* occlusive bi-labiale sonore	b	Bamako (Mali) Birou (Haute-Volta)	
ɓ ɓ *B* occlusive bi-labiale sonore injective (claquante)	b'	sib'âdé, aspirer (Peul)	Différent de: sibâdé, mesurer.
ʃ ʃ *š* fricative palato-alvéolaire (chuintante) sourde	ch	Chari (Tchad)	
d d *d* occlusive dentale sonore	d	Dakar (Sénégal) Dassa (Haute-Volta)	
ɗ ɗ *D* occlusive dentale sonore injective (claquante)	d'	d' id'i, deux (Peul)	Différent de: didi, limite.
ɖ ɖ *ḍ* occlusive cacuminale (rétroflexe) sonore			
f f *f* fricative labio-dentale sourde	f	Bafoulabé (Mali)	
ɸ ʄ *ꝑ* fricative bi-labiale sourde	fh		
g ɡ *g* occlusive vélaire sonore	g gu	Gao (Mali) Gourao (Mali) Siguiri (Guinée)	Devant e et i; un tréma sur la lettre "u" indique que l'on a deux phonèmes distincts "g" et "ü".
gb gb *gb*[4] occlusive sonore à double occlusion vélaire et labiale	gb	Agbassa	
h h *h* fricative glottale sourde (aspirée)	h	Ham-dallaï	
ɬ hl *ꜱ*[5] fricative latérale sourde	hl	tchakahla, quartz (Mokolo, Cameroun)	Voir ci-après les autres latérales.
x x *ꝁ* fricative vélaire sourde	hr	Hrassonké	
3 3 *ž* fricative palato-alvéolaire (chuintante) sonore	j		
k k *k* occlusive vélaire sourde	k	Koulikoro (Mali)	
kp kp *kp*[4] occlusive sourde à double occlusion vélaire et labiale	kp	Akpamé (Togo)	
l l *l* latérale alvéolaire	l	Mayo Darlé	

---

[3] The symbols, in the order given, are those of the:
  International Phonetic Alphabet (API);
  International African Institute (WW);
  Institut d'Ethnologie (IE).
One of these phonetic alphabets should be used by the staff responsible
for collecting the place names and recording their pronunciation.

[4] Although the two symbols should actually be superimposed, they are usually written one after the other.

[5] Symbol not provided for by IE.

Phoneme to be transcribed[3]	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
l l ɭ latérale cacuminale (rétroflexe)	l		
m m *m* occlusive nasal bi-labiale	m	Bourem (Mali) Mouzoumou (Hte-Volta)	Voir ci-après la nasalisation des consonnes.
n n *n* occlusive nasale apico-dentale	n nn		Voir ci-après la nasalisation des consonnes et des voyelles. Pour éviter la prononciation d'une voyelle nasale: an, en, in, on, un.
ŋ ŋ ṅ occlusive nasale vélaire	ng	Songay	On transcrira la nasale vélaire par "n" devant "g" et "k".
p p *p* occlusive bi-labiale sourde	p	Pilimpikou (Haute-Volta)	
q ⁶ ḵ occlusive uvulaire sourde	q		Ne pas employer à la place de "k"; notation réservée aux langues pour lesquelles les deux sons existent avec des valeurs phonologiques distinctes.
r ɾ *r* vibrante apicale	r	Kabara (Mali) Gourma (Mali)	
ɣ ɣ ǥ fricative vélaire sonore R ʀ *r* vibrante dorsale ʁ ⁷ vibrante uvulaire	rh	Korhogo (Côte d'Ivoire)	
s s s sifflante sourde	s ss	Ségou (Mali) Salikoundé Bissikrima (Guinée)	 Intervocalique
t t *t* occlusive dentale sourde	t	Tougué (Guinée)	
t t ṭ occlusive cacuminale (rétroflexe) sourde	t		
v v *v* fricative labio-dentale sonore	v	Vour (Haute-Volta)	
β ʋ ƀ fricative bi-labiale sonore	vh		
z z z sifflante sonore	z	zigueï, zad Zoula (Haute-Volta)	
ʔ ' ɔ occlusion glottale	'	tsu', "hibou" (Bamiléké, Cameroun) pou', "esclave" (Bamiléké, Cameroun)	Différent de: tsu ,"manger"; Différent de: pou, "toi et moi".

⁶ Symbol not provided for by WW.   ⁷ No special notation provided for by WW or IE.

2. Semi-consonants

Phoneme to be transcribed[3]	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
j y *y* palatale (yod)	y	Koya (Guinée) Yélimané (Mali) Tyékoura	Voir ci-après les consonnes palatalisées.

Phoneme to be transcribed[3]	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
w w *w* bi-labiale	ou w	Ouagadougou (Hte-Volta) Tessaoua (Niger)	Au contact de "ou" voyelle; pour noter une particularité phonologique de la langue intéressée dans des toponymes non encore officialisés
ɥ ẅ *ẅ*	u ü	Ntui (Cameroun) Güe	Après "g", et devant "e" et "i", pour indiquer que l'on a deux phonèmes successifs distincts "g" et "ü".

3. PALATALIZED CONSONANTS

No distinction is made between a palatalized consonant and a non-palatalized consonant followed by a "yod". There is, for example, no differenciation between the simple phoneme represented by "gn" (ɲ) in "araignée", "montagnard" and the phoneme group represented by "ni" (nj) in "genièvre", "opiniâtre". This merging together of the two phenomena makes it possible to represent the palatalization of consonants by inserting a "y"[8] after them. When a palatalized consonant comes at the end of a word or precedes a hard consonant, no attempt is made to indicate the palatalization.

In the International Phonetic Alphabet, palatalization is indicated by a small reverse hook or loop: ķ, ģ, ţ, and in the IE alphabet by a small apostrophe or vertical bar: t', d'.

4. NASALIZED CONSONANTS

The nasalization of a consonant is indicated by inserting an "m" or an "n" before it. The following are the groups most frequently encountered:

mb Mbour (Senegal)	nd Ndoulo (Senegal)
mb Mpal (Senegal)	ng Nguigmi (Niger)
	nk Nkogam
	nt Ntorosso
	nz Nzérékoré (Guinea)

[8] The letter combinations "tch" and "dj" can also be used for the palatalized consonants provided that the language does not make a distinction between "tch" and "ty" (palatalized), "dj" and "dy" (palatalized). This is the case, for example, in Dahomey.

5. ASPIRATED CONSONANTS

The "aspirated" stops—with the exception of the voiceless bilabial stop "p"—are indicated by means of the letter "h": bh, dh, gh, kh, th. Example: "khe" (raffia palm-tree) as opposed to "ke" (with) (Bamileke, Cameroon).

6. GEMINATED CONSONANTS

The gemination of consonants is indicated by doubling the letter or digraph representing them.

Exceptions: The special notation of the voiced velar stop "gu" becomes "ggu"; that of the palatalized consonants will be of the type: "kky", "tty" and so on.

7. GLOTTALIZED CONSONANTS

The glottalized consonants, both ejective and injective, are indicated by an apostrophe (symbol of the glottal stop) placed to the right of the consonant.

In all three phonetic alphabets (API, WW and IE), the notation differs according as the glottalised consonant is ejective or injective.

Ejective: p' k'—p' k'—*p'k'*

Injective: 'b 'd ou ɓɗ—ɓɗ—*BD*

8. SYLLABIC CONSONANTS

The syllabic consonants are preceded by an indistinct vowel that is pronounced with the mouth closed; they are represented by a hyphen: "m–", "n–", "p–". Groups such as "m–be" must not be confused with the group "mbe", which includes a semi-nasal.

9. VOWELS[9]

Phoneme to be transcribed	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
a a *a* antérieure étirée ouverte (a antérieur) ɑ ɑ *ɑ* postérieure étirée ouverte (a postérieur)	a	Bamako (Mali)	

[9] *Vowel aperture*: The staff responsible for the place names must, contrary to French usage, insert the accent marks regardless of where they occur in the word. Thus, in the "fon" language of Dahomey, the words "déting" (Elaeis palm-tree) and "dèting" (raffia palm-tree) occur. In particular, every unaccented "e" is to be pronounced like the "e" in "Denis" in French.

Phoneme to be transcribed	Letter or digraph used	Examples	Remarks
ɔ ɔ ɘ centrale d'aperture moyenne	e		Sauf en finale et dans le cas de polysyllabes, où l'on emploiera le digramme eu.
e e e antérieure étirée demi-fermée (é fermé)	é	Nguékélé	
ɛ ɛ ɛ antérieure étirée demi-ouverte (è ouvert)	è		
ø ø ö antérieure arrondie demi-fermée (eu fermé) œ œ ö̞ antérieure arrondie demi-ouverte (eu ouvert)	eu		Voir ci-dessus la valeur donnée au digramme "eu" en finale.
i ·i i antérieure étirée fermée	i	Tibati (Cameroun)	
o o ọ postérieure arroundie demi-fermée (o fermé) ɔ ɔ ọ postérieure arrondie demi-ouverte (o ouvert)	o	Débo (Mali)	
u u u postérieure arrondie fermée	ou	Touba (Côte d'Ivoire)	
	ou		A employer pour différencier la voyelle de la semi-consonne bi-labiale, et d'une manière générale, chaque fois que la lecture de la voyelle peut prêter à doute.
y ü ü antérieure arrondie fermée	u		Pour mémoire

10. Length of vowels

Long vowels bear the circumflex accent; in the case of the digraphs "ou" and "eu", the accent is placed above the letter "u".

In the API system of notation, the length of vowels is indicated by two dots placed immediately after the vowel; in the IE system, the symbols used in Latin prosody are employed: "ā" = long "a", "ă" = short "a".

11. Nasalization of vowels

As a general rule, letters and digraphs that are underlined represent nasal vowels.

The nasal vowels "ã" (nasal "a"), "ɛ̃" (nasal "e"), "õ" (nasal "o"), "œ̃" (nasal "eu") "ũ" (nasal "ou") are represented, respectively, by: *an, in, on, un* and *oun*. Examples: *Bon*yolo (Upper Volta), *Poun* (Upper Volta).

In order to avoid the possibility of confusion between these phonemes and groups of the type "oral vowel plus consonant 'n'", the consonant "n" will be doubled in the latter case, except, however, for "ou" followed by "n" (see above).

The nasal vowels "ĩ" (nasal "i") and "ũ" (nasal "u") are represented, repectively, by "*i*" and "*u*". Example: S*i*kou (Upper Volta).

The nasal quality of a vowel followed by a nasal consonant—m, n, ng—will not be specifically indicated; it will be replaced in such case by the corresponding oral vowel. Examples: Haribongo (Mali), Tondibi (Mali).

12. Diphthongs

Diphthongs are represented—as is done in the International Phonetic Alphabet—by writing the constituent vowels one after the other.[10]. If the second element is an "i", it bears the diaeresis.

Annex I

POSITION OF THE ORGANS OF PHONATION IN THE EMISSION OF SOUND

The vocabulary used by linguists to describe the sounds of speech is based on the various position of the organs of phonation in the emission of sounds.

The following diagram will help to clarify the definitions given in the "Principles of transcription".

---

[10] In the system of notation used by the Institut d'Ethnologie, the less accentuated part of the diphthong is represented by a smaller-sized letter.
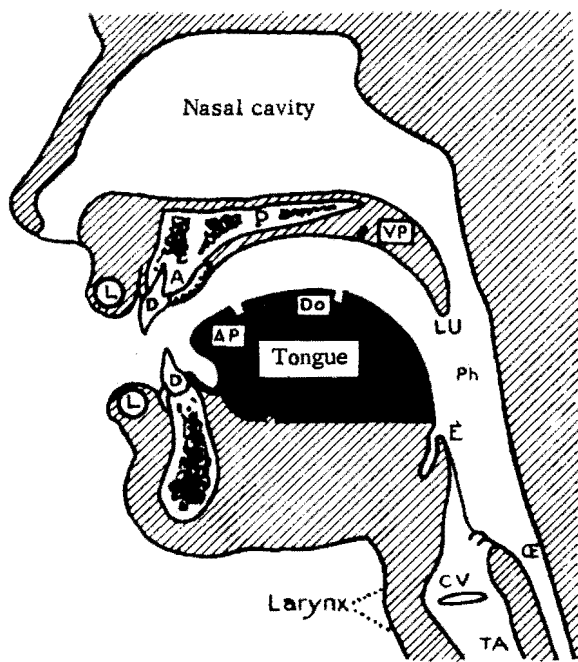
Organs of speech

L	lips	labial
D	teeth	dental
A	sockets of the teeth	alveolar
P	palate	palatal (prepalatal cacuminal or retroflex postpalatal)
VP	soft palate	velar
LU	uvula	uvular
Ph	pharynx	pharyngeal
Ap	apex	apical
Do	dorsum of the tongue	dorsal
CV	vocal cords	
E	epiglottis	
OE	oesophagus	
TA	trachea	

Annex II

Glossary

antérieur (front). Said of a phoneme whose point of articulation is in the forward part of the oral cavity; the opposite of *postérieur* (back). Examples: the palatals are front sounds, by contrast with the velars; a front "a" occurs in the words "bras", "état", "chantâmes", and a back "a" in "repas", "flamme", "pâte".

aperture (aperture). Space between the organs of speech at the point of articulation of a phoneme; practically synonymous with *ouverture* (opening), but this latter term can also designate the act of opening, whereas *aperture* refers only to the state.

arrondissement (rounding). Property of phonemes pronounced with rounded lips. Examples: the vowels "o" and "ou".

articulation (point d') (point of articulation). Area of the vocal tract where the constriction or closure intended to regulate the passage of air from the lungs mainly occurs.

claquante (click). Phoneme resulting from a double oral and glottal occlusion—which may be accompanied by a lowering of the

pharynx to rarefy the air in the cavity thus formed—with the explosive release inward of the air by reason of a slackening of the oral occlusion.

consonne (consonant). The essential characteristic of the consonant is the expiratory sound produced by the passage of air through the vocal tract, apart from the sound, or voice utterance, which characterizes the vowel.

digramme (digraph). A group of two characters or two letters used to represent a single sound. Example: "ch" for the voiceless palatal fricative.

diphtongue (diphthong). Single vowel which results from the combination—or even from the fusion in a single syllabic element—of two distinct vowels and which consequently undergoes a change in timbre in the course of its utterance.

fermé (closed). A closed sound is one which entails either the occlusion or a substantial constriction of the vocal tract. In the case of consonants, closure is characteristic of the stops (k, p,....) in contrast to the fricatives or spirants (f, s,....). In the case of vowels, closure is accompanied by a variation in timbre. In the French word "élève", the first "e" is referred to as closed and the second as open.

fricative (fricative). A consonant resulting from the narrowing of the vocal tract and characterized mainly by an audible friction produced by the expired breath. Also called "*spirante*" (spirant). Examples: f, s.

intervocalique (intervocalic). Said of a consonant occurring between two vowels. Example: in the word "maison", the consonant "s" is intervocalic.

latérale (lateral). A consonant articulated by pressing the tip or dorsum of the tongue against the palate, the escaping air finding an outlet along one or both sides of the obstacle thus created.

longueur (length). Synonym of *durée* (duration). Time allotted to the utterance of a phoneme. Also called "*quantité*" (quantity) in so far as the measurement of vowels is concerned. Example: the vowel represented by the digraph "eu" is long in the word "jeune"; the vowel "a" is short in the word "carte".

occlusive (stop). A consonant articulated by closing the vocal tract and then suddenly opening the closure. Example: k, p,.....

ouvert (open). Property of a phoneme pronounced with the vocal tract open; the opposite of *fermé* (closed).

ouverture (opening). See *aperture*.

phonème (phoneme). The element which is the end result of the acoustic analysis of language.

postérieur (back). Said of a phoneme whose point of articulation is in the back part of the mouth; the opposite of *antérieur* (front).

semi-consonne (ou semi-voyelle) [semi-consonant (or semi-vowel)]. A phoneme intermediate between a vowel and a consonant. In the sound produced by a semi-consonant there can be heard the timbre of a vowel and the friction of a fricative consonant. The semi-consonants correspond to each of the more closed vowels: i, ou, u.

sonore (voiced). Said of a consonant the utterance of which is accompanied by laryngeal or glottal vibrations. Example: g, b.

sourde (voiceless). Said of a consonant the utterance of which is not accompanied by glottal vibrations characteristic of voiced consonants. Example: k, p.

voyelle (vowel). A phoneme the essential characteristic of which is a voice utterance, that is, a resonance either of the oral cavity alone (oral vowels: a, o) or of the oral cavity and the nasal cavity in combination (nasal vowels: *an, on*).

TOPONYMY IN MADAGASCAR

Paper presented by Madagascar[1]

The principal characteristics of Malagasy toponymy are summed up below.

1. It is relatively simple, owing to its essentially descriptive character, since it is closely related to physical geography and topography, and there are only few names of foreign origin (Arabic or European). On the other hand,

[1] The original text of this paper, submitted in French, appeared as document E/CONF.53/L.69.

in most of the country the low population density and the instability caused by local migrations has resulted in a paucity of names and toponymic inconsistency, which gives rise to some repetition and confusion.

2. The writing system into which names are transcribed has remained virtually unchanged for over a century, with Roman letters and simple, phonetically univocal spelling. The language itself, belonging to the Malayo-Polynesian family, lends itself particularly to composite words and reveals a basic unity under the local variations and dialects.

3. There has been a considerable and rapid expansion of cartography based on medium-scale (1:100,000) maps, establishing and facilitating the location of place names. As a result, an index has been progressively and systematically compiled, largely by personnel of the Geographical Services. This work has done much to facilitate the official recognition and publication of the names.

4. The problem of the standardization of geographical names has been simplified and, in general, satisfactorily resolved. The establishment of a national toponymy committee, plans for which are now in preparation, will make it possible to give the standardization due publicity and help to make it official.

Malagasy, which belongs to the Malayo-Polynesian family of languages, is an agglutinative language in which words are formed by successive addition to a root or simple word, with frequent consonant modifications or ommission of unaccented final syllables of the constituent words in the structural links within the composite word. This sometimes makes it difficult to break down composite words and can lead to errors in transcription or translation; however, the rules governing word formation are invariable and easy to remember after some practice. For example, the name "Amborompotsy" (place where there are white birds—oxpeckers) can only be divided into: "An-voro (na)-fotsy".

Various local dialects in fact reveal a close relationship[2] beneath their apparent differences and the grammar and syntax are virtually the same. As far as geographical names are concerned, the differences relate principally to:

(a) Certain roots which produce quite different names for the same object in different regions;

(b) Final syllables which sometimes disappear in certain coastal dialects (e.g. "Lakana", a dug-out canoe in Merina, becomes "Laka" in Sakalava), or have their final letter modified (e.g., "ka" or "tra" can become "ki" or "tri", "ke" or "tre");

(c) Replacement of some letters (e.g. "d" by "l").

These variations have sometimes led to errors of interpretation on the part of early investigators, who tended to "merinize" names, thereby altering the meaning. Mr. Mollet[3] cites in particular: "Manazary" as becoming "Mananjary", "Andovoranty" (at the line of lagoons) as becoming "Andevoranto" (at the slave market).

A number of localities, generally in coastal areas long frequented by Europeans, have been gallicized, although

their Malagasy form is easy to reconstruct. The best-known examples are Fénérive (Fenoarivo), Vohémar (Vohimaro), Tamatave (Toamasina), Tananarive (Antananarivo), Nossi-Bé (Nosibe).

Lastly, there are names of foreign origin, either Swahili or Arabic (all names of places such as markets associated with days of the week), or rarely, European (Fort-Dauphin, Foulpointe, Sainte-Marie, Sainte-Luce etc.).

Some place names and names of tribes are of religious legendary or historical origin (for example, the well-known sequence Fenoarivo—Arivonimamo—Miarinarivo—Fenoarivo recalls the adventure of the thousand who assembled, got drunk, sobered up and were reunited).

However, most names of places or regions are of simple geographical origin, indicating topographical form and structure of detail: Ivohibe (big mountain), Bezavona (place of many mists), Betsiloka (place of much fresh water), Bongolava (lines of hills), Ambatomainty (at the black stone) etc., or refer to flora or fauna: Amborompotsy (place where there are white birds—oxpeckers), Analamanga (blue forest) etc., or to the presence or direction of dwellings: Antanandava (at the long village), Ambohibao (at the new village), Ambohidempona (at the village in the hollow), Ambohimahasoa (at the village of happiness) etc.

Because of the low population density over much of the country and the small number of names relating to the historical or legendary past (except on the plateaux), toponomy in many areas is still very limited and therefore repetitive in its reference to accidents of topography or localities, with the attendant risk of confusion. An attempt is generally made to remedy this by adding adjectives indicating the region or orientation, or sometimes using Roman serial numbers.

In that respect much classifying and codifying remains to be done, sometimes contrary to customary usage, which has readily accepted combinations of Malagasy and European terms such as: Mananara-Nord, Ambohimanga du Sud, Midongy-Ouest.

It seems difficult to remedy the present inconsistency in the naming of villages, which are often moved or even disappear altogether as a result of local population movements connected with economic instability and taboo customs.

In regard to writing, the most important factor is that, since the beginning of the nineteenth century, the Malagasy language—or more correctly the dialect spoken by the Merina, which quickly became the official language of the island—has been transcribed on a virtually standardized basis[4] into Roman letters. The spelling adopted includes some original pronunciation features which are easy to master with a little practice, but, above all, it offers the great advantage of remaining virtually univocal phonetically.

Given a little care, this can facilitate the transcription of names collected orally by the field staff responsible for preparing maps, who are guided notably by the "Vocabulary of the commonest words and principal geographical expressions in the Malagasy language, with their French equivalents", compiled and brought up to date several times by the Geographical Service in collaboration with Malagasy language experts of the Government and the Malagasy Academy. Before leaving their survey areas, the field teams also have to arrange for the checking by local

---

[2] If allowance is made for certain differences in pronunciation or sound; this recently prompted the Government to add two characters to the official orthography to represent the Franch sounds "gn" (ñ) and "o" (ö), which do not exist in the Merina dialect from which the official written language is derived.

[3] In his *Petit Guide de toponymie malgache* (IRSM 1957), which is well documented especially on words of "coastal" origin and from which this paper has taken many examples.

[4] With the exception of the recent modification by decree mentioned earlier.

144

government officials of the spelling of names collected. The names are also compared with those obtained from other sources (geologists of the Mines Department, surveyors of the Topographic Service, research workers of the Madagascar Institute of Scientific Research etc.); objections or divergencies are referred to an authority on the Malagasy language. Administrative names are transcribed in conformity with the official geographical code prepared jointly by the Ministry of the Interior and the statistical Service.

Nevertheless, some rules still remain to be formulated or clarified, and that will be the task of the future Malagasy Toponymy Commission, which will be guided by the rules recommended by the United Nations Group of Experts.[5]

The main points which will have to be clarified can be summed up as follows:

Preservation of original regional forms of names of places or small localities (large population centres will have to retain their present names);

[5] Especially under Economic and Social Council resolution 814 (XXXI) of 27 April 1961, which was the subject of an official reply addressed to the United Nations Secretariat by the Malagasy Republic in late 1962.

Elimination of possibilities of confusion between identical names or similar spellings and correction, if necessary, of empirically devised names in use; thus, "Fenoarivo-Atsinanana" instead of "Fénérive" to distinguish it from other localities with the same name, and "Amboditetezana" instead of "Amboditont";

Standardization of the use of the initial article "I" in many place names and establishment of rules for the use of the locative prefix "An-", "Am-", "A-" or its derivative forms;

Clarification, if necessary, of the collective names or extent of major geographical entities;

Replacement of foreign by Malagasy names when there are no overriding reasons for retaining the former. Qualifications of orientation—for example, *Nord*, *Est*, *Sud*, *Ouest*—can easily be replaced by their Malagasy equivalents. "Midongy Atsimo" would thus replace "Modongy du Sud", "Fenoarivo Afoarivo" would replace "Fenoarivo Centre" and "Mananano Ambony" would replace "Haute Mananano";

Preparation of a comprehensive geographical dictionary or glossary.

TRANSLITERATION

Paper presented by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO)[1]

The objective of the International Organization for Standardization, as laid down in its constitution, is to promote the development of standards in the world with a view to facilitating international exchange of goods and services and developing co-operation in the sphere of intellectual, scientific, technological and economic activity.

The ISO members are national organizations (one for each country) representing their respective national viewpoints in the drawing up of recommendations for international standards. At present, fifty-six countries are full members of ISO. In addition, representatives from a number of developing countries which do not yet have regular standards organizations of their own are corresponding members of ISO.

The organization has specialist consultative or advisory liaison status with the United Nations family of organizations.

Responsive to demands from many quarters, ISO has been active for a number of years in deriving international systems for the transliteration of characters, or signs, from different alphabets into the Roman alphabet. After detailed study, which may involve years of research or discussion and consultation, draft proposals are prepared by a specialist technical committee. These are submitted to all ISO members as draft recommendations. Comments and suggestions for improvement or amendment received at different stages are subjected to expert examination within the technical committee, until eventually the draft recommendations are approved by ISO members. They are then submitted for acceptance to the ISO Council.

The ISO system, therefore, provides not only for detailed expert examination by specialists, but also for widespread international consultation in the member countries.

The first work on transliteration completed by ISO was recommendation R 9: "International system for the

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.73.

transliteration of Cyrillic characters", the first edition of which was published in October 1955. This covers the transliteration into the Roman alphabet of Cyrillic scripts for the Slavonic languages, i.e. Russian, including Byelorussian, Bulgarian, Ukrainian, and Serbian. A second edition of the recommendation is now in preparation.

In 1961, ISO published its recommendation R. 233: "International system for the transliteration of Arabic characters." This deals with the transliteration into the Latin alphabet of characters used in languages based on the Arabic script, including, in addition to Arabic itself, languages such as Persian and Urdu.

ISO recommendation R 259, "Transliteration of Hebrew", was published in 1962 and deals likewise with the Hebrew script.

Work is already well advanced on an ISO recommendation on "Transliteration of Greek into Latin characters", which is expected to be ready for publication shortly.

The elaboration or adoption of differing systems for transliteration into the Latin alphabet would obviously create difficulties in international communication and would confuse the situation. In the interests of co-operation in international scientific and cultural activities and the exchange of information and ideas, a single standard system has to be agreed upon for transliteration. This system should have been agreed upon through a process of international consultation and should be valid, in all fields of application.

The ISO transliteration systems are not totally new: on the other hand, they have been elaborated with due regard to older and well-established transliterations. In preparing the ISO transliteration systems, international consultations and agreement have been the guiding principle. Furthermore, the ISO transliteration systems are intended for use in all fields; they are designed to be suitable

145

both for English-speaking countries and for other countries which use the Latin alphabet but which are not necessarily familiar with the English alphabetic traditions. It would seem very desirable, therefore, for any conference called to discuss transliteration for use in a particular field to take full account of the agreed transliteration systems already developed internationally by ISO.

This does not rule out the possibility that a national transliteration or transcription system may be used in a country internally and may exist side by side with the international transliteration system. For international purposes, however, an international system is obviously preferable.

The organisation would welcome the opportunity for further improving the facilities for the preparation of internationally acceptable transliteration systems. For instance, a specialized institution in this field which is not already collaborating with ISO could easily be integrated in this work under mutually satisfactory arrangements. The organization possesses the necessary apparatus for international effort in preparing transliteration systems and its services are at the disposal of the Conference.

ORTHOGRAPHY AND TRANSCRIPTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN BULGARIA

Paper presented by Bulgaria[1]

In the People's Republic of Bulgaria, the theoretical and practical problems of transcription and orthography of geographical names have been tackled chiefly by two centres: the Institute of Bulgarian Language at the Bulgarian Academy of Sciences, and the Central Administration of Geodesy and Cartography.

In the Institute of Bulgarian Language at the Academy of Sciences, thorough studies on Bulgaria's toponymy have been carried on for a number of years. Theoretical questions regarding the transcription of foreign geographical names have also been treated.

At the Chief Administration of Geodesy and Cartography, work has been conducted for many years on the toponymy of Bulgaria with a view to issuing accurate maps of the country and transcribing a large number of geographical names of other countries. Work on the transcription of foreign geographical names has been performed mainly for the needs of small-scale cartography, which uses the greatest number of transcribed geographical names.

By decision of the Council of Ministers of the People's Republic of Bulgaria, the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names was set up in 1964 under the Chief Administration of Geodesy and Cartography. It operates as an extra-departmental body and its decisions are binding on institutions and organizations. This is proof that the transcription of foreign geographical names for immediate practical purposes is viewed with great favour by the highest government authorities and the broadest cultural circles in our country.

The council attains its goals through its highly representative composition. It includes representatives of a number of academic institutions dealing with the Bulgarian language, Bulgarian history and Balkan studies, the Geographical Institute, the Sofia University, a number of ministries, Bulgarian cartographic organizations etc. It is established practice to bring in specialists in the different languages to comment on the council's papers.

The object of the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names is the standardization of orthography and the transcription of geographical names with a view to establishing their correct transcription and use in cartographic works, the Press, radio etc.

The council publishes lists of transcribed geographical names of foreign countries, specifying the transcription of the different geographical names in Bulgarian territory and their spelling on maps. The lists of transcribed geographical names and the instructions issued by the council serve as bases for unifying the transcription and orthography of geographical names by all official bodies in Bulgaria.

Because the requirements of cartography for transcribed geographical names are the greatest, they determine the total number of transcribed geographical names. Thus, while meeting the requirements of cartography, we also meet all other needs (of the Press, radio, publishing houses etc.). The volume of work is also determined by a second, regional feature, which takes into consideration the substantially higher demands for the transcription of names in neighbouring countries with which, naturally, our cultural, economic and political contacts are considerably greater. For Bulgaria itself, the council has agreed to work on as many geographical names as are needed for the making of maps on a scale of 1:5,000; for the countries of the Balkan peninsula, on a scale of 1:500,000; for the European countries on a scale of 1:1,000,000; and for all other countries on a scale of 1:2,500,000.

In the transcription of geographical names, the council seeks to achieve an accurate phonetic rendering of foreign names with the means and possibilities of the Bulgarian language, while observing the basic rules of Bulgarian orthography and literary pronunciation. Moreover, we think that the endeavour to render the phonetics of the official language, spoken by the bulk of the population of the country concerned, is a correct principle, corresponding to the need for cultural exchanges between nations.

The establishment of an exact transcription of geographical names is impossible without steady and productive contact between nations, which can be expressed as follows:

Supply of original material for the toponymy of the countries;

Consistent exchange of experience (scientific symposiums, publications, studies etc.);

Reciprocal revision of the transcription of geographical names; and

Organization of a periodical publication to throw light on the theoretical problems connected with the transcription of geographical names.

In this respect we fully support the view of the Group of Experts[2] that regional conferences should be organized for exchanges of experience.

We think that a special examination of the problems of standardizing the transcription of geographical names is also necessary for purposes of cartography, which is the

---

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.79.

[2] See annex, p. 151.

most important mass popularizer of geographical names. A number of questions arise in this connexion, involving linguists, geographers and cartographers. A very positive example in this respect is the production of an international map of the world on a scale of 1:2,500,000 through the joint efforts of the USSR, the German Democratic Republic, Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Romania and Bulgaria.

Information about the work done in our country would be incomplete if we did not mention its volume and scope. In the last two and a half years, the council has examined and approved eleven lists of transcribed geographical names of Europe and America. In the course of this work, the council has laid down a number of principles regarding the organizational methods of its work (preliminary revision and discussion of the lists to be approved etc.), as well as principles governing the transcription of geographical names (how to deal with traditional names, geographical nomenclature, the rendering of the peculiarities of different languages in the Bulgarian orthographic system etc.).

There is no doubt that the initiative of the United Nations in helping and harmonizing the work of national councils of orthography and transcription of geographical names can have a most beneficial effect on our work; we therefore lend it our whole-hearted support.

AGENDA ITEM 12

International co-operation: (a) Formation of a United Nations permanent commission of experts on geographical names; (b) Steps towards international standardization; (c) Exchange of information; (d) Post-Conference regional meetings; (e) Technical assistance; (f) Treatment of names of features beyond a single sovereignty; (g) Bibliography

DISCUSSION OF AGENDA ITEM 12 (a) and (g)

Paper presented by Hungary*

We agree with the principle of the formation of a United Nations permanent commission of experts on geographical names. Nevertheless, we feel it necessary to stress that, in the composition of the commission, different political systems and different writing systems (such as Arabic, Hindi etc.) should be represented; the representation should not be as one-sided as it was in the case of the original Group of Experts.

We also agree with the principle of preparing a bibliography and suggest that every member country should prepare its national bibliography of geographical names. This project could be assisted by a committee of experts who could indicate the arrangement to be used in such bibliographies, for which the universal decimal classification system would be the most convenient basis. The national bibliographies should be collected and published by the United Nations. After the first issue, supplements could be published at stated intervals. On this problem, it is necessary to co-operate with the International Onomastic Society.

DISCUSSION OF AGENDA ITEM 12 (b)

Paper presented by the United States of America*

Many of the States Members of the United Nations have come to agree that international standardization in the writing of geographical names, or at least a greater degree than now obtains, is highly desirable. Several countries have responded to the Economic and Social Council request for ideas on such international standardization with interesting and helpful replies. Two principal methods of obtaining standardization have been proposed: standardization in the forms used by the nation of sovereignty, and use of an international alphabet for all geographical names.

Several international alphabets have been devised in the past. One, the (International Phonetic Alphabet) (IPA), has rendered good service for many years in linguistic and pedagogic circles. Evaluation of the possible role of an international alphabet in geographical name standardization requires a clear distinction between standardized writing and standardized pronunciation. Uniform writing is here the objective; such aid to pronunciation as is feasible and compatible with uniform writing is desirable but over-emphasis on pronunciation should not be allowed either to defeat or to obscure the objective.

Fully uniform pronunciation is impossible. Every language has its own unique sound system, never shared with any other language completely if at all. Speakers of one language cannot react to and produce at will all the sound features of another language without intensive linguistic training. Speakers of languages with few

---

sound distinctions (phonemes) will be especially at a loss to reproduce sounds they have never heard before from languages with a greater number of phonemes. Mere symbols will not help a person to pronounce strange sounds. Furthermore, although an "international alphabet" is usually thought of as representing with a different symbol every different significant sound in all the principal languages of the world, one that fully covered only the principal languages would be so enormously complicated and cumbersome as to defeat its purpose. It is a fact that most writing systems employ conventions, since few alphabets represent, in a completely systematic way, the sounds even of the language or languages for which they are regularly used.

Replacement of writing systems in present general use by an international alphabet is more unlikely. Judging from resistance in various countries in modern times to proposed orthographic reforms, proposals to introduce completely new alphabetic symbols (in contradistinction to modifications of present symbols) for supplementary special use in writing geographical names would also be unlikely to receive ready acceptance.

Written names are generally more widely recognizable within a writing system than are spoken names. Dialectical variations in pronunciation do not negate visual recognition by literate persons. Written forms of unfamiliar names that invoke pronunciations that do not approximate local pronunciations closely are still acceptable; written forms containing sequences of symbols that appear unpronounceable will be acceptable if the user can learn how to pronounce them in some fashion or rarely has to pronounce them at all.

A practical programme looking towards international standardization must take full account of the linguistic and cultural limits set by present-day conditions. In the last few years it has been generally recognized that the practical impossibility of uniformity in the spoken rendering of geographical names does not preclude a high degree of uniformity in writing them. Persons all over the world now have occasion to refer to, identify, or even go to places of which their ancestors either had never heard or considered so far away and inaccessible as to be of no concern. It has become increasingly evident that the old process of gradually bending names from other sound systems into written forms compatible with the system of the receiver language, producing what we call "conventional" names, was consistent with the ideas, attitudes and limited geographic needs of earlier times. That process is inconsistent with today's concepts of international co-operation and of respect for persons who speak other languages, and inconsistent also with the enormously greater number of geographical names with which people must deal.

It has also become apparent in recent years that the toponymic problems of one country commonly recur in other countries. This suggests that each country has something to gain from comparison of such problems and of the efficacy of efforts to resolve them, since the experience of each country is relevant to comparable problems in other countries. Such experience means individual efforts as well as collective efforts by groups of Governments. A sharing of this experience and a comparison of problems would be highly profitable.

In the light of the facts and conditions mentioned above, the steps suggested below appear practical, feasible and internationally acceptable. They would bring about a much higher degree of international standardization than exists today.

1. It is proposed that an international conference be held under appropriate United Nations auspices on the problems of the international standardization of geographical names and that said conference refer back its findings to the Economic and Social Council for use in further planning and for reference to the regional conferences mentioned below.

2. It is proposed that the regional conferences be based on the following writing systems:

1.	Roman alphabet	8.	Tibetan alphabet
2.	Cyrillic alphabet	9.	Burmese alphabet
3.	Greek alphabet	10.	Siamese (Thai) alphabet
4.	Hebrew alphabet	11.	Chinese
5.	Amharic alphabet	12.	Japanese
6.	Arabic alphabet	13.	Korean
7.	Indic alphabet		

Several of the writing systems are used to write more than one language. The Roman, Cyrillic, Arabic and Siamese alphabets are used with extra symbols in addition to the basic ones in some languages, and with different sound values for at least some symbols within an alphabet group. However, in the main the principles operating within an alphabet group are the same and are the basis of classification. Although the Indic alphabet group includes many alphabets, all are ultimately based on the Sanskrit alphabet and operate on the same principle.

It is further proposed that regional working group conferences be set up, under appropriate United Nations auspices, at which the nations in each writing system group involving more than one country would discuss the place name problems of the group. It would probably be helpful for observers from other writing systems to attend such working conferences. It sometimes happens that transcription or transliteration draws attention in a useful way to inadequacies in the donor languages in the writing of geographical names. Such attendance would also serve as a reminder that each working conference is part of a larger plan. It is suggested that, in the interest of international standardization, each nation in each writing system group should establish the names and spellings of its own place names and make them available to other nations, particularly to those within its writing system group. If each nation in the group accepted the place name spellings of the other nations in the group, standardization within one writing system would automatically result. Within each writing system each nation would have to decide for itself, or in concert with other nations using the same language, whether to retain the diacritical marks and modified letters used in writing other languages of the group but not by themselves, or to "transliterate" such symbols; e.g., Roman alphabet nations would decide either to reproduce Icelandic ð and þ or to transliterate them, for instance, by "dh" and "th" respectively.

Each nation would have to decide which conventional spellings or names for places outside its own jurisdiction it wishes to retain in addition to the proper spelling in the area where the place is situated. Each nation would also have to decide many problems relating to place names within its jurisdiction, including its possessions, such as which language or languages are official in the country or possession as a whole or in specified parts, and how to treat names from minority languages within its boundaries.

Users of each writing system should transcribe or transliterate, whichever is linguistically appropriate, the place names of other writing systems. Agreements on transcription and transliteration systems between the nation of origin and the nations into whose writing system names are taken is highly desirable and to be encouraged in the interest of international co-operation, but the needs of the receiver nations should be regarded as paramount. Here again the nations in each writing system should at least consider transcribing or transliterating uniformly the names from other writing systems.

Changes in the orthography of a language, on either a national or an international basis, should be respected and should be reflected in international usage wherever feasible. It is recommended that orthographic reforms be made in the direction of improvement in the relationship between sound and symbol.

It is recommended that the United Nations make linguistic, geographical and other technical toponymic advice available, as desired, to the personnel of regional conferences mentioned above.

Geographical names are known to be subject to change, but it would be possible to make the nomenclature of every area of the world more stable and to achieve a higher degree of standardization if the groundwork in the compilation of place names by each nation is carefully laid. It is therefore recommended that advice, such as described in the preceding paragraph, be made available by the United Nations to nations that request it.

The proposed steps would not accomplish international standardization of geographical names overnight, but each would lead in that direction and the initial steps are all feasible.

PROBLEMS OF CORRELATING NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Paper presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The international standardization of geographical names is of great importance. Through such standardization, the names of geographic points located within the territory of a State and formally accepted by that State become binding and are adopted in other States. The international standardization of names of parts of the world, countries, inhabited localities, rivers, seas, mountain ranges, isolated summits and other geographical points is necessary for many national and international organizations and individuals. It will eliminate the possibility of using accidental, erroneous and deliberately false names. Therefore the initiative of the Economic and Social Council which led to the present Conference should be welcomed.

There is no doubt that the basis for the international standardization of geographical names lies in national standardization alone. Although national standardization must be carried out in the light of principles recommended for all countries, the implementation of those principles is the internal affair of each State and requires proper attention to its toponymic system, the national structure of the population and its traditions.

At the same time, certain problems arise in the process of national standardization which extend outside the frontiers of the individual country and require a co-ordinated international solution. They include, in particular, problems of names of a traditional nature, names of large features extending through the territories of several States, as well as the handling of nomenclature.

Each State uses a certain number of traditional names. Traditional names of features which are foreign to each particular country may be divided into two main categories: those used only in a certain country, and those used in all countries in a traditional form. With regard to the first category, it is expedient to accept recommendations about the preservation in each country of certain traditional names of large and widely known features. Thus, if traditions are observed, MOCKBA will be "Moscou" in French-speaking countries, "Moscow" in English-speaking countries, "Moskau" in German-speaking countries. However, the list of such names must be minimal and include only those whose elimination would cause serious inconvenience among the population (names daily used in the Press, names with many derivatives and which give rise to standard expressions etc.).

A number of names have already acquired an international tradition and are used throughout the world in translated form for instance, the "Mediterranean Sea", the "Black Sea", "Tierra del Fuego", the "Cape of Good Hope". A list of such names should be prepared, to be accepted as a guide for all countries after thorough consideration.

A similar problem is that of names of extensive features located on the territory of several States. Here, a name may be chosen by the countries on whose territory the feature is situated, or by other countries which have no relation to it.

A country may preserve for internal use, the form and spelling already accepted, for example the Danube: Дунай (USSR), "Dunaj" (Czechoslovakia), Дунав (Bulgaria, Yugoslavia), "Duna" (Hungary), "Dunărea" (Romania), "Donau" (Austria, Germany).

The second case is much more complicated. Indeed, which form of the Danube name is most preferable for languages of non-Danube countries? This problem cannot be settled by vote or administrative ruling. The proper, well founded decision which will be acceptable to all can be made only on the basis of serious preliminary research. First, existing international practice must be clarified; to that end a list of similar names is compiled for all countries of the world, but limited at first to features on the map of the world at 1:2,500,000 scale. For each name, the forms of spelling accepted in the countries in which the point is not located should be defined. Decisions may differ, but they must take account of modern practice. Where there is no unitary approach in the different countries, it may be recommended to accept for international use such names as are used by the country where the greater part of the feature is situated. The principles worked out for naming large features will be regularly used by each country in the translation of names of small features.

The problem of transposing foreign geographical terms is not so much technical as scientific. It is closely connected with the theory of toponymics and the understanding of the essence of the proper name. If the main function of a name is to designate an object thereby distinguishing it from every other object, it is natural that a generic term should be accepted as an integral part of a name. In some cases local use may be determinant. A decision is also complicated by the fact that in each language, both the literary language and especially dialects, there exist a great many terms to designate objects of a certain category. Some of them are synonyms but most have a definite significance and indicate precise characteristics (size, origin etc.). Disregard of such terms will often lead to the loss of valuable geographical information.

The practice in the Soviet Union is to preserve the generic term where the specific part of the name is expressed by an adjective or the genitive case of a noun. As a rule, local geographical terms are preserved in the process of transcription. These principles, which are also applied to some extent in other countries, may serve as a basis for international standardization.

These are only some of many problems of standardization of geographical names. A great many States are interested in working out these problems and taking a co-ordinated decision on them.

In this connexion, we support the proposal of the Group of Experts for the establishment of a permanent committee of experts on geographical names. Such a committee, formed of representatives of the countries most concerned in the problem, should serve as an international co-ordinating, consultative and methodological centre. The possible functions of such a committee might be as follows:

Collection of information on progress of work on national standardization of geographical names and

---

presentation of such information to the countries concerned; compilation and publication of annual bulletins containing accounts of national geographical names services as well as compilation and publication of bibliographical notes on dictionaries and reference books of geographical names, regulations and rules of names transfer published throughout the world;

Study and dissemination of national standardization experience, elaboration of basic principles and methods of international standardization;

Rendering of scientific, methodological and technical assistance to the developing nations in the organization and operation of national geographical names services.

The composition of the committee should not be too large. Members should be elected at United Nations conferences on geographical names for a certain period (two or three years), observing the principle of geographic and linguistic representation. Under the leadership of the committee members, working groups could be formed to deal with specific problems; experts could be invited if necessary.

Upon completion of the work on each problem, the committee should discuss it and adopt recommendations.

The formation of such a United Nations committee

should not preclude the use of effective forms of international co-operation such as participation in sessions of international geographical and onomastic unions. The problem of geographical names standardization can and must be dealt with in committees of those unions and discussed at the international geographical and onomastic conferences.

Of course, there is no doubt of the usefulness of regional co-operation. Both regional cartographic conferences organized by the United Nations and regional conferences on problems of geographical names could be effectively used to this end. The principles of selection of groups of States possessing common interests in the standardization of geographical names still require thorough study. However, it is clear that such regional conferences on geographical names could be of maximum help to developing countries which have not yet organized their national geographical names services. The selection of regions for sessions of the combined conferences should be based on linguistic considerations. The participation of countries with common problems as well as those possessing well developed services of geographical names, whose experience is of high value to the developing countries in such regional conferences, would be very useful.

SCANDINAVIAN REGIONAL STANDARDIZATION

Paper presented by Denmark, Norway and Sweden[1]

Under the "suggested programme for the international standardization of geographical names"[2] and in consequence of a resolution adopted by the sixth International Congress of Onomastic Sciences held in Munich from 24 to 28 August 1958, the Norwegian delegate to that congress suggested that representatives of Denmark, Norway and Sweden should meet to discuss the standardization of the spelling of geographical names in the Scandinavian region. A meeting was held in Uppsala on 1 October 1958 and there was full agreement on the following points:

The creation of national authorities responsible for the standardization of the writing of geographical names is essential (official bodies responsible for the regulation of the spelling of national names have long existed in the Scandinavian countries);

[1] The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF. 53/L.67.

[2] Official Records of the Economic and Social Council, Annexes, Twenty-seventh session, agenda item 6, document E/3209, para. 11.

The internationally adopted writing of place names should be based on forms recommended by national names authorities;

It will be easier to achieve international uniformity by transcribing written forms than pronunciation;

Special Scandinavian letters and diacritical marks should be accepted in international usage.

In accordance with this programme, the language councils of the Scandinavian countries have since 1958 published lists of foreign geographical names in which common Scandinavian spellings, based on genuine national forms, are recommended for use in maps and educational material. A special committee of experts from Denmark, Norway and Sweden have agreed on a common Scandinavian transcription of geographical names written in the Cyrillic alphabet. Work is now in progress on similar rules for transcription from other writing systems (e.g. Arabic, Chinese).

Annex

FIRST REPORT OF THE GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES*

FOREWORD

The Group of Experts on Geographical Names was set up by the Secretary-General of the United Nations in pursuance of resolution 715 A (XXVII) of the Economic and Social Council. Under this resolution, it had the following terms of reference:

"(i) To consider the technical problems of domestic standardization of geographical names, including the preparation of a statement of the general and regional problems involved, and to prepare draft recommendations for the procedures, principally linguistic, that might be followed in the standardization of their own names by individual countries;

* Extract from *World Cartography*, vol. VII (United Nations publication, Sales No.: 62.I.25).

"(ii) To report to the Council at an appropriate session, in the light of its discussion on the above points, on the desirability of holding an international conference on this subject and of the sponsoring of working groups based on common linguistic systems."

This report was prepared during the meeting held by the Group at the Headquarters of the United Nations, New York, from 20 June to 1 July 1960 with Dr. M. F. Burrill as chairman and Mr. A. Pégorier as rapporteur.

The Group discussed the various questions before it on the basis of experience gained by the experts in their participation in their respective national work in standardization of geographical names and in international co-operation in onomastic science. The Group studied the draft programme for achieving international uniformity

in the writing of geographical names, prepared by the Secretary-General, and the comments and information received from Governments.[1] Special attention was paid to those parts dealing with domestic standardization. In its deliberations, account has been taken of the work achieved by the United Nations specialized agencies—the Universal Postal Union and the International Telecommunication Union—by regional inter-governmental organizations—the Pan American Institute of Geography and History and the Committee on Technical Co-operation of Africa South of the Sahara—by the two United Nations Regional Cartographic Conferences for Asia and the Far East, and by international scientific organizations, such as the International Committee on Onomastic Sciences and the International Organization for Standardization. The Group also benefited from information supplied by observers and the Secretariat during its debates.

The Report is composed of four sections:

I. Need for standardization;

II. Problems of domestic standardization of geographical names;

III. Recommendations on problems of domestic standardization of geographical names;

IV. Question of calling an international conference and sponsoring of working groups.

It has been apparent from the comments submitted by countries to the Secretary-General and indeed from the discussions of the Group that one of the first difficulties to be overcome is that of semantics. The Group therefore proceeded to clarify for purposes of discussion the meanings that are or might be attached to terms expected to be used. A list of these terms is to be found in annex I.

It may be useful at this point to refer to two of these—the term "domestic standardization", which was accepted for use in the sense of "the process whereby the authorized agency fixes a name or names on behalf of the users thereof, whether such use becomes compulsory or not" and the term "geographical name" which was accepted to refer to "a proper name, consisting of one or more words, used to designate an individual geographic entity, such as a mountain, river or city; the expression embraces both feature names and place names".

A list of national authorities dealing with geographical names in various countries is annexed to this report (annex II) in order to facilitate correspondence between them. Omissions or errors should be reported to the United Nations Secretariat.

List of participants at the meeting of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names

Members of the Group

Dr. Meredith F. Burrill (United States of America), *Chairman*

Mr. André Pégorier (France), *Rapporteur*

Mr. P. J. M. Geelan (United Kingdom)

Professor Saïd Nafisi (Iran)

Mr. Alfredo Obiols (Guatemala)

Professor Mo Tsao (China)

Observers

(a) *Governments*

Mr. Omar Sharaf (United Arab Republic)

Dr. Abou Bakr Abdel Ghaffar (United Arab Republic)

Dr. Albrecht Grussner (Federal Republic of Germany)

(b) *National agency*

Mr. John G. Mutziger (United States Board of Geographic Names)

Secretariat

Mr. Roberto M. Heurtematte, Commissioner for Technical assistance, representing the Secretary-General

Mr. Louis Delanney

Dr. Te-Lou Tchang, Secretary of the Group

Mr. C. N. Christopher, Technical Secretary

I. NEED FOR STANDARDIZATION

The Group fully agrees with the comments of the Government of Belgium[2] in reply to the Secretary-General's inquiry that "standardization from the geographical point of view appears not only desirable, but even necessary". The need for rapid development of countries has led Governments to undertake large projects for which the planning requires accurate maps, and statistical and demographic data. The group is aware of the fact that lack of standardized names has caused difficulty in the work of map makers, statisticians, census takers and others, leading to undue and harmful delay and mistakes. The effects of confusion in geographical names are felt not only by geographers and those concerned with national and international affairs, since geographical names constitute one of the required elements of identification in administrative and legal documents, but also by individuals, since people all over the world now have occasion to refer to, identify, or even go to a place that their ancestors either never heard of or considered so far away and inaccessible as to be of no concern.

Many have experienced the discrepancy and confusion existing in place names in various editions of maps of an area, even on one map or in one document. Such a discrepancy has often resulted in unnecessary research, wasting both money and time.

To fulfil their immediate need, many agencies and private publishers have compiled name lists for their own use. Such temporary measures may have been unavoidable especially in countries in which no national names authorities operate; but the unco-ordinated efforts of many bodies would also complicate further the national effort in standardization. The Group is convinced that the sooner the appropriate guiding procedures by national standardization of geographical names are established, the easier and the quicker the objective of uniformity in the writing of geographic names can be achieved. Along a similar line, the Group stressed the need for national names authorities to bear in mind international standardization problems when deciding guiding principles for national standardization.

The Group noted with interest that the Economic and Social Council in its resolution 715 A (XXVII) has requested the Secretary-General (*a*) to provide encouragement and guidance to those nations which have no national organization for the standardization and co-ordination of geographical names to establish such an organization and to produce national gazetteers at an early date, and (*b*) to take the necessary steps to ensure the central clearing house functions for geographical names. The Group was informed that considerable material has already been gathered and that a bibliography on gazetteers is being published in the United Nations Cartographic Bulletin, *World Cartography*, volume VI.[3]

The Group also noted that some beginnings of international standardization have, in fact, already been made.

II. PROBLEMS OF DOMESTIC STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The following problems are recognized by the Group to be important and widespread. They are set forth here as an aid to their recognition at the earliest possible stage in a national standardization programme. The Group wishes to state explicitly that the list of problems set out in this section is recognized not to be complete or exhaustive. Others will surely come to light as programmes go forward in many countries.

(a) *How to determine the actual name and its correct writing? What weight should be given to published usage, local usage established by field investigation or historical evidence under various conditions?*

The methods used in assembling the evidence of name usage have an important bearing on the quality of the standardization work. Different methods may be called for in different countries, or even for different classes of names in the same country, depending upon the nature of the names and the competence of personnel, and the extent to which names of administrative entities are fixed by law or

---

1 *Official Records of the Economic and Social Council, Twenty-seventh Session, Annexes*, agenda item 6, documents E/3209, para. 11 and annex 1, and E/3209/Add.1.

2 *Official Records of the Economic and Social Council, Twenty-seventh Session, Annexes*, agenda item 6, document E/3209, annex 1.

3 United Nations publication, Sales No.: 60.I.10. *See* pp. 57-69.

other official action. In any case, it is not easy in any country to train people to assemble evidence on geographical names with full competence and objectivity. When the evidence is uncertain as to the correct form or writing, especially when forms in local use are at variance with the forms used on maps or in historical documents, the decision may be difficult unless broad guiding principles are stated and followed.

(b) *How to determine the extent of physical features to which names properly apply, such as the limits of a mountain range or of a bay? Again, what weight should be given to published usage, local usage or historical evidence?*

For standard names to be applied in a uniform way by all users, the extent of the physical feature to which the name refers must be as explicit as possible. This sometimes is difficult but an approach to it can be made and it is useful to anticipate the difficulties. This problem is closely related to (*a*) above.

(c) *How to select one name from several having some basis for acceptance?*

It will often happen that a geographic entity will have more than one name. Sometimes each of the different names will have considerable support in usage. Here, again, guiding principles can be most helpful.

(d) *What to do about (1) names for parts of natural features that have names in their entirety, and (2) names for large features for which only parts have names?*

When names are proposed for, or selection must be made from several names for, parts of a feature that has an over-all name, the question will arise as to the extent to which such names should be treated systematically. This problem arises frequently with watercourses. In some cases the local people have names for parts of large features, but only for those parts with which they are familiar, and not for the whole feature with which they are not familiar or to which they have little need to refer. A name for the entire feature may become needed as development of the country proceeds, as in the case of projects involving river basins.

(e) *How to treat existing names from unwritten languages or from minority languages (written or unwritten) or from dialects and regional forms of the principal languages?*

Although some countries have begun to work on these problems, much remains to be done. Each country should solve these problems quickly and satisfactorily, preferably in concert with other countries whose expereince can be exploited to advantage.

(f) *How to choose between syntactical or grammatical variations of the same name?*

For names in languages like Greek where variations such as Ákra Málta, Ákra tis Máltas and Ákra Máltas occur on different official or semi-official sources, decision on one form or other, name by name, should be made if either domestic or international standardization is to be achieved, since examples are known in many countries of apparently parallel forms that actually distinguish two entities.

(g) *What to do about optional parts of certain names which serve as part of titles or to distinguish places of the same name?*

The occurrence of variation of forms such as Rothenburg ob der Tauber and Rothenburg on different sources will make standardization difficult unless either such variation is eliminated or the conditions stated expressly under which the optional name element shall be or shall not be used.

(h) *What criteria should be established for retention of established names vs. substitution of new names?*

There will arise from time to time in any country situations in which a choice must be made between retaining a well-known name and substituting a new or altered name. An established name performs the function of a geographic name more efficiently than a new one until the new one becomes accepted. On the other hand an established name that is duplicated or is otherwise confusing may be less efficient than a new one that does not have these faults. If the choice is based on relative efficiency it will generally be easy; otherwise, it may be difficult to make and to justify.

(i) *How much control of commemorative naming should be exercised, and in what manner?*

If a geographic nomenclature is to become more or less orderly, new naming has to conform to a pattern. Some degree of control is generally possible, and, if shown to be in the public interest, is generally acceptable. The emotional storms that sometimes accompany proposed new naming involving the names of living persons can generally be avoided by an explicit statement of policy and adherence to it without exception.

(j) *What to do about duplication of names, and when is it excessive?*

Complete avoidance of duplication is an ideal that is not easily attained. Use of the same name for different populated places occurs in every country and in some countries excessively. This is also true for names of other geographic entities. Some kinds of names such as those with a descriptive term as the specific element of a natural feature name (for example, Red Hill) are repeated over and over. The degree to which duplication causes confusion, and should therefore be eliminated or reduced, depends in part on the nearness of the named entities to one another and the frequency with which the names are used by persons who live at some distance from the entities. It follows that a given instance of duplication will become more and more troublesome as people widen their knowledge of other than local areas and increase their mobility.

On the other hand, wholesale changing of the names concerned to achieve the ideal is not likely to meet with popular enthusiasm.

(k) *How to choose between systematic rendition vs. retention of forms in being, when they differ?*

In treating a given class of names or names in a given region in a country there may be considerable advantage in systematic rendition of those names, but the forms resulting are likely to differ in some, perhaps many, cases from forms established in use. No formula for solution of this problem is suggested for universal use, and the extent to which a formula can be applied in a single country will probably vary. It is, however, a problem to which early attention might well be given in a country where the written forms of names are not already well fixed.

(l) *Shall printing form for names be made uniform and shall it agree with printing form for the language as a whole?*

In some languages, as in German, the printing form for ordinary running text is practically uniform, but the printing form for geographic names is not regular (cf. Müller Grosses Deutsches Ortsbuch: Gross Heide located in Kreis Lüchow-Dannenberg but Grossheide located in Kreis Norden). Sometimes unification of two words reflects different meaning or pronunciation.

(m) *What principles or policies can be adopted to reduce subjectivity in deciding names?*

The complete avoidance of subjectivity in standardizing names is probably not possible. However, to the extent that it can be reduced the process will go on more easily and the resulting standard names will have more stability. Principles and policies clearly stated and demonstrably in the public interest are perhaps the most effective step towards objectivity.

(n) *How to bring about local acceptance of nationally standardized names?*

Unless the standardized names are accepted locally there will be continued and troublesome confusion. The procedures that will be effective may vary with the attitude of peoples towards independent thinking and the function of their national government, and with the degree of literacy. Since attempts to modify local usage on naming practice by edict have generally failed, it appears that people will not ordinarily give up a geographic name or accept a new one without reasons that they consider valid.

153

(o) *How to determine and express the location of geographic entities to a precision necessary for all needs?*

Although in some areas precise location by geographical coordinates must wait for better geodetic control, minimum requirements will have to be set.

(p) *How to set up a standard designating procedure which will define geographic entities consistently and unambiguously?*

This is a far more complicated problem than is generally appreciated. A full solution may be found, partial solution certainly. The first step is to recognize the problem. Complications arise from several directions. One is the *bedeutungsfeld* (field of meaning) of common nouns ordinarily used for geographic features, which appears to be wider than anyone had suspected.

Another is the difference in the way people categorize nature and experience, even within a country. Features named and referred to in communication in one area may not be recognized as entities in another area, even if the same phenomena occur there. For instance: *Montagnette*, signifying a pasture on intermediate slopes in the Alps, is a concept not known in all of France and *Hill*, in the sense of a steep place in a road, is a concept employed in parts of the United States but not everywhere. It is not easy for anyone to accept the fact that words having a clear meaning to him may have another meaning or no meaning to someone else. However, once this is accepted the way is open to discovery of whole new sets of facts about the toponymy of a country and to understanding of the phenomena involved. Research on this problem will be slow and difficult, but it will be rewarding. For practical and immediate solution consideration may be given to explicit definition of standard designator terms. (Note also (*q*) 1.) There was general agreement on the need for glossaries of geographic terms that will include and make clear the varied meanings of geographic terms used in names, and the varied terms used for the same things. There would also be value in taking account of geographic "neologisms".

(q) 1. *How to write the names of all entities so that generic terms are distinguishable from designations accompanying names?*

Most names of physical features, though not all, contain a generic element (for example, *river, hill*, etc.) that indicates the nature of the named entity. Some of those terms may be commonly omitted in familiar reference, others never or seldom omitted. Since as noted under (*p*) the generic term itself may not be unambiguous and some names (for example, Die Eiffel, or Pelvoux) do not contain a generic element, it is necessary to indicate in the standardizing process what kind of entity is being named. For unambiguous use, it will be necessary to include the generic element in the name and to indicate whether it is commonly omitted.

(q) 2. *How to write the names of all entities so that abbreviations are unambiguous?*

For example, M. Aleksandrovskaya is ambiguous if it can be interpreted as either Malaya Alexsandrovskaya or Malo-Aleksandrovskaya; N. Lésvos if either Nísos Lévos or Nomós Lésvos could be understood.

(r) *How to ensure that definite articles be included in names in which they are essential for both domestic and international use?*

Name sources for some languages in which a definite article may or may not be an integral part of a name are often very inconsistent. For such languages as Arabic, Norwegian, Albanian and Romanian the presence or non-presence of the definite article should be determined and stated for each name.

(s) *How to document name spellings fully in the Arabic alphabet area?*

Arabic alphabet names, as they are usually printed without vowel points, tashdids, hamzehs, and sukūns, and being mostly out of context, are often ambiguous to the speaker of the language concerned and always a problem to speakers of other languages. It will continue to be a problem until names standardization in Arabic alphabet areas regularly provides complete written forms for all place names. It is also in point that, since modern practice has come to require the rendition of Arabic, Persian and other Arabic alphabet names in terms of standard language forms, such documentation is a

prerequisite to international acceptance of nationally standardized names. Similar problems may arise with Siamese, Amharic and other languages.

(t) *How to determine the reading of names in ideographic script?*

Since the reading of Sino-Japanese and Sino-Korean characters is a matter of special knowledge name by name, the names will not be fully intelligible to all until names standardization regularly provides *kana* spellings for Japanese names and *han'gŭl* spellings for Korean names.

(u) *How to provide such useful information on names as gender, position of stress and pronunciation?*

In many languages names printed or listed without indication of such features as gender, stress and pronunciation cannot be used consistently and intelligibly either at home or abroad.

(v) *How to set up a name-standardizing body in a country that does not have one?*

There is a wide variation in the status of such bodies, and in their composition and procedures. It would seem to be more important that the organization fit the general pattern of administrative structure of a country than that the authorities in various countries be similar. There may, however, be some suggestions that are applicable to all.

III. RECOMMENDATIONS ON PROBLEMS OF DOMESTIC STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The following recommendations relative to problems raised in section II are based on (1) the collective experience of the Group, (2) the comments on the draft programme forwarded by Governments to the Secretary-General, and (3) geographic and linguistic analyses of the problems.

The Group accepts the fact that while these recommendations are felt to be sound it is probable that some at least can usefully be refined as more countries contribute to fuller understanding of the problems. The discussions have emphasized that no one country by itself can readily expect to comprehend fully all the toponymic phenomena that occur within its borders without comparison with the same sets of phenomena elsewhere. The Group feels it useful to emphasize that international standardization must be a partnership enterprise over a considerable period. Much more will probably depend upon the quality of the technical personnel employed by the various countries than on the size of the countries. To the extent also that countries can encourage young workers in this field the long-term solution will be more satisfactory; because in the final analysis the detailed work can only be done by persons who are nationals of, and know the country concerned.

The Group wishes to make clear that it is recognized that the applicability of some of the recommendations of the report will be quite different in different countries. Some recommendations pertinent to countries where large numbers of names are yet unwritten would not be applicable in countries where this is not true. Other recommendations pertinent to countries where many names, though written, are not fixed in a single form would not apply in countries where the written forms are largely fixed. It is recognized that the problem of the initial establishment of a written geographical nomenclature may be quite different from the problems of refining a nomenclature. Many of the recommendations, however, are believed to be widely, if not universally, applicable.

Recommendation I

As an initial step in international standardization, countries that have not begun to exercise their prerogative of standardizing their own names are urged to do so. This function should be carried out by a national names authority. The hierarchical place of such authority should be consonant with the governmental structure in each country. The composition and procedures of such a body should be such as to give the greatest chance of success in a name standardization programme appropriate for that country.

While the form, status, function and procedures of name standardizing bodies may vary considerably, in any case it is desirable that:

154

(1) The authority of the standardizing body should be clearly stated;

(2) The standardizing body should deal with name policy as well as with individual names;

(3) Provision be made for consideration of the effects of actions on government agencies, private organizations and other groups, and for reconcilation of their interests, as far as possible, with long-range interests of the country as a whole;

(4) Record keeping and publication procedures be such as to make standardized names available as promptly and widely as possible;

(5) Continuity of the standardizing body be provided for.

It is recommended that names authorities publish standardized names in gazetteer form as well as on maps since much information necessary for the proper understanding and interpretation of names cannot be included readily on maps.

The methods of determining the actual name and its correct writing should be adapted in each country to the combination of name problems requiring solution and the volume of names that the country proposes to standardize.

It is recommended that for each name which is to be standardized there should be as complete a research as possible to provide information on the following points:

1. Spelling on old maps;
2. Spelling on existing modern maps;
3. Spelling in cadastral documents and in land registers;
4. Written and spoken form of the name, and its meaning, according to the local inhabitants.

For point 4 it will useful to provide for the recording of the name in a precise phonetic notation or, if possible, on tape.

It is recommended that the character and extent of the feature named should be determined as accurately as possible.

The personnel employed in the initial processes of assembling information on names should have training adequate to recognize and deal with the linguistic and geographic phenomena that they are likely to encounter. (a, v)[4]

It is important to take into account the problem presented by cartography (that is, the existence of maps already in use and the constant production of new maps for a multitude of purposes), but a proper treatment of names requires a specialized knowledge. There must be a close liaison between national cartographic agencies and national names authorities in their parallel programmes.

Recommendation II

Actions by national names authorities will be more readily agreed upon, more easily accepted, and less subject to change if they are based on broad general principles clearly stated and made widely known. These may be either generalizations about toponymic phenomena or statements of courses of action, or both. The principles could usefully relate to the relative weight to be given different sources of names or written forms, or to different kinds of usage, such as local spoken usage, usage in current published books, maps or current official records, or usage in published historical material. It will facilitate determination of the actual name when usage differs, and promote objectiveness in making determinations of this and other kinds of principal reliance can be placed upon principles.

If it is agreed that the most important result of geographic name standardization is the efficiency with which the names identify and facilitate reference to individual geographic entities, it will be easier to formulate pertinent principles and to make decisions wisely on many matters such as retention of existing names versus replacement by new ones. Furthermore, the fact that actions are taken on this basis will go far towards wide acceptance of them. National names authorities will find it useful to formulate such general principles as early as possible, to re-examine and refine them from time to time in the light of observed effects of applying them, and to add new ones as new knowledge is acquired.

If frequent exceptions have to be made, it will probably be useful to restate the principles. However, much of the value of a guiding principle comes from following it as uniformly and for as long a time as possible. The principles should, therefore, be as sound as possible in the beginning. It will contribute to such soundness if principles reflect, or are based upon, observed or deduced habits and attitudes of the people towards geographic names, and upon analyses of toponymic phenomena.

In countries where most names have written forms established in usage, the principles will probably be derived in considerable part from study of the written forms. Such study of written forms as has been done in other countries should be placed at the disposal of the national names authority, since it is possible that studies of names by persons in other countries may draw attention to, or suggest solutions for, problems that may have been regarded as sources of inconvenience but not as capable of solution.

In countries where many have no written forms, or none that are fixed, the first statements of principles will perhaps be limited to those relating to the recording and editing processes, or to the rendition of such names in terms of a national or principal language. (a, c, h)

Recommendation III

In any country where considerable numbers of names are yet to be standardized in their written forms, careful consideration should be given to the advantages of systematic treatment in producing standard forms more cheaply, quickly and uniformly. Since retention of certain well established names will be preferred in many instances, the national names authority should formulate general principles governing such exceptions to systematic treatment. This may clarify the extent to which systematic treatment is applicable. Systematic treatment should not operate to suppress significant elements in the names treated. Nor should standardization be based on translation unless that translation is in local use. (k)

Recommendation IV

A national names authority should take cognizance of confusion arising from use of the same name for several entities of the same kind, and take appropriate measures to reduce duplication that now causes confusion or is likely to do so. Such measures might take the form of replacement of some of the duplicated names by others acceptable locally, or the addition of something to some of the duplicated names to make them different.

Formulation of a statement of the degree of duplication that is considered tolerable may shed light on the problem and assist in its solution. (j)

Recommendation V

Many names may already have been fixed by law but it is likely that even in this field, the process of assigning new names or of changing existing names should provide for consultation with the national names authority as well as for a report by the national names authority on the probable consequences of the proposed new naming or change. (a, c, e, h, v)

Recommendation VI

When it is considered advisable by the name-standardizing authority (1) to approve for standard use a name or spelling that differs from that in local usage, or (2) to select standard names or spellings from among alternatives, the general public or those most affected should be consulted, or informed of such intention in advance, and given an opportunity to comment. This will increase acceptability and decrease likelihood of error. (n)

Recommendation VII

It is recommended that if they have not already done so, countries of complicated ethnic and linguistic constitution consider and attempt to solve the problems brought about by the existence within their boundaries of names from unwritten languages, or from minority languages (written or unwritten) or from dialects of the principal languages. Since the solution of these problems may be exceedingly difficult it is suggested that such countries can work together with, and profit from, the experience of other nations with similar problems to bring about solutions satisfactory for their own needs.

155

It may be useful for countries to distinguish between minority languages spoken by people living *en bloc* and those spoken by people dispersed among speakers of the principal language.

For the treatment of names from unwritten languages two stages are necessary. First, for recording names from oral evidence, one can develop an unambiguous phonemic notation for each language applying to that language alone. Alternatively, where there is in use a phonetic alphabet adaptable to a number of unwritten languages, for example the International African Alphabet, it may be advantageous to apply it. Second, one can write the names in final form by means of regular correspondence established between that phonemic notation or phonetic alphabet and the writing system of the principal language of the country concerned.

If a minority language is written in the same writing system as the principal language with minor modifications, it is recommended that the modifications be retained in standardizing the minority language names.

If a minority language is written in a writing system different from that of the principal language, it is recommended that the names be rendered systematically from the minority language by transliteration or transcription as appropriate. (*e*)

Recommendation VIII

In standardizing the names of physical features, national names authorities should take cognizance of the problem of establishing exactly to what feature a name applies, and what are its limits. Local usage is generally the most satisfactory source of such information, but where local usage is vague, or where the feature is so large that it is not recognized in local usage, the national names authority may usefully establish its limits for purposes of uniform reference.

As need arises for names for parts of features that are named in their entirety, there may be advantages in a systematic treatment following either a wide-spread national practice of naming such parts of features or regional practices. If systematic treatment is adopted as a general principle, this should be clearly stated, together with circumstances in which exceptions may be made.

The fewer the changes in proposed new names that must be made by a national names authority, to bring them into accord with principles, the better.

If there are large natural features such as rivers for which there are now only local names for parts of the feature, it may be well to anticipate the need for a name for the entire feature and provide one; otherwise different names or forms may arise almost simultaneously when the need arises.

It is recommended that in national gazetteers the names of parts of natural features be additionally defined by reference to the whole, and that the names of extended features be defined as necessary by reference to their constituent parts. (*b, d*)

Recommendation IX

It is recommended that in standardizing collective names (such as those referring to an agglomeration of inhabited places), the national gazetteer should specify, where appropriate, the names of the entities to which a collective name refers.

Names of administrative divisions are often collective names in this sense and it is recommended that national gazetteers should be supplemented by a complete list of administrative divisions and subdivisions and their constituent entities; provision should be made for the issue of revised lists as the administrative structure of the country changes. (*p*)

Recommendation X

It is recommended that in countries where many names have optional parts any uncertainty as to what is optional should be removed. This can be done for legal and administrative names by statement of both the full name with generic term and short name without generic term.

It is recommended, in the interest of uniformity and simplicity, that names without optional parts should be used whenever possible, that optional parts should not be added to existing names and that the national names authority should state when the optional parts of existing names that are retained should or should not be used. (*g*)

Recommendation XI

It is recommended that national names authorities distinguish clearly between a generic term that forms part of a name and a word that may be used to tell the kind of feature it is, but is not part of the name; otherwise there may be confusion as to whether the designating word should be included in the standard name.

It is recommended that the standardizing procedure should not operate to suppress generic terms that are used locally or regionally, though more widely used terms may be used (in addition to and not as a part of the name) to indicate the nature of the feature. (*q.*1)

Recommendation XII

Studies should be made of the nature of named entities in any country, and of the varied meaning of words used to designate them since they will probably bring to light unexpected facts relevant to getting and conveying to others an understanding of the entities named, and indicate the inadequacy of ordinary dictionaries in this branch of knowledge. (*p*)

Recommendation XIII

It is recommended that national gazetteers should include a glossary of the generic terms occurring in the names standardized, particularly for those terms that have special or local significance. (*p, q.*1)

Recommendation XIV

In the interest of both national and international standardization, in countries where some names occur in parallel syntactical or grammatical forms, the national names authority should consider making one of these forms the standard name, either according to a general rule or name by name. (*f*)

Recommendation XV

It is recommended that in all countries, in whose languages the definite article can enter into geographic names, the national names authority should determine which names contain the definite article and standardize them accordingly. For languages in which both definite and indefinite forms exist for all or most names, it is recommended that standardization be based on one or the other form. (*r*)

Recommendation XVI

It is recommended that all countries set up standards for the use of abbreviations of elements in their geographic names. Such standards should take into consideration the structure of the language or languages concerned so that unambiguous interpretation of abbreviations will be possible. For some languages quite simple standards will suffice such as the requirement that a given abbreviation stand for one and only one word. For other languages, it may be necessary in abbreviations to differentiate inflections such as gender, case and number or to distinguish between cardinal and ordinal numerals. (*q.*2)

Recommendation XVII

It is recommended that in countries with place names whose printing form either does not agree with that of the language as a whole or varies from name to name without apparent reason, the national names authority should consider the advantages of making the printing form for geographic names consistent. This recommendation would not apply to printing form differences that have grammatical or semantic significance in the language. (*l*)

Recommendation XVIII

It is recommended that all countries set up standards for expressing the location of geographic entities within their boundaries to a degree of precision commensurate with unambiguous identification, whether location be stated in terms of geographic co-ordination, by reference to other established points, or both. (*o*)

Recommendation XIX

It is recommended that names authorities include in gazetteers such information on geographic names as gender, number, definite and indefinite forms, position of stress, tone and pronunciation where such information will make the names more readily understood and usable nationally and internationally. (*u*)

Recommendation XX

It is recommended that Arabic-alphabet countries regularly provide complete documentation for all geographical names, including the provision of all vowels and the notation of unvowelled and doubled consonants, for example, vowel points, tashdids, hamzahs and sukūns in Arabic.

It is also in point that since modern practice has come to require the rendition of Arabic, Persian and other Arabic alphabet names in terms of standard language forms, such documentation is a prerequisite to international use of nationally standardized forms.

For such languages as Siamese and Amharic where the existence or absence of certain vowels and the doubling of consonants are not indicated in the writing system used, the names standardizing authority should provide phonetic or other notation in respect of these points, so that there may be uniformity of transliteration and transcription at the international standardization stage. (s)

Recommendation XXI

It is recommended that the names authorities of all countries that use an ideographic writing system for which there is an alternate or auxiliary alphabet or syllabic script, provide as far as possible the alphabetic or syllabic writing for each geographic name. (t)

IV. QUESTION OF CALLING AN INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE AND SPONSORING OF WORKING GROUPS

The Group considered the matter of the desirability of holding an international conference on the subject of standardization of geographical names and of the sponsoring of working groups based on common linguistic systems. In making the study, account has been taken of the views expressed by Governments in reply to the Secretary-General's inquiry, and of the work achieved by international scientific organizations. In view of the fact that implementation by national bodies of standard methods for dealing with geographical names requires the agreement and support of the countries concerned, the Group was unanimous in its concurrence that it is imperative to hold an international conference to study national and international problems involved, to exchange technical information and to reach agreement on concrete steps to be taken.

Moreover, it has also become apparent in recent years that the toponymic problems of one country commonly recur in other countries. This suggests that each country has something to gain from comparison of such problems and of the efficacy of efforts to solve them, since the experience of each country is relevant to comparable problems in other countries. Such experience means individual efforts as well as collective efforts by groups of Governments. A sharing of this experience and a comparison of problems would be highly profitable.

The profit that arises from the sharing of experience has been amply demonstrated at the meeting. All of the experts were agreed that each had learned much from elaboration of the problems by the others and the joint evaluation of alternative methods of dealing with them.

In the opinion of the Group such a conference will have the greatest chance of success after the following conditions are fulfilled:

(a) Interest has been shown by a great number of countries in this undertaking and ground work on domestic standardization has been solidly laid;

(b) Thorough preparation is made with regard to the arrangements for the conference, including a clear outlining of the technical problems involved.

With regard to (a), one way to ascertain the degree of interest of countries would be to survey, through reports by Governments to the Economic and Social Council, within two years, the implementation of the technical recommendations of the Group stated in the previous chapter. Such reports should include a statement on what has already been done with regard to domestic standardization and on what remains to be accomplished, including reference to special problems encountered and technical assistance required.

With respect to (b), it is believed that in view of the complexity of the various problems of national and international character involving different linguistic systems, it would be useful to have a small advisory group composed of linguists, geographers, cartographers and other principal users of geographical names to assist the Secretariat in the preparation of such a conference if it is called. The primary task of this advisory group would include the following: Preparation of the technical agenda for the conference, taking into account the reports received from Governments referred to above and the work achieved by international scientific organizations pertinent to this problem. The services of this advisory group could also be made available to regional meetings or seminars, grouping countries of the same language or the same writing system, initiated by the countries concerned.

In the interest of promotion of international uniformity in the writing of geographical names and of elimination of confusion harmful to an orderly national and international standardization, it is highly desirable that the interested Governments could apply individually or collectively to the United Nations for advice and assistance in solving specific problems.